

# NEW METHODS IN EDUCATION

J. LIBERTY TADD



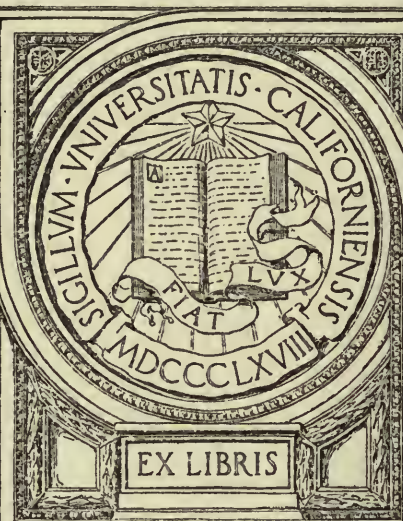
ART  
REAL MANUAL TRAINING  
NATURE STUDY

"BE YE TRANSFORMED BY THE RENEWING OF THE MIND"

Ed. 272  
C. Van Liew.

IN MEMORIAM

C.C. Van Liew



EX LIBRIS

EDUCATION DEPT.











### Painting in Water Colors from Real Butterflies

The pupils receive lessons at intervals in color work from various nature-forms, leaves, flowers, birds, insects, shells, fish, etc. All these children take the elementary manual training work in rotation, which consists of ambidextrous drawing or drill on the blackboard, designing in color, modeling in clay, and carving in wood. These operations give such skill and dexterity that almost from the beginning good work is done drawing from nature forms.

(11)

*The Natural Education Series*

# NEW METHODS in EDUCATION

## Art Real Manual Training Nature Study

Explaining processes whereby hand, eye and mind are educated by  
means that conserve vitality and develop a union of thought  
and action

By J. LIBERTY TADD

Director of the Public School of Industrial Art  
Of manual training in the Roman Catholic high school  
And of several night schools, all at Philadelphia, Pa  
Member of the Art club, Sketch club and Educational club  
And of the Academy of Natural Sciences, Philadelphia

WITH A WEALTH OF ILLUSTRATION

Springfield, Mass

ORANGE JUDD COMPANY

New York, N Y

Chicago, Ill

LONDON

SAMPSON LOW, MARSTON & Co

1899

Entered according to the act of  
Congress, in the year 1898, by  
Orange Judd Company, in the  
office of the Librarian of Con-  
gress, at Washington.

Registered at Stationers' Hall,  
London, England.

EDUCATION



**Charcoal Studies from the Antique**

The large head shows beautifully the rendering of light and shade with very few touches of the charcoal. This is a very fine drawing for solidity, light and shade, character, etc. The original drawing is life size, and was made in one hour. The smaller heads have been reduced from life size. They show various stages, from the slightly sketched to entirely finished.

v



*To the...*  
**CAUSE OF TRUE EDUCATION**

including

PARENTS—who are so vitally concerned  
in the health, training and development  
of their children

SUPERVISORS AND TEACHERS—  
who do the work of instruction

SUPERINTENDENTS, COMMITTEES  
AND TRUSTEES — the men and  
women of affairs who direct the school  
system

*This work is dedicated*

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

## *BOOK ONE—First Principles*

### **Chap. 1. INTRODUCTION.**

Esthetic training necessary in education. The first tools. The methods advocated. Rotation of branches of work. Makes the hand skillful. Influence of beauty. Moral training, its value. How to get moral culture. Trade teaching only not beneficial. Discover capacity, then educate it. First experiments. Fundamental methods. Educators, scientists, doctors and parents express hearty good will.

3-10

### **Chap. 2. DEVELOPMENT OF BENT OR DISPOSITION.**

Capacity for hand skill. Lack of hand skill one cause of poverty. Importance of finding out the "bent" of the young. Skillfulness beneficial and a means of mental expansion. Real manual training a means of finding out capacity. Necessity of an energetic disposition. Inspiration by performance of deeds.

11-15

### **Chap. 3. IMPORTANCE OF CONTACT WITH THINGS INSTEAD OF THE SYMBOLS OF THINGS.**

Importance of various sense impressions. Importance of getting ideas first. Thought fabric built by variety of expression. Assimilate facts not words only. Repetition and the force of habit. Vital union of head, hand, heart. Various sense impressions organized into concrete ideas. Drawing a mode of thought expression. Book-bred people indisposed to action. Importance of visual memory. Too much reading divorces ideas from action. Words studied at the expense of ideas. All channels for improving the mind to be used. Automatic obedience of the hand. Right manual training will give a love of nature.

16-23

### **Chap. 4. DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE TRUE AND FALSE IN MANUAL TRAINING.**

Different kinds of manual training. Methods that prevent real manual training. Stupid claims for sloyd. Utilitarian idea overdone. Sloyd selected for criticism. Sloyd not real manual training. Automatic dexterity desired. Some exercises consume energy and inspiration. Proper wood-working operations. Manual training a mode of thought expression. Ideas the basis of originality. Art in handicraft very rare. Real manual training better than apprenticeship. Mechanical training not hand training. Hand skill should precede trade training. What are drawing and manual training? Objections on account of cost. Ease of application to large numbers. Cost of elaborate plants should be spent on teachers.

24-34

<b>Chap. 5. LACK OF TRAINING IN DRAWING—ITS NECESSITY.</b> Lack of real power of drawing. Lack of art training in common school. False systems formulated by publishing firms. Sewing and cooking not real manual training. Necessity of systematic training of the senses. Drawing trains the perceptive faculties. Hand skill makes intelligence. Insufficiency of old method. Teachers must be able to draw. Supervisors should be able to draw. Misuse of type forms. Foolish statements by so-called teachers. Absurdities of commercial systems. Artificial forms, stained papers, etc., useless. The art part vital. Art and manual training teachers should be examined. Drill essential in the elementary stages.	35-46
<b>Chap. 6. RIGHT AND LEFT HAND WORK, AMBIDEXTROUS WORK.</b> Systematic influence. Reasons for ambidextrous work. Not unreasonable mind building. Abstract work wrong. Old methods of education neglect both hands.	47-51
<b>Chap. 7. DRAWING CORRELATED WITH OTHER STUDIES.</b> Correlate the drawing with other school work. Bad use of art work in schools. Compels love of nature. The beginning of wisdom. Knowledge of things of first importance in education. Good pictures improve taste. Futility of present methods. Drawing a mode of thought expression. Meissonier. Growth of ideas. Ideas must be locked into the mind.	52-57
<b>Chap. 8. NATURE STUDIES—RIGHT METHODS.</b> Looking at things not enough. Familiarity not knowledge. Impressions must be repeated systematically. Let study have permanent results. We must appreciate the beauty of nature. Permanent organic impressions must be made. Effect on health of improper methods. Beauty and mystery of common things. Divine energy in matter. Improved methods of study needed. Universal use of new modes of expression.	58-64
<b>BOOK TWO—Manual-Training Drawing</b>	
<b>Chap. 1. CONSIDERATIONS IN MANUAL TRAINING DRAWING.</b> The two kinds of drawing. Paper. Pencils.	65-74
<b>Chap. 2. ELEMENTARY DRILL FORMS.</b> To get automatic facility. The first exercise is the circle. Straight lines. The double loop. Application of the loop. Reason for these movements. The spiral. Modeling and carving.	75-86
<b>Chap. 3. ELEMENTARY UNITS.</b> Simple leaf forms. The natural method. Complex leaf forms. These exercises are for discipline. Conventional forms. Units of design based on the spiral. The crocket. On the elements of design. Combinations of units. Leading lines.	87-100
<b>Chap. 4. COMBINATIONS OF UNITS AND STYLES.</b> The anthemion. Combinations of the anthemion. Complex leaf forms. Bud forms. Another beautiful series of leaves. The Moorish units.	101-120
<b>Chap. 5. DRILL FORMS AND DESIGNS.</b> Exercises to compel accuracy. Drill work. Work in design. Color and brush work. Blackboard work. Designing on blackboards.	121-138

## Table of Contents.

ix

### **Chap. 6. DRAWING FROM LIFE FORMS AND MEMORY DRAWING.**

Persistence required. Memory drawing. Fish forms. Typical forms. Speaking through the finger tips. Importance of simplicity. A warning. Variety in forms. Fish forms in design. General remarks. 139-154

### **Chap. 7. DRAWING FROM NATURE AND FROM MEMORY.**

Blackboard work. Bird forms. Color in birds. Botanical forms. 155-168

### **Chap. 8. CONVENTIONAL AND SYMBOLIC FORMS.**

Dolphins make beautiful forms. Griffins. The bird form. Drawing from objects. Symbolism. Plaster models. Architectural models. 169-184

## *BOOK THREE—Modeling*

### **Chap. 1. INTRODUCTION, PLANT, ETC.**

Only one way to know form. The plant required. A good box for the clay. 185-192

### **Chap. 2. ELEMENTARY COURSES IN MODELING.**

Manipulation of clay. The spiral. Leaf forms. Circular forms. Hints to the teacher. Elementary forms. Animal forms. Other animal forms. Vessel forms. 193-208

### **Chap. 3. MODELING FRUIT AND VEGETABLE FORMS.**

The apple. The pear. Hints to teachers. The banana. Fruit tile. Make a composition. Vegetable forms. The tomato. The turnip. 209-220

### **Chap. 4. MODELING GEOMETRIC FORMS.**

The sphere. The cube. The cylinder. The square prism. The cone. 221-228

### **Chap. 5. MODELING FOR GRAMMAR GRADES.**

Pay particular attention to fine curves. Build solid tile for scrolls. The rosette form. Position of tools. The leaf units. The Moresque form. The scroll and crocket. Combination of scrolls and leaflets. The anthemion. The curved leaf. Simple shell forms. 229-246

### **Chap. 6. MODELING ANIMAL FORMS.**

Suggestions. Directions for modeling. Must do work to realize its educational value. 247-256

### **Chap. 7. WAX MODELING.**

Cost and care of wax. Drawing and lining in design. Rough texture wood best. Modeling animal forms. 257-260

## *BOOK FOUR—Wood Carving*

### **Chap. 1. TOOLS FOR WOOD CARVING: DESIGN IN WOOD.**

The tools required. Age at which to learn. The wood to use. Designing the form to carve. As to graded work. 261-270

### **Chap. 2. INSTRUCTIONS FOR ELEMENTARY CARVING.**

How to carve. Carving the raised surface. Power in the hand. Encourage the pupil. The value of carving. Use of finished work. As a training. Finishing the carving. 271-282



<b>Chap. 3.</b> CARVING THE ELEMENTARY UNITS OF DESIGN. The scroll. The simple leaf. The spiral with crockets. The anthemion. Rosettes. Square rosettes. Fluted forms. Conventionalized forms for carving.	283-290
<b>Chap. 4.</b> CARVING ON FURNITURE AND OTHER ADVANCED WORK. Carving in relief on curved surfaces. Borders and moldings. Suitable forms for carving. Carving in the round.	291-302

### *BOOK FIVE—Various Applications*

<b>Chap. 1.</b> CONSTRUCTION IN WOODWORK AND MECHANICAL DRAWING. Radical feature of this method. Machine-shop practice has its place. Large economy in equipment. Use of head work. Rotation of work. Objects of instruction. Put art first. Good teacher better than good tools. Mechanical-drawing course includes what. Architecture. Blackboard work. The simpler exercises. Advanced work. Woodworking course and what it includes. Tools for wood-working department. Mechanical-drawing course and equipment. Exercises in metal work.	305-337
<b>Chap. 2.</b> CORRELATION OF DRAWING WITH OTHER STUDIES. Trouble with old drawing methods. Correlation of art methods—with language study, zoology, nature study, biology, botany, elementary mineralogy, entomology, chemistry, etc.	339-357
<b>Chap. 3.</b> ART AND MANUAL TRAINING IN SPECIAL SCHOOLS. Night schools, importance of occupation, plant, materials and teachers required. Vacation schools. Normal and summer schools.	359-383
<b>Chap. 4.</b> OTHER USES FOR ART, MANUAL TRAINING AND NATURE STUDY. Decorating the school room. For backward pupils. For the feeble-minded and insane. Reformatories and truant schools. Miscellaneous applications. Repousse and hammered work. For parents.	385-397
<b>Chap. 5.</b> SUGGESTIONS FOR ART STUDENTS. A great field for teachers. Preparing for fine art work. Fitting for the minor arts also. Charcoal drawing. Painting in water color from casts. Life work. Summer art work.	399-417
<b>Miscellaneous</b> Author's acknowledgments. Index. List of illustrations. The publishers' word.	418-424





Cast Drawing Made by Girl of Ten Years of Age

Fine work in charcoal can be made by pupils in the schools from these models, if they have had proper instruction in elementary manual-training drawing. This drawing is very much reduced, but shows free rendering and grasp of magnitudes instead of detail.

## PREFACE

**I**T IS NOW OVER TWENTY YEARS since the author made his first experiment in educational manual training and established his first classes. The present methods are the results of this experience. Nothing was taken for granted, and all processes had to stand the test of experience and application to large numbers of pupils. The first trials were made with private pupils, the author being employed by the late Dr. Thomas S. Kirkbride, the physician-in-chief of the Pennsylvania hospital for the insane, to teach his own children and some of the patients of the hospital. The first direction and impulse to the work were inspired by his generous advice and instruction

The Public School of Industrial Art, established at Philadelphia in 1880 by Charles G. Leland, of which the author was chief instructor from its inception and has been director since 1884, first gave opportunity for application of his methods of instruction to large numbers.

Since then numerous institutions, public and private, have enabled him to develop a method that has proven to be founded on correct principles, and is now widely acknowledged to be successful.

This book is primarily a protest against present methods of education. The old education is dependent too much upon books. Books are mere aids—they are not the original sources of education or information, but artificial and second-hand ones. Nature and experience are the best teachers, and by immediate acquaintance with and direct exercise upon the myriad forms of life we get the best training. Children are told too much; they do not work out truths for themselves. Reading, writing and arithmetic are made main facts instead of incidentals of education. Some pupils become exceptionally proficient in these branches at the expense of essentialities. My endeavor will be to show that much school work should and can be carried on to better advantage as regards pupils, teachers, economy and environment by the method here set forth than by the ordinary system.

The love of nature is an universal instinct, and should be sedulously cultivated. Children love nature instinctively. Nature speaks as loud to-day as ever, and all should hear her voice. As Emerson says, we must “bend to the persuasion which is flowing to us from every object in nature, entreating us to be its tongue to the heart of man.” It is natural for children at certain ages, by contact with nature in certain ways, to assimilate information unconsciously from the actual things. Experiments with children prove conclusively that these nascent periods are well marked and should never be missed, or the opportunity is gone forever. The character changes as the child grows, and its disposition should be *formed*.

We should develop a disposition disposed to energetic action or work, in response to stimulating thought—a disposition that hungers and thirsts for right action, according to environment. Too often mere head-learning creates a wish or desire for good, without there being sufficient impulse in the organism to prompt the energetic action required to achieve it. For this purpose energy must be stored in the organism, and conserved by a training in action and deeds, until the working out of thoughts in deeds grows into a habit. To consume and waste the vital energy by beginning too early with abstract tasks

and various forms of thought studies, is as needless as it is common. Too often I find the mind to be enfeebled, the memory weakened, the vitality abused and consumed, by studies meant to strengthen; instead of methods being employed that would conserve and add to vitality, at the same time that the mind, the memory, the judgment and the imagination are being improved.

In common with this improvement of the mental and physical being, there should be a development of the emotional being through the feelings—a love of action, a training of hand and eye to obey the mind and execute its orders, that fit both head and hand, heart and will, to cope with the problems of life.

Nothing gives greater dignity to man than a complete realization of the power of being able to *do*. No joy is greater or more lasting than that received by doing well with the complete being,—brain, eye, hands, will, and judgment,—all tools, God-given tools, to be trained and used.

Heretofore much of the best energy of the country has been devoted to trade activities, to material welfare; but in the process of evolution, of differentiation of institutions, other ideas in education must prevail, and science and art be more fully considered. Material purposes so far have progressed at the expense of art, and industrial supremacy threatens the sacrifice of those esthetic elements that do so much to make life worth living. Machinery has largely abolished handicraft. The artist artisan is the rare exception, whereas he should be the rule. The cause of education has been injured by a narrow commercialism that sought immediate gains at the cost of permanent advantage. The tendency has been to degrade labor and to exalt wealth—to restrict the best development of the human organism among the masses, until the world is filled with millions incapacitated for its duties, blind to its joys, wanting the hopefulness of self-confident ability, feeble in purpose and unresponsive to spiritual influence.

Of late years a revolt against all this is growing among the people, based on both practical and ethical grounds. The wiser folk are beginning to realize that one object of education should be to qualify the individual to enjoy life fully in whatever environment he may be cast, while at the same time developing a capacity to achieve material suc-

cess. Such capacity depends in part upon discovering at an early age one's best bent or peculiar fitness for some special vocation, and then training for this purpose not only the mind, but also the hand and the eye,—indeed, the whole organism,—and forming the practical judgment as well as the power to reason theoretically. How few ascertain their bent and make the most of it is best appreciated by the millions whose lives are rendered more or less unsuccessful through early lack of this knowledge. The inability of book-learning alone to train the judgment to deal with practical affairs is everywhere recognized. Its failure to develop originality is also admitted, while mere book studies are also deficient in training earnestness of purpose and tenacity of application.

It is equally apparent that old methods of education too often impart facts at the expense of health. Even strong children often wilt in the schools, sacrificing bodily strength, mental power and vigor of will to a misconception of education. For after all this effort, many youths of both sexes come out of the schools quite unfitted physically for life's responsibilities, which they have subsequently to learn by years of hard experience.

Largely as a result of imperfect training, or wrong methods of education in youth, beauty and high quality of product are too commonly lacking in mechanical industries and in the world of literature and the fine arts. Our people excel in quantity of product, but not in quality. If they are to compete with the real art that characterizes so much of the fine products of the old world or of the Orient, then the art idea must be made more prominent in education. Art instruction should be so correlated with other methods as to help in reforming the educational errors alluded to. When this is properly done, the rising generations will reach a development in the many that has heretofore been enjoyed only by the few. Our American youth will come out of the early educational process sound in brain and body, strong of purpose, positive in application, trained in the use of hand and eye, with originality developed and judgment matured, possessing an ability and a capacity to use it that will so manifest themselves in every art and industry as to maintain throughout the world the supremacy of American genius, effort and products. Success in these ways will be



And this means a building up of character and a recognition of man's duty to humanity and to God, by which alone are to be fostered the best citizenship, the largest human happiness and the fullest enjoyment of the marvels of this wonderful universe in which we live.

Toward this high purpose the present work is a modest contribution. It suggests new methods of education, but only such as have stood the test of many years' searching investigation and practical experience. It aims to show by actual results that art instruction, real manual training and nature study, rightly conducted and properly correlated with other studies, should begin at a tender age and continue throughout the elementary and higher stages of education. This book is not merely a technical manual of drawing and design, of modeling and carving, of construction in wood and metal, or of the fine arts, but is designed to demonstrate the remarkable educational power of these methods when rightly used, the economy of their universal application, and their beneficial effect in helping to qualify the individual to make the most of himself or herself. It also gives an insight into the *modus operandi* of these methods, to the end that they may be more generally practiced by parents and teachers and fully comprehended by school authorities and people of affairs.







### Drawing from Life

This is a study from living model, very much reduced in size, showing method of using charcoal. The unfinished parts are sketched in and expose various stages of handling the charcoal. Many of our students are now doing work of this character in various art institutions, and they find that the elementary manual training they have received is a great help in their advanced work. These drawings, and also the charcoal drawings at the end of the book by Rembrandt and Raphael should be studied. Notice should be taken of the various modes of expression by means of lines and light and shade. Students should realize that many ways can be used.

## AN ADDRESS

At the Graduation of the Teachers' Classes in  
Manual Training, Public School of  
Industrial Art. Philadelphia, June, 1894  
By W. N. Hailmann, Ph D. \*

**D**URING THE WORLD'S EXPOSITION AT CHICAGO, one of my chief delights was the discovery of this school. As director and superintendent of educational work for many years, I had long since become convinced that art represents the highest formulation of thought, that an education which does not lead to art is at best of little value and is very likely to lead to some one-sidedness, which of necessity brings hindrance or destruction, or to some form of egoistic self-conceit, which labors to hide inner insufficiencies under the cloak of outer pretensions or mannerisms.

This conviction was strengthened by the popular demand for manual and industrial training which two decades ago came to the school with irresistible force, resting firmly upon the dawning recognition of the imminent needs of the human mind and of the pressing demands of the social organism with reference to these things.

The school and the people whom the school is supposed to serve

---

\*One of the best known educational authorities, of long and varied experience. From 1857 to 1865, he was professor of natural sciences, Louisville, Ky., high schools; 1865-73, director German-English academy, Louisville, Ky.; 1873-78, director German-English academy, Milwaukee, Wis., which became through his efforts the German-American teachers' seminary, the direction of which he declined. From 1875 to 1883 he conducted (jointly with Mrs. Hailmann) a training school for kindergartners, at Milwaukee until 1878, and at Detroit from '78-83. From 1883-94, Dr. Hailmann was superintendent of schools at Laporte, Ind.; 1894-98, national superintendent of Indian schools, Washington, D. C.; at present, superintendent of public instruction, Dayton, O. Among his books and writings are the following: 1866, *A System of Objective Teaching*; 1870, *History of Pedagogy*; 1872, *Kindergarten Culture for Home and School*; 1885, *Application of Psychology to Teaching*, (prize essay, American institute of instruction); 1887, *Primary Methods*; 1892, *Froebel's Education of Man*, International series. From 1870-83 he was editor of "*Erziehungsblätter*", a German educational journal; 1877-83, editor *New Education* and *Kindergarten Messenger*; 1883-85, associate editor *Primary Teacher*. A number of reports and papers to National Council of Education, and National Educational Association.

had come to recognize with growing clearness the facts that an education which merely fills the memory with traditional formulas and conventionalities is doing but a small share of its allotted work, that thought does not end in itself, that volition is a phase of intelligence, that action is the outward assertion of insight, that without the hand man is powerless and must sink back into a hopeless pessimism which tends to animality, that in art man formulates his most delicate and far-reaching abstractions. They had come to recognize the fact that man is truly educated only in the measure in which he has learned to place himself, in his thought and feelings, into deliberate, active, helpful relation with the life of some group of mankind in all its struggles and strivings, in its joys and sorrows, in its conquests and achievements.

A mental act is incomplete unless through its feelings and thinkings and willings it reaches the corresponding deed. The hand is the projected brain, through which the directing thought achieves the heart purposes of man. The hand mediates inwardly and outwardly between man and his environment, makes him and his environment one, stimulates and establishes thought, awakens brotherly love and realizes the aspirations of brotherly love.

The recognition of these facts made the traditional school appear very inadequate to its purpose; and efforts, wise and otherwise, were made by conscientious and thoughtful persons to remedy the defect. Manual and industrial training and art instruction became the order of the day, and indeed every effort in this direction deserves even to-day grateful acknowledgment, in so far as it meant to serve the new light and was not undertaken by commercial adventurers with a view of exploiting a new demand.

A serious error, however, was made in the introduction of manual training and art-work as new subjects of instruction in addition to those already in vogue. In doing this the school rather emphasized the divorce between the head and the hand. Instead of relieving the existing intellectual one-sidedness, it added a new manual one-sidedness, thus doubling the wrong.

To this was added another error. The new subjects of manual and art training were taught in the same traditional methods current

with other subjects of instruction. The aim was less to stimulate purpose on the pupil's part and to secure to him the inspiring experience which the achievement of spontaneous purpose brings, but rather to transmit to him a certain imitative control of purposes and achievements of the past.

Thus, while it gave the learner certain conventional phases of manual skill and placed him in possession of certain so-called rules of art, it failed to open in his soul and to subject to his conscious control the fountains that keep fresh the fervors of exploration and invention, of productive and creative imagination. Thus, it happened that in many instances manual and art training fell into disrepute, and that they were derided as failures even by educators whom the people had learned justly to esteem as among the most thoughtful.

Had those who introduced the new work been familiar with Froebel's educational prophecy, the result would have been different. This educational genius, whose value is just beginning to be recognized, had indicated the true way clearly enough. In order to render education a true preparation for harmonious full-life and in order to secure to the hand and to art their legitimate share in this, shielding man equally against over-credulous optimisms and nihilistic pessimisms, he would introduce manual and art training not as new subjects of instruction, would not add to the already excessive burden of the school, but make this burden light by assigning to the hand and to art their proper place in each subject, transforming that which was a burden into a self-sustaining, self-stimulating work, changing it from a mechanical dead-weight into natural sustenance of the growing organism in which manual activity is a normal concomitant of life and art the normal choicest blossom and fruit.

In my own uninstructed and halting fashion, I had labored for a number of years towards this aim. You may, therefore, understand the joy that came to me when at Chicago I caught the first glimpse of the work of this school. I had passed from school to school; everywhere I had found the same stereotyped conventionalism, everywhere the same unreasoning endeavor to subject art (which is intensest and freest life) to arbitrary formalisms, everywhere the pupil's gaze turned to so-called rules and legitimacies, instead of searching out the laws



that live in his own soul, everywhere the same ruthless efforts to tie the pupil's hand with arbitrary mannerisms, instead of liberating conditions that might enable his ideas and ideals to live themselves forth upon some recording surface or into some plastic material. From booth to booth I had gone and had seen the walls plastered over with weak imitations of the thoughts or no-thoughts of some system-maker until my soul grew sick with the musty odors of darkness and decay, when at last the display of the work of this school burst upon my weariness..

It came to me as a reproach and a prophecy,—a reproach for my despondency, a prophecy of a new eureka. Here there was not a stroke of work that did not embody a complete thought clearly elaborated in the learner's mind. Every achievement rested upon the pupil's personal experience and seemed consciously related to some spontaneous purpose that had had its birth and growth in the pupil's heart. In the light of their handiwork the students had explored the contents of their own minds, judging at every step the value of their work by criteria grown on the soil of their own experience and lifted into consciousness by their own efforts. At every step I saw them intently and yet without strain gaining at the same time clearer comprehension of the object of their work and greater confidence in their powers of accurate, lucid self-expression. And this seemed to be managed so adroitly by the school, and with such clear-visioned consistency and unfailing respect for the learner's thought, that weariness of spirit and the rebellious desire to be let alone, so common in the traditional school, could not enter here.

In the ordinary school, which labors to force all minds into the same arbitrary molds of traditional mediocrity, the teacher is forever dictating, directing, holding up effete patterns, and obsolete ideals that have no vital meaning in the life of the child, forever reinforcing his efforts with books and charts, systems and formulas, recipes and dogmas, never affording the learner an opportunity to become acquainted with himself and to gain the conviction that there is within him a life teeming with possibilities far beyond the reminiscences of past and the incongruities of foreign achievements.

In this school as I saw it at the exposition this was not the case.



Here the pupil seemed to lead. He fairly felt himself growing. New revelations of his power came to him at every turn. He lived himself into confidence in his own power to think and to express thought. Whereas the ordinary traditional school is ever busy in dryest exercises to establish detached automatisms as to how to do this and how to do that, directing the child's chief attention to the mechanism of himself; the automatisms of the required work were here so closely tied up with the pupil's thought and purpose that they took care of themselves, growing with the growth of thought and purpose, leaving the child free to devote himself wholly to these most important things.

Elsewhere, I had seen the child weighted down with cubes and balls, with cylinders and cones, with lines straight and curved, parallel and diverging, loading himself with wearisome definitions of these things or investing them with an unhealthy mysticism in accordance with a sadly perverted reading of Froebel's thought; here I found practical comprehension and free control of these things, attained without weariness and suppressed sorrow, a loving application of Froebel's living thought; cubes and cylinders, squares and circles becoming familiar friends through the service they gave in the expression of thought and in the achievement of purpose. Here I saw the so-called principles of parallelism and perpendicularity, of radiation and balance, of circle and involute, of perspective and shadow, discovered by the children in the needs of their own souls, clearly put forth and thoughtfully applied in spontaneous work, shining in the lucidity of native, not of borrowed, light. Here I saw an art rooted deeply in the child's own continuously growing experience, vitally connected with his every interest and line of study, fed by every other subject of instruction and establishing in the child's organic self the income of all these subjects; an art which is capable of enhancing the utilities of life by clothing them in beauty, capable of rendering the materialities of life lucid with their recognized latent spiritualities, capable of weaving into the now, and here the life-ideals that come to us from the past or are brought to us from afar, not in servile imitation, but in free assimilation and development. Here I saw the promise of a new descriptive art, stimulating observation and discovery, inviting to the

study of the inner reasons of outer form, revealing the deeper laws and conditions of our environment.

Here I saw (although Mr Tadd modestly repudiates this) the promise of a new creative art, shall I say of a truly national and specifically American art, in full accordance with the subjective needs and aspirations of this new nation, free from Egyptian and Persian petrifications, from Japanese trivialities, from French frivolities and pessimisms, free from all that is extraneous and effete; an art which is not meant to tickle the idle and dissolute, but to sustain the earnest, which does not revel in the bizarre, but strives to reveal the unity of the true and the beautiful, of joy and vigor; an art which does not drag man into the bogs of self-indulgence, but lifts him to the heights of self-assertion in the service of holiest ideals.

I congratulate this beautiful city on the proud distinction of being the home of such a school. I congratulate the nation upon the fact—significant in its coincidence—that the City of Brotherly Love, from which was proclaimed our national independence, is thus generously preparing to secure for us a new independence in the realms of art.

---

SINCE writing the above, I have had the privilege of looking over advance sheets of Mr. Tadd's book. The perusal of these pages has confirmed me in the high esteem in which I hold the work of this gifted teacher. In this book he has liberated manual and art training from the trammels of tradition and from the snares of commercial dilettantism. He has revealed to us a manual and art training that rests consistently on the fundamental immanent instincts of self-activity, and that appeals at every step to the highest esthetic aspirations of the unfolding soul; a manual training that does not allow itself to become clogged with the tools and tricks of shop and trade, although it touches shop and trade at every point, but in a way that infuses into the plainest work the beauty and charm of an esthetic conscience; an art training which, far from overwhelming the pupil's yearnings for self-expression with the debris of past achievements, places the elements of past success at the pupil's disposal for living

appreciation and for his own purposes in the artistic formulation of ideas and ideals; an art training which, instead of reducing art-study to a dry and burdensome recitation process, makes of it a stimulating delight, touching with new power every phase of growth, every impulse of self-expression.

Mr. Tadd's book does not bring us a new "system." It does not propose to drive every student through the same grooves, leading jointly, not to mediocrity, but rather to indifference. It does not look upon art as a consignment of exotics, to be painfully and tremblingly transplanted in an inauspicious climate. Evidently, the author respects the esthetic instincts that live in every soul, and respects, too, the individual directions in which these instincts seek to assert themselves; to each individual pupil he would afford opportunity to gather strength and insight, as well as stimulus to rise into enthusiastic mastership. Art, to him, is a hardy plant whose seeds find congenial soil in every clime; beauty, to him, is an universal harmony that praises the Creator in all created things; this he would teach his pupils to find in every environment.

He seems to look upon art neither as a luxury nor as a new industry. Esthetic beauty is an essential element in the usefulness of things which by this element become better adapted to their purpose and more enjoyable and congenial to the user. Yet in thus applying art to industry, the author does not fall into the error of reducing art to the level of an industry, but ever keeps distinct its divine mission to lift man and humanity to a fuller appreciation of the deep harmonies of inmost being and purpose that are revealed to man in the form and color symphonies of created things.

A most important feature of the book is its adaptability to every condition under which children are taught, from the district school at the crossing of the roads to the elaborate school system of an opulent city. To the district school teacher as well as to the city supervisor of art and manual training, it affords suggestion and guidance. In both it will stimulate to increased activity and lift into clearer light whatever of latent or developed ability they may possess. The intelligent following of its teachings will, in a large measure, emancipate the one from the need of a special teacher, and enable the other to render

himself more and more indispensable in his wider field. To both it will come as a helper and friend.

Thus, I trust, this book is destined to clear the way for the advent of a truly American art which, on the one hand, will add to our industries a growing regard for grace and beauty, and, on the other hand, will hasten the time when America shall be freed from the bane of mere imitation in matters of art, when she shall rejoice in an art of her own which in architecture and sculpture, in painting and engraving, shall symbolize and thereby crystallize the ideals and aspirations of the American people.

W. N. HAILMANN, Supt. of Instruction.

Dayton, O., October, 1898.



A Child's Pen and Ink Sketches Very Much Reduced.

Drawn from pictures by A. de Neuville, made by one of the girls (illustrated in this book) at eleven years of age. Many of the pupils can do free work of this character, owing to the knowledge they have of real drawing.



# BOOK ONE

## First Principles



"In childhood and in the earliest period of education, have more care for the *health* of the *body* than for the *mind*, and for the *moral* character than for the *intellectual*. Let nothing base or servile, vulgar or disgraceful, meet the eye or assail the ear of the young; for from words to actions is but a step. Let their earliest and first impressions of all things be the best. Let them be taught fully all the essential elements of education and as much of what is useful in a merely mechanical point of view as will have the effect of rendering the body, the soul, and the intellectual powers capable of arriving at the highest excellence of their respective natures. The merely useful, or absolutely necessary, matters of education are not the only ones that deserve attention, but to these should be added such as exalt and expand the mind and convey a sense of what is beautiful and noble. For to be looking everywhere to the merely useful, is little fitted to form an elevated character, or a liberal mind."—*Aristotle.*





### Children's Work, Grammar Grade, Philadelphia Public Schools

The upper part of picture represents designs for various purposes, made in color and black. The middle panels are designs modeled in clay. The chest (with the panels upon it) and chair represent carved work in oak, made by different pupils. All of this work is original in design and made by pupils of the grammar grades from the public schools.

## CHAPTER I

### Introduction



CLOCK

Designed, drawn and carved  
by high school boys

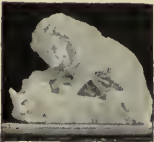
IN THE PROBLEM OF CHILD education, than which there is scarcely any subject more widely discussed, there enters equally with the mental, the consideration of the physical and the esthetic development. I consider esthetics—the science of the beautiful in nature and art, especially that which treats of the expression and embodiment of beauty in art—one of the important things in education. The young, of whatever circumstance in life, have a right to the joy that comes from knowing and perceiving beauty in nature and in art forms. If we are to plant anything in the young, or give them any capacity, it should be the power of enabling them to perceive in their environment “the good, the true and the beautiful.”

Esthetic  
training  
necessary in  
education

This of course is to be done at the same time that we give the young the capacity to make a living. To teach them a trade

The  
first tools

only, or to fit them for business, or commerce only—to make square pegs for round holes, as we often do—is a mistake. I have no sympathy with the manual training methods that make the use of tools and workshop exercises the main end. The pupils become simply machines, thoughtless mechanisms.\* The first tools to be used and trained are the mind, the eyes and the hands,—the instrumentalities of the organism. To these our chief care should be given. It is of little use that the pupil has built a machine or performed a piece of work by mechanical movements, if his own organism is not complete, if his hand is not sure, his eye not true, and his mind not balanced.



The marginal engravings and initials are mostly of children's work.

The  
methods  
advocated

I make a plea for this organic skill! first because I have tested many pupils from divers institutions, and have found almost invariably that without instruments of precision—rulers, compasses, gauges, calipers, etc.—they are powerless. In many cases they are simply plan-followers and thoughtless mechanics, without the elementary facility that small children can get spontaneously in a few weeks' practice of rational methods in manual training. They have been trained under traditional formulas to do certain things in certain ways, without any endeavor to have them realize the immeasurable life possibilities and potentialities planted in each person.

The methods advocated herein for elementary work in education consist:—

1. In a practical development of the factors of the organism itself,—the hand, the eye and the brain—by the acquisition of their conscious control, to be followed by automatic control.
2. In the use at certain periods of powerful rectifying exercises to reform or correct awkward muscular movements

\* "We teach boys to be such men as we are. We do not teach them to aspire to be all they can. We do not give them a training as if we believed in their noble nature. We scarce educate their bodies. We do not train the eye and the hand. We exercise their understandings to the apprehension and comparison of some facts, to a skill in numbers, in words; we aim to make accountants, attorneys, engineers, but not to make able, earnest, great-hearted men. The great object of Education should be commensurate with the object of life. It should be a moral one; to teach self-trust; to inspire the useful man with an interest in himself; with a curiosity touching his own nature, to acquaint him with the resources of his mind, and to teach him what there is in all his strength, and to inflame him with a piety toward the Grand Mind in which he lives."—[Emerson, "Lectures and Biographical Sketches," Page 134.]



or habits, as well as for the purpose of gaining facility, balance, proportion, accuracy, magnitudes, fitness and grace.

3. Exercise in different mediums, as wood and clay, for acquiring dexterity and skill in shaping various ideas.

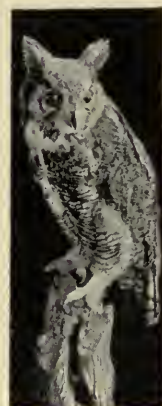
4. Exercises for acquiring accurate and permanent organic memories of environment: (a) From nature, at periods when impressions are most vivid (nascent period), from animals, flowers, insects, shells, etc.; (b) from art works and ornament of best periods; (c) creative designing in various materials.

Perhaps one of the most radical features of my method, apart from those of ambidexterity and memory drawing, and one that must be understood as being applied in all our schools, is the rotation of the branches of work. The pupils do not take a course of drawing alone, or of modeling alone, to be followed with another course for a certain period, but in every grade from the lowest the children are required to work in the four departments of drawing, designing, clay modeling and wood carving. By drawing all forms first on paper, then in soft clay, and then in tough wood, all the possible physical co-ordinations are acquired in the different materials. The work of making form in clay reinforces the drawing; carving in wood reinforces the modeling. Designing forms in clay and wood, as well as on paper, compels originality and invention, or the exercise of the creative capacity at every step of the work.

The method or system of rotation varies with the different schools. In some the pupils change from one branch to the other at each lesson; in others, at every fourth lesson; in others again, a piece of work in each branch is finished before the change is made. This method is very stimulating to the pupils, and especially shows for what they are best suited. The exercise of the opposite capacities gives them a chance to do work in the branches in which they show most deficiency. No exception is made with any pupil—all, in the elementary courses, must work in the various mediums, unless constitutionally defective.

Just as I insist that elementary manual training for the young must precede all special work,—such as joinery, cabinet

Rotation  
of branches  
of work



Make the  
hand skillful

work, metal work, trade processes, or draughting, mechanical and architectural drawing, object drawing, etc.,—so I insist that the hand must, by this rotation, become familiar and experienced with form in these different mediums. All artists and artisans at once admit the reasonableness of this. To make the hand itself skillful is necessary before it can do its best with tools.

By these methods all pupils without exception develop their capacities. Some get remarkable power and enter the diverse grades of art work at once, in various directions. All, however, acquire sufficient skill to enter the different minor industries with credit. All, according to their degree of intelligence, are prepared to do skilled work with tools and hands in the different vocations open to them, after very little preliminary training, because they have skilled hands, true eyes and a certain amount of power of expression and originality.



Memory drawing and ambidextrous drawing, as described in the following chapters, are made an important part of the course. By the nature-study drawing we endeavor to make permanent organic impressions of beauty that will be a joy to the pupils in their after lives, no matter how poor and sordid their lives may be.

Influence of  
beauty

So powerful is the influence of a knowledge of beauty and the joy that comes from it, that it is possible to make a contented mind, or a mind that will remain contented, if necessary, in the most toilsome drudgery. There is a certain amount of compensation in this. It is not necessary that the so-called "lower classes" should have small minds, or low minds. The mind can be expanded, elevated, even in the lowest stages of society. This is done by art methods rightly directed and by esthetic culture, especially that which concerns itself with the expression and embodiment of beauty in form, which has so important an effect on the organism.

The training of these activities has a higher outcome than the solely physical one. It ministers directly to a certain amount of moral training; it has distinct ethical effects.



Morality is embodied in nature. Ideas of goodness and badness are received from things. Whenever children are taught to use their own faculties, their powers of choice and of intelligent selection must become developed, until, by habit, perhaps by instinct, preference for the good and dislike for the bad become ingrained.

Moral training  
and its value

It is no more difficult to make children realize the immutability of moral laws than it is to teach them the immutability of physical laws. Just as a child knows the effect of gravity, or the action of fire upon the body, so it can be brought to a realization of the distinction between the true and the false, the beautiful and the ugly; the standards of these qualities are absolute. Perception of them, strengthened by the force of habit, must come through the repetition of intelligent observation and the union of thought with action.

If we are ever to get true morality as well as intellectuality, it will be by making the young recognize the rightness of things. Material things,—plants, flowers, crystals, animals,—never cheat. All nature hums and vibrates with truth. Water, trees, sounds from metal, stones and wood, ring out truth every time. So will the children when, with loving recognition attained through trained observation and action, they realize the divinity and mystery of things. Only by enjoyment and love of work can this be effected, and to do this teachers must inculcate the higher objects of work, of struggle, of sacrifice and unselfishness, showing that only by work, earnest endeavor, and unceasing effort can we reach the highest planes of physical, mental and ethical culture.

To get true  
morality

Experience has gradually taught the author to change a great many of his ideas and plans, until he has come, during the last few years, to fundamentals in this direction.

For educational purposes, he has found that the teaching of a trade is not the most beneficial thing that can be done for a boy or a girl. He has also learned that to take fifty boys and make them all carpenters, or plumbers, irrespective of their different dispositions and tastes, is a wrong, a great wrong.

Trade teaching  
not beneficial



Discover  
capacity, then  
educate it

This is one of the tendencies of our modern systems of education that can be readily seen in most cities now where the industrial and the mercantile ideas have been overdone, where children are fitted even in the high schools and other institutions for commercial courses, irrespective of any natural capacity they may have. A great many institutions teach typewriting, stenography, bookkeeping, penmanship, to all comers, irrespective of their capacity, and by degrees the market has become overstocked.

There are more clerks than we can care for, and fewer artisans and skilled workers than are needful. In response to an advertisement in almost any city requesting clerical help, hundreds of applications may be received. In some cases the applicants volunteer to work for the experience, or for nominal pay. If an advertisement is put in the paper for a skilled hand worker in almost any of the trades, the reverse is true; there will be very few applicants, and wages must be paid in proportion to capacity.

It seems reasonable to me, and the proper thing to do, that we should fit our children to enter into pursuits to which they are specially adapted, where there is not already a crowd, pushing each other to the wall. It seems to me that this should be especially the object of the newer institutions of learning that are founded expressly for the purpose of helping people to help themselves. I consider that it is wrong to produce more typewriters, stenographers, bookkeepers and penmen, when the market is already overstocked. It seems an injury to the ones already working. Of course I know that by struggling, a percentage of these newcomers will achieve distinction, that they will gradually work their way to the top. But how about the large percentage who do not have much capacity to struggle, who do not have even sufficient energy to make the required movements to change their environment and to start anew in some other line, who remain drudges on account of this lack of disposition, or this mental inertia? Certainly, we should consider them.

My first idea in teaching, years ago, was simply to give several kinds of drawing,—drawing from objects, mechanical drawing, etc., and to teach a few trades. We taught carpenter work, designing, painting, pottery work, mosaic setting, metal chasing, and needle work of several kinds, at different times. The children and adults elected their branches of study. It was gradually found, however, that this was not the best plan. Three or four years of carpenter work, except in the limited operations of the trade, did not develop the eye and the hand, and proved futile in developing the mind and the judgment. The operations being mostly mechanical, and being performed by instruments of precision, every time a board was cut it would be marked off, every time a piece of wood was cut it would be gauged; the caliper, the T square and the ruler were constantly used.

First  
experiments

The sentiment of Michael Angelo gradually entered my mind: "We must carry our instruments of precision in the eye, not in the hand." Only after striving and struggling up above the use of instruments of precision, rulers, compasses, mechanical methods, do we recognize their futility in developing the mind, the judgment, the eye and the hand. The mechanical methods had to give way, one after the other, after trial in various directions. Only by trying and testing the old methods, and thus proving their fallacy, did we emerge into the light of better ways.

Feeble art methods, trade training, abuse of geometric forms and blocks, false, artificial and unnatural systems devised for money-making purposes, were tried and proved wanting. A number of trade processes were tested with similar results, until we actually, by experience, came down to fundamental facts, and on these we have built up a method reasonable, feasible and without great cost, adapted to all grades, from child to adult; a plan that can be applied without friction to every kind of educational institution, and limited only by the capacity of the individual; a method covered by natural law, working with the absolute precision of nature itself; a process that

Fundamental  
methods



unfolds the capacities of children, as unfold the leaves and flowers; a system that teaches the pupils that they are in the plan and part of life, and enables them to work out their own salvation on the true lines of design and work as illustrated in every natural thing.

Educators,  
scientists and  
doctors express  
hearty good  
will

Many educators, scientists and doctors have expressed their hearty good will toward the method outlined in this work, anything saving wear and tear of mind and matter appealing to them directly. Much time and energy are saved to pupils working this way; their understanding of things being quickened, they have less drudgery to go through to obtain facility.

The work is chiefly and above anything else to be desired for its disciplinary value as an educational method, apart from its practical value, in that it cultivates judgment, proportion, symmetry and fitness. In drawing on blackboards, the children take exercise. The work is done on so large a scale that they have to move about, no small work being allowed. The children avoid the habit of peering at lines, shortening their focal length. This is one great trouble in the drawing, reading or writing as usually followed in schools. In many instances much damage is done to sight. Too many children wear spectacles in these days.



Original Design



## CHAPTER II

### Development of Bent or Disposition

---



Enlarging Drawings

HIS BOOK IS ALSO PRIMARILY written to aid people remote from art centers and educational opportunities. It is not so much with the idea that with the book they can learn to do the work, as it is in the way of suggestion to those who cannot be reached by other means. The millions of such people, young and old, may perhaps be helped by knowing that most of the ideas embodied in this book have been gained in the hard school of experience.

A large portion of the children in the various schools and in the different communities are especially endowed or have a native capacity for hand skill,—the power to do skillful work in many diverse pursuits. There is a much larger proportion of these than many people believe. This has been demonstrated by numbers of experiments I have made and from graded tables based thereon for a period of years. This is true of the upper classes of society as well as the lower.

Capacity for  
hand skill

Lack of hand  
skill one cause  
of poverty

Experiments have been going on in a number of countries, and in a variety of institutions and prisons, which have proved conclusively that what have been termed "the lowest and most degraded members of society" owe their condition partly to the lack of this capacity and of their hand craft being undeveloped. I have found in penal institutions in which I have taught or conducted classes, a fair proportion of pupils who, with development and training, would have shown extraordinary capacity. The same is also true of people who have unfortunately been bred in the lap of luxury, and who have never been taught to do anything, or had their capacities in these directions trained. A very fair proportion of the pupils in some of the best private schools and colleges, where I have been able to come in contact with numbers of this class, show remarkable skill and capacity.

Importance of  
finding out the  
"bent" of the  
young

For a series of years I have kept tally of numbers of cases among parents, care-takers and friends of children who have visited my various schools. Test questions put to them show that a very large proportion have never been able to develop their bent or disposition, and in the course of time and experience they have found this out. One of the commonest statements in my schools is that made by parents, when they say their primary desire in bringing the children is that they may get the training which they themselves did not have and which they should have had when they were young. It is remarkable how many parents acknowledge that they feel now that in youth they had a taste for certain branches which they were never able to carry out, perhaps an inclination toward mechanics or construction, or a feeling for form, and it is sorrowful to hear the regret that is sometimes thus expressed.

If the methods in this book are good for anything at all, it will be for the fact that we do find out by their aid the disposition or "bent" of the pupils. I am inclined to think that this capacity to find out the especial capacity of pupils by various tests is one of the best parts of our work. Surely this is one of the first things to be done in education. Even if the children are to be compelled to follow certain distasteful pursuits for

Illustration 11



Freehand Manual and Memory Drawing

money, there is no reason why they should be debarred from a glimpse of, or an insight into, the possibilities and potentialities they have or might have. Much might be saved in the way of care and worry to the individual, and much gained in the giving of a capacity to enjoy, by following out certain of the lines herein contained, as a recreation or a hobby. Everyone recognizes the value of this to-day.

Few parents realize the great variety of skilled pursuits that are now open in the various directions of hand work, as compared with a few years ago. The old idea that the only respectable pursuit for one's child is a profession has been worn out for many years in this country, but it persists in more places than would be suspected, simply through ignorance of the enormous expansion of the industrial world of to-day, with

Skillfulness  
beneficial and  
a means of  
mental  
expansion

its opportunities and fortunes. I am so penetrated with this idea from my experience that I consider it wrong for any child in any condition of life to be debarred from at least a portion of this fundamental work. Even in the professions, such as that of clergyman, doctor or lawyer, judgment, reason and imagination are required. It is not fair that men and women of affairs should be debarred from the extra power and mental expansion that these capacities or opportunities give them.

Real manual  
training a  
means of finding  
out capacity

Again, many kinds of business are so much alike, requiring some technical skill in diverse directions, that it is almost impossible for those entering on a career to be able to find out in a few years whether they are especially suited or adapted to it. It is very disheartening gradually to realize in the course of time their lack of fitness or capacity for the pursuit they are following. This is illustrated by thousands of cases all over the world. I have in mind some bitter experiences that I have suffered individually. I have a vivid recollection of a dentist who should have been a farmer. I have seen many doctors and surgeons who should have been in the possession of perfect control of their hands and fingers, yet who seem to be possessed of "thumbs" only. Every year of experience will show us such distressing cases, and few can attain to positions of responsibility and care without coming in contact with many instances of this kind.

Necessity of an  
energetic  
disposition

The author's hope is to help that great army of persons who feel that they are not especially gifted or endowed in anything, and to make them able to expend their energies to advantage in some practical way—energies that are too often wasted and puttered away in trifling work or labors that accomplish nothing in ministering to their welfare. Too often many fail in life, though possessing good intentions and desire to do their best. They try one thing and then another, never becoming thorough in any direction, and never becoming able to earn a proper or sufficient income. Their work is only half-hearted, they do not feel that it is their mission, and consequently movements are made that are not energetic enough and little product results.



*Satisfaction* is essential to the mind and body. The organism is fortunately so constituted that a satisfying income or a full purse is intimately related to a contented mind and an energetic body.

Satisfaction  
essential!

How many teachers there are who, through small pay and physical and mental inertia, do injustice to their pupils. While frequently well meaning and endowed with altruistic desires, they fail to accomplish anything; nay, they even do harm and injury, because to be a good teacher requires essentially the inspiration that the art of teaching is divine. It is a mission to teach children having souls. The teacher must especially realize that each mind or soul is an immortal part of the future heaven he or she is helping to build.

How differently one feels and works when the right thing and the right way have been found! How much more intense every thought and action become. This is one of the objects of this book—to show ways and means that transform the dull routine and drudgery of teaching into a pleasurable and profitable means to the welfare of many.

Inspiration by  
performance  
of deeds



Blackboard Drill Work in Design

## CHAPTER III

### Importance of Contact with Things instead of the Symbols of Things \*

---

Importance of  
various sense  
impressions



Bench Work

IFE IS A SUCCESSION of lessons that must be lived to be understood." "Experience, and not memory, is the mother of ideas." My desire is to impress all with the importance of developing the organism through each of the different sense channels, in addition to the verbal or word centers. The tendency with the present modes of education is to overtax the memory and overload the mind with studied words. Instruction by telling is a feeble mode of impressing the mind. "Actions speak louder than

words." Only in proportion to my experience can I understand the symbols of things, that is, words. Words are empty sounds unless accompanied by clear ideas or thoughts of the

---

\* I am indebted to Dr. Hallman for many of the ideas expressed in this chapter.

things signified. I can have true ideas or false ideas only in proportion to my experience.

"Ideas are symbolized by words. Words are signs for natural facts. Every object, rightly seen, unlocks a new faculty in the soul and thus becomes a new weapon in our arsenal of power." It is important in the first place to secure ideas, then to connect these ideas with intelligible words. "The content of a word depends upon the character of the idea symbolized." To the child the word symbolizes no more than his own ideas. The supreme thing, then, is (1) to secure ideas, (2) to connect these ideas with intelligible words, (3) to combine these ideas and words with appropriate actions, (4) to secure a complete working of this mechanism in each instance; this union of securing thought and action so that it works unfailingly and in a measure becomes conduct or behavior.

Importance of  
getting ideas  
first

Every natural object bristles with facts, teems with ideas. I should be bristling with facts, I should teem with ideas! The object should inspire me to become eloquent, to give expression through my various channels of facts and ideas. By the tongue I should vocally give expression to ideas. I should be able to write ideas, and should give expression to them by means of drawing, constructing, modeling, painting, etc. By this means we make thought fabric and mind structure.

Thought fabric  
built by variety  
of expression

We consider too much the symbols of knowledge instead of the sources of knowledge—the objects, facts and processes of nature in time and space. How can we expect to grasp the ideas represented by these objects, facts and processes unless we embody them? We too often introduce our children to the sources of information which books supply, instead of to those sources which nature and experience supply. If we give them information from books only, there are a consumption of vitality, a dissipation of energy, a diversion of the attention and a prevention of the impulse which prompts to action.

Dissipation  
of  
energy

On the other hand, if we introduce our children to the sources of knowledge, the facts, objects and processes of nature, there are a conservation of energy, a storing of vitality, an

inspiration, and a compelling of the attention that gives a strong, active impulse to the feelings and emotions which prompt to action.

Assimilate facts,  
not words  
only

We must, therefore, "assimilate facts, not words." If we do this, we make our thinking structure and mental fabric at first hand. This cannot be done if we assimilate words alone; only partial ideas can be formed that do not yield complete mental structure. Ideas should grow in clearness, vividness, comprehensiveness and accuracy by repetition. Expressions through the various sense channels should be related and associated in thought. Only thus can we get the appropriate impulse that prompts to action; only thus can we get that right action which is the fruit of a good education.

Repetition and  
the force of  
habit

But not only must we get information first hand, but we must register it organically by repetition. It must become a part of us, ready to be used when needed. "The very essence of knowledge is in possessing it and in being able to use it."

Vital union of  
head, hand,  
heart

I want to make clear, if I can, the union which exists between the head and the hand, also the union which exists between the head, the hand and the heart. You cannot rightly train the one without influencing the others. As Dr. Balliet says: "All hand and eye work involves brain work, and the distinction between hand work and brain work is not true."

All the intellectual forces in the world will not enable me to know the texture of velvet or sandpaper until I touch them, then at once the knowledge is awakened in my brain through my hand and eye. I cannot rub my brain against the cloth or the paper, I do it through my hand and eye. I cannot know the shape of so simple a thing as a common comb through the touch alone. I must see it before I can get the right conception of it, my touch not enabling me to feel the space between each tooth.

Few persons get complete and correct ideas of the various senses as organized, how distinct and separate they are, and yet how mutually dependent and connected. I can feel with my coarse fingers through very fine skin the most delicate pulse; I



Illustration 14



Wood Carving Class, Public School of Industrial Art

can readily feel the blood bounding along, on some wrists I can even see it, yet with the tongue, that has such wonderful sense of touch for many things, I cannot get the slightest sensation in this direction. This curious fact is mentioned by Sir Charles Bell, the discoverer of the functions of the nerves. The sense of touch must sometimes be helped by the sight. It is often difficult to touch certain parts of one's hand with the other without the aid of sight.

Various sense  
impressions  
organized into  
concrete ideas

Drawing should be used as modes of thought expression quite as often and as much as speech and writing; for while pupils gain accuracy of perception, they also gain facility of expression, the terms interacting. Some one has said that the foundation of right reasoning is accurate perception. How seldom would pupils shirk work and how pleasant it would become if drawing were used as a mode of expression. Drawing and art work would perforce redeem the sordid homes of many pupils by teaching a certain amount of beauty and

Drawing a  
mode of  
thought  
expression

creating a desire for it, instead of leaving them to dissipate their energy by the reading of senseless novels and trashy papers. Drawing properly taught gives a disposition to do something. I do not by any means mean the kind of drawing given usually to-day, but I mean drawing as a mode of thought expression that will be used as often as speech and writing. See what the product would be. See what the product is already in some of our schools where the children produce things of use and beauty for the adornment of their homes.

The inspiration to perform deeds, to make movements, is so important that I cannot help calling attention to it continually. Prof. Reuben Halleck says: "A glance around us is nearly certain to discover some persons of marked deficiency in the world of action. They may like to learn and to continue absorbing knowledge, but they never make any worthy use of it. A visit to the reading rooms of any library will enable us to find chronic, sponge-like absorbers of whatever is written. Their very faces come to have a dreamy, relaxed expression. These persons generally fancy that they are going to do something soon. But the motor paralysis becomes more and more complete. Sometimes boys are allowed to bury themselves in book after book until action becomes extremely irksome to them. They love to absorb ideas and to direct all their motor energy into dreaming or castle-building. In the case of the majority of people, motor action needs to be cultivated and to be directed to a definite end. It is not enough for one to form an idea of becoming a great man. He must do things to make himself great."

Book-bred  
people  
indisposed  
to action

Read also Sir Francis Galpin on "Inquiries Into Human Faculty and Its Development:" "A visual image is the most perfect form of mental representation wherever the shape, position and relations of objects in space are concerned. It is of importance in every handicraft and profession where design is required. The best workmen are those who visualize the whole of what they propose to do before they take a tool in their hands. Strategists, artists of all denominations, physicians who

Importance  
of visual  
memory

contrive new experiments, and in short all who do not follow routine, have need of it. The pleasure its use can afford is immense. \* \* \* I believe that a serious study of the best method of developing and utilizing this faculty without prejudice to the practice of abstract thought in symbols is one of the many pressing desiderata in the yet unformed science of education." Prof. Halleck says further: "The great danger from castle-building and inveterate novel reading lies in divorcing ideas from action. The dreamer accustoms himself to become incapable of action."



I am convinced that some of the present methods of education devitalize society. This is a question agitated among educators. And it has been repeatedly suggested that mere book-learning does not diminish crime, but that it increases crimes which involve the exercise of penetration and scholarly training. A writer on this subject asked recently "Whether the short-sighted, illiterate or the crafty, educated man of evil design was more dangerous to society." Education as at present conducted will not develop the best potentialities in man's nature, will not enable him to bring into action the best that is in him. It is unreasonable to think that a knowledge of the "three R's" will do this. It must be something very much more. It must be a training to obtain habits of self-reliance and self-control and the golden fruit that results,—a training that will make people think and act more instead of less, that will open up the immense realms of ideas so few reach.

Too much  
reading  
divorces ideas  
from action

Under the old method of education, the time being chiefly given to the study of words,—printed, written and spoken,—the printed and written words (symbols for ideas) are studied at the expense of the ideas themselves. This leads to false or partial ideas and weak imagination. The vision is used too much, the pupil reading and writing at the expense of eyesight. The focal length is frequently shortened, and the too frequent use of fine finger movements required in writing cause, in many cases, nervousness and chorea. Some of the time given to writing should be given to larger movements, to hand and arm

Words studied  
at the expense  
of ideas



movements, finger co-ordinations coming last. This also improves the writing.

The too frequent use of the eye and ear in the old methods causes injury not only to the eye, but also to the verbal memory. Still worse is it that, as a result of these wrong methods, facility in other modes of expression and impression—such as drawing, painting, making, creating, etc.—becomes dormant or torpid through never having been used.

All channels  
for improving  
the mind to be  
used

Under the new methods of education, all the channels for impressing the mind of the child should be used as much as possible. Through the vision, the touch, muscular sense, hearing and speaking, impressions should be assimilated, and through the same channels expression should be given to the ideas formed by creating and designing in diverse mediums.

The soundest mental fabric is built by the perceptions that are the most accurate, and that call into play for their expression the largest groups of associated and connected motor centers; sense movements, incoming and outgoing. Thought and action are organically related, and education consists in firmly connecting them by repetition and habit. I am convinced that the so-called "thought studies" are valueless unless they are firmly locked in the mind by systematized impressions from things by action and that their value depends on the facility of expression which comes from accurate perception.

Automatic  
obedience of  
the hand

Real manual training is the basis of all elementary education, because "the hand is the instrument of instruments and the mind is the form of forms" (Aristotle). Through the union of the brain and the hand, the products of nature have been made useful and valuable to man, and the work of the world has been accomplished. The hand should be made spontaneously obedient to the mind; it should start forward instantly to obey the mind by the appropriate movement, as the tongue usually obeys. Book study and word study, preaching and praying, will not give this desired disposition to work and action. It must be the result of rational training and attention to its needs during the period of growth.

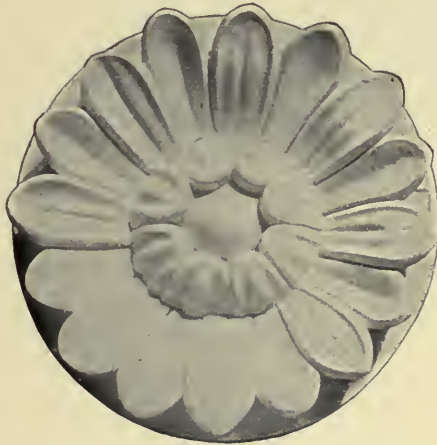


I firmly believe that we need to-day trained and skillful hands more than we need fluent tongues. Yet I also consider the training herein advocated the most essential for the getting of true eloquence of the tongue. Right ideas and right deeds are the primary inspiration for both. To deprive a child of this training is to prevent it from ever knowing the potentialities of its own nature; to prevent the child from knowing and loving nature as she should be loved—"the fountain and source of all education, science, art and religion."\* To deprive the child of this training is to rear it in ignorance of its power to use hand and eye, a power that can be mastered at an early age; and a power the proper development of which aids so much toward practical success in the actual work of life, while also aiding the physical, mental and spiritual welfare of the individual.

Right manual  
training will  
give a love of  
nature

---

\* Dr. G. Stanley Hall.



## CHAPTER IV

### Distinction Between the True and False in Manual Training

---



Different kinds  
of manual  
training

THE OBJECT OF THE NEW EDUCATION is to get ideas in a rational way at first hand, by using the activity of the child. It is difficult to decide which kinds of manual training are educational and which are not; which kind of manual training should be used and which not. Many manual exercises are valueless for training and education, and yet nearly all kinds of manual training educate to a degree. It is amusing to see the variety of opinions, even among intelligent people, as to what kind of manual training is best for educational purposes. The manual training that should be given is that which develops in the individual:

1. The art of building ideas by using most of the channels of *impression* and most of the means of *expression*.
2. Accurate perceptive powers.
3. Facility of expression, not only in writing and verbally, but in a variety of ways through the hands.
4. The strengthening of thought fabric and mind structure, and capacity to use the same.

5. Most skill in the shortest space of time.
6. Fitness for the greatest number of fundamental operations or pursuits.

The power of expression in language, written or spoken, depends on accurate perception of things, on the power to form clear, definite ideas. Some kinds of manual training dull the power of accurate perception and limit the power of assimilating new impressions. Some forms of so-called manual training are so mechanical that they prevent co-ordinations that otherwise would have been made, consuming valuable time at the most vital period. Under this head I include such operations as paper cutting and folding, stick laying, sloyd, whittling, sawing, planing and joinery work and other merely mechanical movements.

Methods that  
prevent real  
manual  
training

Nothing can be more absurd than the extravagant claims made for sloyd and several similar narrow mechanical methods. For instance:

"That the knife is the only tool by means of which alone a finished object can be correctly made." "That it is the most familiar and the least mechanical of tools." "That it necessitates greater concentration of thought and attention than any other tool."\*

Stupid claims  
for sloyd

"You can acquire a sensitiveness of touch and corresponding correctness of eye more effectively by the judicious use of sandpaper than in any other way." "The curve can only be cut by hand, and hence in other courses of woodwork curved forms are eschewed, except those that can be cut with a fret saw and drawn with an 'architect's curve.'"<sup>†</sup>

Such statements carry their own condemnation to any thinking person who really understands what true hand skill or manual training is. I have seen a sign painter so drunk that he could not stand, but had to sit, yet he was able to space out and block in letters with wonderful accuracy. I have seen a carriage

\* "Sloyd," Larson, Boston, 1893.

† "A Plea for Sloyd," by T. G. Rooper, Reprinted from "Hand and Eye," 1892.

Limited  
skill

painter in the same condition striping or painting long lines free hand on wheels, with inarvelous precision. No real carver in wood ever uses anything but his eye, hand and chisel, no matter how elaborate the curves are. These operations are not the results of genius, they are simply the results of skill, with very few physical co-ordinations, and are such as all children can learn, without exception.



The utilitarian idea has been considered too much. The "useful model" has been done to death, the articles made being of the nature of bread boards, salt boxes, towel racks, knife boxes, scoops, etc. Children have wonderful energy and curiosity, but a few months' familiarity with these household objects dulls their desire, and the work partakes of the nature of a task or drudgery. Of course children will take to any kind of tools, like ducks to water, to escape from the schoolroom routine, even if it is a "whittling class." But consider what they might have been doing in the way of real manual training and invention, and in the creation of beauty.

Utilitarian  
idea  
overdone

The utilitarian idea is a valuable one, but it can readily be used to dwarf and stultify the child's energies. We can of course say that the child learns by "doing," but a great deal depends upon the character of its deeds. No feeble amateur with "knife work," no plain mechanic or carpenter with hammer and chisel, should dare to dally with the works and mental mechanism of a child. As well let an idiot repair a watch with a stick. The child, if left to its own impulse, will assuredly do something and find out something.

Again, though sloyd may be good for Sweden, where the nights are long, the children require occupation, and the homes need the useful models (this being the original reason for sloyd, as an authority admits\*), this country has very different needs for its youth.

Sloyd is selected as an example of the work that is not true manual training, or the best kind of elementary work in

---

\* "Sloyd," Larson, Boston, 1893.



PLATE THREE



Sloyd selected  
for  
criticism

Sloyd not real  
manual training

Automatic  
dexterity  
desired

manual training, because it is considered in so many quarters to be superior. Sloyd is selected for criticism because it has been so thoroughly tried, and with many advantages in several cities, no expense having been spared and all possible facilities having been offered for its easy introduction. I consider sloyd perhaps the best of all the amateur woodworking systems, though I dispute the claim that there is any real drawing in it, unless mechanical draughting is considered to be drawing. It has been graded to fit children from the age of nine to fifteen years—six years of the most vital period of life. I have never seen a sloyd pupil or teacher who really had the elementary manual training required of some of our little children, as described in this book.

It seems as though the chief idea in sloyd was to see how many different tools could be used and how many operations could be devised, little thought being given to the absolute needs of the eye, the hand and the mind as fundamental tools. "It includes seventy-two exercises with forty-five tools, in eight kinds of wood, and is now employed experimentally in several schools in Boston."\* In line with paper cutting and folding, sloyd is occupation or "busy work," but is very slightly educational. Ten courses of sloyd work will not give the pupil the automatic facility desired, or even fundamental co-ordination of the motor centers of the hands. Throughout the entire course, instruments of precision,—the rule, the compass, the try-square, the gauge,—are used constantly. Therefore, the eye and the mind never get the unconscious automatic power of grasping magnitudes and proportions so essential in elementary training during the period of growth.

Is it not a mistake, then, to think that facility in any one narrow mechanical direction is proper manual-training education? Should not one look with suspicion upon operations, such as paper cutting, stick laying, whittling, sloyd, etc., which

---

\* "Sloyd," Larson, Boston, 1893.

produce such little results and consume so much precious time, and endeavor to find operations that will give fundamental skill that is valuable and that can be used in all occupations or trades?

The graded courses and exercises in some other kinds of woodwork and drawing, extending over two or three years, with all exercises thought out, mapped out and charted beforehand, limit the pupils' capacity for doing original work, designing or creative work, besides consuming the energy at the nascent period, the period of growth, that should be given to right manual training, which if not given at this period makes good results impossible at a later period. It is like waiting for the hand to become fully grown before undertaking violin playing or piano playing, or some other operation requiring skill, instead of allowing the hand to grow into the positions so much to be desired by skillful performers and workers, with the added penalty of the physical impossibility of getting into these positions after a certain time has elapsed. The same is also true with regard to the mental states; after a certain time has elapsed it is as impossible for the mind to invent, to design, to create spontaneously and automatically, as it is for the fingers or limbs to move skillfully, automatically and spontaneously.

Some  
exercises  
consume  
energy and  
inspiration

Of course I do not speak against proper woodworking operations as described in this book,—joinery, cabinet-making and pattern-making. After fundamental manual training skill has been acquired, these special trade operations are fit and proper in their right place, just as mechanical draughting, machine drawing, architectural drawing, are right and proper, after training in fundamental drawing. But it is wrong to select a few operations from any of these processes and give them to young children as proper elementary training.

Proper wood  
working  
operations

In many places drawing and manual training are separate and disassociated, courses of one being given separate and distinct from the other. In some cases the absurdity of this is shown by graded work for each, as though they were entirely different studies, and not related. It is as though drawing were

Manual  
training a  
mode of  
thought  
expression





Ideas the  
basis of  
originality

not a mode of thought expression, a means whereby ideas of the form and shape of things are recorded, and as if manual training were not a mode of thought expression in making and recording these forms and ideas by the hands.

The catalogue of some schools will usually show under the head of manual training, for boys—wood turning, pattern making, foundry molding, forging, machine work and bench work in wood, mechanical drawing, draughting and designing; for girls—sewing, dressmaking, millinery and cooking. These are occupations or trades that are good in themselves, but are limited in their capacity to train hand and eye to correctly carry out the dictates of the mind.

Still more do the trade processes mentioned fail to develop the formation of thought structure by the working out of original ideas, which is the basis of true originality. Right methods of manual training, on the other hand, do bring about this union of thought and action, whereby the pupil is enabled to *think* of the right thing, at the right time, in the right place, and in the right way, and then to *do* it.

I must not be understood here to speak against trades. I am in favor of every person having a pursuit and occupation, but I speak against the idea that possession of a trade process, or several trade processes, necessarily means true hand skill and right manual training, the power to make the hand obey the mind. The lack of this power explains the lack of real skill among so many workmen. The artist artisan is the exception, whereas he should be the rule. Art in handicraft is even more rare than handicraft itself. The methods laid down in this book, properly taught, supply the primary training that will give the skill, the hand facility, the co-ordination of hand, eye and brain, without which true handicraft can rarely be attained, even by many years of application.

Art in  
handicraft  
very rare

But the youth who has had this true manual training during his elementary schooling has already acquired more real skill of hand and eye than the average apprentice working during the like period at trade processes only, while the manual



trained youth is infinitely better off as regards mental development and character building. The manual trained youth is wonderfully fitted to acquire dexterity in trade processes. He assimilates them unconsciously, because his hand is already so thoroughly skilled. He will learn a trade and become a better workman in it in a few months than the ordinary apprentice would do in several years.

Real manual  
training better  
than  
apprenticeship

"What is manual training?" To some it means an exercise for muscles, like gymnastics, and to others a process of making boys merely handy; others think it a way of teaching trades to children, and nearly all confound it with mechanical training and suppose a drill is necessary in sawing and planing, chipping, filing, wood-turning, plumbing, etc., very few dissociating it from the use of machinery and from slow, tedious trade processes, or dream that it has anything to do with women and girls.

Mechanical  
training not  
hand training

Real manual training for the education of individuals cannot be obtained by mechanical pursuits similar to carpentry, plumbing, chipping, filing, etc. Real manual training is not a matter of simply doing different things; it is the intelligent selection of modes from the many operations and pursuits most suited to produce the effect desired. Swinging dumb-bells or pushing a plane or saw produces muscles, but does not require the constant use of the intellect; the thinking powers are not increased in ratio. There are many exercises, then, more fit for our purpose. We must select for manual training purposes, work and methods that in addition to giving muscular activity, will exercise the peripheral nerves as tools of the senses.

What real  
manual  
training is

It includes all processes that train the muscles and the mind to work in harmony. In some of its applications it gives skill in planing boards and shaping iron; but just as legitimately does it make the hand cunning to dissect a nerve, to engrave an etching or to finger a violin. And as no school of manual training is obliged to teach anatomy, engraving and music, so no school of the kind must necessarily teach joinery or chipping and filing. Those who believe that such processes are inseparable from the

Muscle and  
mind must  
work together

use of saws and hammers have not looked all around the subject.



Hand skill  
should precede  
trade training

The distinction between right manual training and trade processes is therefore clear. The one precedes the other, just as reading, writing and arithmetic precede accomplishments in the law or the ministry. Right here is a special field for true manual training that is bound to widen. The old plan of teaching the trades has been found wanting, in that it consumes much time and yet turns out workmen poor in craftsmanship and equally deficient in purpose. The new idea is to teach the trades in trade schools, or technical institutions, where the youth is carefully instructed in technical processes by experts. These trade schools are destined to increase in number and efficiency, as have the schools of law, medicine and theology. The youth who has had a proper course in manual training will acquire skill in the mechanical movements incident to any special trade in a fraction of the time that it requires for the novice who is untrained in facility of hand and eye. And this is true, whether the trade be taught in a technical school, or acquired by haphazard in an ordinary apprenticeship.

What are  
drawing and  
manual training

What are drawing and manual training when properly taught?

They are modes of getting ideas first hand and giving ideas first hand.

They bring about the union of thought and action which is so essential to the well-being of the individual.

They are physiologically and psychologically sound.

They are methods that train the powers of the instincts as they develop, that rightly educate these powers during their formative period, when most responsive to good or bad influence. They unify and simplify the courses of study.

They fit for the real work of life, for this training has a practical application in almost every vocation.

Drawing and manual training, properly taught, do away with tradition and the traditional errors in education. They are modes of thought expression, just as speech and writing are

modes of thought expression. Drawing is an universal tongue. It compels observation, reflection, perception and conception. It opens the mental eye, the eye of the understanding, that looks all around, up and down. It enables one to understand the message that is printed in every natural, normal thing, that is stamped with everlasting lines on each side of every leaf and blade of grass, that is twisted into the architecture of every shell, and that shines in the hues of every crystal—a message of beauty, of proportion, of grace and of fitness. Drawing makes mind.

Drawing  
makes mind

Drawing and manual training properly taught, as Hailman says, “render lucid the latent spiritualities of matter.” They “enhance the utilities of life by clothing them with beauty,” give power to do, power to enjoy.

One objection that has rightly been made to the introduction of the so-called manual training methods, especially by committees and superintendents, has been the great expense of the plant and equipments necessary. In large cities like Philadelphia, only 95 cents per annum per pupil is now spent for all supplies in general school work—books, pencils, paper, pens, and sewing materials. In the light of this fact, it seems absurd to pay for benches, sets of tools, etc., for so-called manual training, sums ranging from \$15 to \$30 per pupil, for a plant that can be used by a very limited number; the sloyd bench and tools alone costing sometimes as much as \$30.

Objections on  
account of cost

The cost of the plant for the manual training herein set forth is very small. It will be noticed that but few and very inexpensive tools are specified for the work in drawing, modeling and carving. In the Public School of Industrial Art, forty sets of carving tools, costing less than \$5 each, and a few simple tools for use in modeling, with some models of natural and art forms, suffice for 1000 pupils. The supplies required are equally inexpensive, consisting mainly of chalk, pencils, ink and brushes, cheap paper, some clay, etc., costing very little per year per capita. This slight expenditure only is required for four

Economy of  
right method

different departments—drawing, designing, clay modeling and carving, not one only, as in other systems.

Ease of  
application  
to large  
numbers

Another advantage of these methods is to be found in their ease of application to classes of large numbers, without large expense; in fact, if necessary, the work in drawing, the drill work, the ambidextrous work on blackboards, can all be done on slates and common manilla paper. A few sets of tools and appliances for modeling, and the clay, can be used in common by as many classes as can be brought in succession into the room. The same with the carving. Although this is not the best plan, it is inexpensive.

Because of the economy of plant and supplies, this method of manual training is within reach of the smallest or poorest schools as well as those in wealthy communities.

Cost of  
elaborate  
plants should  
be spent on  
teachers

The saving in equipment over improper methods may well be invested in more teachers and better teachers. It is as wrong to employ an underpaid and overworked teacher (the two usually go together) in manual training instruction as in other branches. The tendency in school work has been too much toward extravagance in equipment and parsimony toward instructors. Fine buildings and costly apparatus never compensate for poor teachers. It is the teacher's enthusiasm that must help to inspire the pupil; the teacher's intuition that must aid in discovering the pupil's individuality and help him to make the most of it; the teacher's human interest that must warm up a responsive interest in the pupil. These attributes of the teacher's personality can be supplied by neither books, apparatus nor buildings. The teacher has a mission to perform, he gives more of his very life to it than the worker in other vocations, and should be paid and esteemed accordingly.





## CHAPTER V

### Lack of Real Drawing—



HERE IT MAY BE FIT TO interject some of my experiences at the World's Fair at Chicago in 1893. For purposes of gaining experience, as well as of exhibiting our methods, we had a very large space in the educational department, adjoining

the most important of the technical schools and colleges. In this space I purposely had several "traps," one of which was a blackboard twenty feet long. My purpose in having this blackboard was to test adults and children of all conditions as to their capacity in certain directions. These tests are tabulated and systematized, and I discovered several interesting facts.

Not more than four per cent. of the drawing teachers who were tested could draw,—I mean draw as a mode of expression, delineate what they thought. The rest depended on the model entirely. Amazement was expressed continually at their even being requested to draw something simply without a model. I found only eight cases, out of several hundred, that had facility of hand,—I mean the kind of elementary facility required in this book from children. The tests were put to the teachers of a great many leading institutions, and to normal art school,

Lack of real  
power of  
drawing

college and technical graduates. Almost invariably there was an absence of proficiency in organic drawing, and, considering the amount of time they had given to the work, their imitative drawing was feeble beyond the power of words to express.

Lack of art  
training in  
common schools

Approaching this question from the art side, the unprejudiced observer who has any knowledge of art cannot fail to realize and be impressed with the lack of any tendency toward art training in most of the common schools of the country. There is a gulf between the teachers and the idea that has never been crossed, and the poverty of ideas on the part of teachers, intelligent in other respects, is amazing. It seems as if nothing right was being done, and that ignorance ruled in these matters. This is not owing to any fault of the teachers.

False systems  
formulated by  
publishing firms

I am inclined to lay more blame upon the inventors of certain systems, who are never artists, who are backed by publishing firms, and whose chief idea is to sell books and materials. Some of the schemes are so artificial as to require different sets of materials, copy books and plant for different grades, and constructions and technical terms have been so loaded upon these things that it requires a wise teacher and special training in the methods of the books alone to be able to understand their object and their purpose. This, fortunately, very few teachers endeavor to do. Some of the systems claim that their books and materials do away with the necessity of the teachers being able to draw, and that instruction can be imparted in an easy and ready fashion by means of these equipments. And so the game goes on at the expense of the children.

Another of my chief reasons for writing this book is because I feel I can be of service to a large proportion of the community represented by the superintendents of schools, also members of school committees, usually men and women of affairs, and others interested in the well-being of the schools in various towns and cities of the Union. The spirit of the age is compelling many, in spite of dislike, to advocate various kinds of manual training in the schools, and through lack of

PLATE FOUR



(37)

Blackboard Work in a Night School

knowledge (and it is a little unreasonable to expect superintendents and others to be experts on these subjects) many experiments and methods of work are being tried that are fundamentally wrong, as will be proved by experience. For instance, various kinds of carpenter work, knife work, sloyd methods, paper cutting and paper folding are being incorporated at much expense in schools as manual training.

Sewing and  
cooking not  
real manual  
training

I do not object to sewing and cooking. I consider them very important things. But for our purpose, they are not methods of artistic or manual training. I consider cooking one of the most important of all the arts, and I must be ranked as an advocate of both cooking and sewing, in the proper place. The proper place, however, is not that gained by usurping the manual training idea in education, because every thinking person will realize that cooking does not give exceptional dexterity and skill of hand in the arts, nor does sewing. If we must have special experts to teach cooking, sewing, writing, drawing, music, should it not be necessary for us to have experts to teach mathematics, history, geography, and the other studies? This seems to be the tendency, but it is not feasible in the schools. What is to prevent the ordinary teacher's having a certain amount of capacity in these directions? We certainly cannot call the teacher an educated person, or one able to teach, unless he or she has some ability in these directions.

Necessity of  
systematic  
training of  
the senses

In the beginning, nothing is more important than the necessity of making the various senses alert and bright by constant and systematic use. The perceptive faculties should be made accurate, the memory correct, the thinking and the willing powers strong and true by direct use on things. These capacities or faculties diminish very rapidly for lack of use, and at certain stages the organism refuses to work, and the best impressions possible are dull, fleeting and feeble, not being distinct enough to form even nebulous ideas. Mental structure, thought fabric, must be made by children coming in contact, first hand, with things, receiving and assimilating all the possible sense impressions, and making all the possible movements



and reactions. No mere memorizing of printed words, no juggling with figures, no listening to a series of disconnected facts, will take the place of organic impressions permanently registered and systematized.

This can best be done by means of the various modes of expression, when the hand, the eye and the mind are continuously and pleasurably storing up facts and making the required movements. The most perfect lessons can be received from the most common and the simplest things. Hence, a good teacher will make use of common and simple things. In the elementary stages of education, drawing and modeling, properly taught from the most interesting and simple forms, train the perceptive faculties of children more than any other study, strengthen the memory, judgment and imagination, and arouse the instinctive investigation so powerful in all children. The idle curiosity of untrained children is the starting point for the good teacher. This curiosity must be cherished, intensified and stimulated until the habit of complete and willing attention is formed, the teacher gradually increasing the power of attentive application of the pupil until the stage of genuine study and hard work with the eye, hand and intelligence is obtained as a natural growth.

Drawing  
trains the  
perceptive  
faculties

Aristotle has said, "The hand is the instrument of instruments and the mind is the form of forms." Surely we must give some real and fundamental training to the hand. This hand skill is to be acquired by all, not because they are to work, but because they cannot afford to be without a training that makes brain co-ordinations form sense connections, and therefore aids or makes intelligence, reason, imagination and judgment in the shortest way. This hand skill is requisite, not necessarily to enable its possessors to become artists or artisans—though possessing art skill and capacity through esthetics is essential to complete culture, and this is the side usually to be considered—beauty acted. By manual training methods the person becomes able to deal and do with things if necessary, to be always ready to enjoy and appreciate nature, and grows self-reliant because confident of power.

Hand skill  
makes  
intelligence

I should like to utter a protest against the vain experiments of certain psychologists who are at present misleading teachers in wrong methods of child study; who are simply dallying with things that are not essential. A great loss of energy is the result. For this they have been performing trifling experiments on troops of children, efforts that have no product. Why not study the acts of children for some useful and educational purpose, for some method that will tend to conserve their energy and health? I think that half the energy given to some of these things, spent on investigating the capacity of expression through the hand, would soon lead to golden fruit. The possibilities and potentialities in this direction are unlimited. Let this field be worked.



In all my experience I have never yet found a teacher educated by book methods able to draw. This seems an incredible statement, yet from my point of view it is correct. By drawing I mean thought expression and power to express ideas of all forms on surfaces and in things; not the feeble imitations of certain methods, of conventional forms, with labored application, bit by bit, dot by dot, but to have organically the power at once to delineate balance, proportion, grace, beauty, fitness. By drawing I mean the vital union of thought and action that gives definite expression to individual thought through the hand, the power to reproduce mental images just as we express them by speech, after assimilating certain sense impressions; creating and designing nature anew.

I have actually had pupils come to me who have recently wasted money and energy by trying to learn drawing by correspondence through the mails. Perhaps very soon some people will try to teach music, singing, for instance, the same way.

The methods I advocate are no longer new. Ambidexterity, psycho-physical co-ordinations, memory work, rotation of classes and other features peculiar to our course, have received the test of time and application to large numbers.

Could any sane person walk around the ten acres of school exhibits a few years ago at Chicago, at the World's Fair, and be

Illustration 20



The Freehand Circle

These teachers are practising large free-hand movements in order to acquire facility

satisfied with the work going on under the name of art, of drawing, of manual training? Could anyone for a moment think that it represented the work of individual child life, of growing organisms, each one alive? Did it not all seem fashioned from the same mean lack of thought exhibited by some plan or system maker? Did it not show, in its various similarity, an endless repetition of the same things—the hand of trade? Did it not show, from its very constant and feeble ringing of the changes on cubes, blocks, cones, prisms, definitions,—the iteration of terms, construction, representation and decoration,—shallow minds wading in a morass of second-hand thoughts, words and phrases; able to talk, parrot fashion, but not able to do; able to say, but not to feel; able to preach, but not to act? In short, to dogmatize. That is, literally, to assert with undue confidence and to advance with arrogance. Did it not show, from end to end, the commercial element, the spirit of greed for money at the expense of mind? There were

Insufficiency of  
old method



only a few green oases in the desert, represented by some schools, where I actually found real autumn leaves and fruit forms drawn and colored by the pupils. Verily, the sacrifice was awful. Hundreds of miles of paper with "soft gray lines" represented thousands of minds distorted and drawn out of shape.

Teachers must  
be able to draw

I state without fear of contradiction that no one who is unable to draw should attempt to teach drawing, yet without one exception I have found the presenters and representers of all commercial systems unable to draw, and, what is far more saddening, none of their pupils could.

Supervisors  
should be able  
to draw

I protest once more against anyone's teaching drawing who is unable to draw. It seems that many of the supervisors and so-called experts on this subject throughout the country, with very few exceptions, are unable to draw. Most of them have worked a few years at some art school, chiefly at imitative work. They have made a few light-and-shade drawings and have studied perhaps a little perspective. They have painted a few flowers and made a few carpet designs. And then they start out on their career with some "system." The children are expected to perform a series of graded exercises, usually of "geometric forms" and "objects based upon geometric forms." They are compelled to work from type forms until they are sick of them, and then they are expected to see resemblance in the most diverse objects to these type forms.

Misuse of  
type forms

It seems to me that this is fundamentally wrong. We should teach the children to look for dissimilarities. We should make their observation acute to notice how different and unlike things are to each other. It is very stupid to me to make children labor at a cone, for instance, and then give them the wrong idea that a lamp chimney and a carrot, ink bottle, etc., are based on this cone, because there is a very slight resemblance. To me they never look alike, and I have never yet found a bright child who will begin to associate them in the mind voluntarily. Remember, I believe in type forms and in geometric forms in the right place, but they are abstractions. Children should have nothing to do with abstractions in the beginning. Before they



are given any idea of the type forms, their minds should be stored with a series of the natural forms, from which we receive the idea of the type. When a child has become familiar with apples and marbles, soap bubbles and other round things, then the abstract idea of the sphere may be grasped.

It may seem a little unfair that I should attack the methods of the so-called drawing teachers in the schools, but what are we to do when we find the great lights, or authorities, so-called, giving utterance to statements like the following. In the report of the proceedings of the National Educational Association for 1896, on Page 693, will be found such a statement as this, not by an ordinary teacher or a teacher of drawing, but by the superintendent of drawing for a whole city—a teacher of teachers: “There is such a thing as a child having too much candy, and there is such a thing as a child having too much beauty. He may become so accustomed to it that he will not appreciate it.” I leave the above to speak for itself.

Foolish  
statements by  
so-called  
teachers

Again, we find in the same book, on Page 700, not signed by one person only, but by half a dozen, including a college president, a director of one of the chief institutions in the country and several other very prominent people, the following: “The use of colored papers is the best means now available of presenting and applying standards or ideals of color, scales of these standards, and combinations of different scales.” I protest against stained papers of any kind. I have never yet seen natural colors on the papers used for this purpose in schools. They are artificial and crude in all respects. What is the matter with the real colors of nature, as exhibited in flowers, shells, stones, butterflies, insects, feathers, birds, etc?



Again, the same book, Page 698: “Models of the pure geometric types of form, which underlie all the manifold variety of form in both nature and art, should be studied in connection with these selected objects in order that pupils may learn to see how the type forms are the basis of all other forms. Having in mind accurate and distinct concepts of the types, the pupil can more easily understand their numberless modifications.

Having a clear understanding of their modifications, he can best express his ideas of them by drawing." I have personally shown this complex sentence to many artists. I have not heard one agree with it. I have yet to know any artist of importance who was ever educated in this way.

Absurdities of  
commercial  
systems

Another sentence is as follows: "The exercises should also be distinctly classified so as to cover the three great divisions of all art work, namely: Representation, or the appearance of form, decoration or the ornamentation of form, and construction or the facts of form." This sentence, perhaps, will be the key to a great many of the absurdities indicated above. It simply shows to one who has studied the whole question carefully, and without prejudice, that none of these so-called authorities can themselves draw, or have the beginning of an idea about drawing, but that they have a very complete idea of an artificial system which has been classified and systematized until drawing and art have absolutely disappeared from it. I venture to assert that not one of them ever painted a picture or modeled a statue.

Artificial forms,  
stained papers,  
etc., useless

How absurd it is then that they should stand up as authorities on the subject and mislead people. It has been done, however, for a purpose, and that purpose is to sell various materials,—series of books for each grade, series of artificial forms in wood *graded*, pencils for a variety of purposes, stained papers, geometric shapes, etc. This has gone on until even the cost of these things makes the work impossible in many schools and frightens the simple-minded by the seeming complexity and difficulty of a very simple subject. Indeed, drawing requires less plant and arrangements than any other branch in the school curriculum, because drawing can be done with only a piece of paper and pencil, or a slate and pencil, if necessary.

The art part  
vital

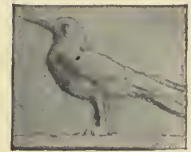
We must see that art comes into every step of the elementary or fundamental work, using the word in its fullest meaning—*ars, artis*,—"skill in joining and fitting," "the employment of means to accomplish some desired end," "human labor regulated by design." In every stage of the work the instrumentalities of the pupils should be set directly at work, the

hands, the eyes and the head. There should be no instruments of precision, no copy books to save labor or avoid skill. The art part of a great deal of work is the part that cannot be measured, weighed or marked,—it is the vital part. Science compels observation and reflection, but does not always result in action. Art compels observation, reflection and action, and makes them mutually dependent on each other. “Science is the knowing, art is the doing.” It, therefore, makes vital and alive the connection that should exist between the inner thought and the outward action.

I pin my faith to the superintendents, if we are going to better the schools in this direction, not to the crank artists, art directors and supervisors. Superintendents are usually men of affairs, teachers who have been selected for fitness and merit, men who have been taught by experience. They will have to realize, however, that, just as there are many ways of teaching language, reading, geography and arithmetic, some good and some bad, so there are many methods that go by the name of art and of manual training and drawing. They will have to demand that their art directors, supervisors and teachers should be able to draw. I do not mean that they should simply take their word for it, or be satisfied with a portfolio of drawings of objects, casts, cubes, blocks, or a certificate of this or that normal art school or mill, but, being rational men, that they should see that the teacher can draw, knowing that drawing is a mode of thought expression, not simply a familiarity with certain graded steps of a traditional or dogmatical thoughtless plan. They should say: “Here is paper; express yourself; draw a leaf, a house, a cat, a scroll, anything.” Performance should be the great test in our business, not words and assertions. I have actually known some teachers, when confronted in this way, to say: “Where is the model for me to copy?” Surely these are not teachers, but imitators, copyists.

Critics may consider that the author has devoted too much attention to the decorative and conventional forms, to drill and designing. He considers, however, that in a book of this

Art and manual  
training  
teachers should  
be examined



Drill essential  
in the  
elementary  
stages

character, written to help large numbers of workers in various directions, the industrial art features and their applications should be amplified especially. But this is not done at the expense of any real art study. It is really the elementary part of the truest kind of art work. The drawing from models and casts, and the other usual "fine art" studies, are lightly touched upon, because they are already well known. The aim has been, also, to consider as much as possible the large number of pupils who do not become artists, but who do require the skill and art knowledge essential for success in the various pursuits of life.



Designing, Ambidextrous Work



## CHAPTER VI

### Right and Left Hand Work, Ambidextrous Work

---



**T**HE RESULT OF THIS WORK HAS only to be seen for one to become impressed with its value as a medium for the education of the individual. The most skeptical are convinced by the perfect results produced, the simplicity of work, the almost instant balance and symmetry, and the visible development in the directions most to be desired in the education of the hand, the eye and the mind.

Improvement is also made in other directions. The co-ordinating of one set of muscles invariably influences the rest. The hands, the eyes and the mind are exercised to a much greater degree than is possible when using them only partially.

Sympathetic  
influence

Hence, a more symmetrical whole is produced. The pupils stand better, hold their heads more erect and level,—in a word, they have more understanding.

If it can be done with the right hand, why do it with the left? some say. Why waste time that might be given to something else? These questions are natural, and at first seem right, but a little thought makes one realize that in many trades, especially the ones requiring skill of hand, both hands need to be

used, and the more skilled the left hand the better the workman. Again, some artists who first hear of our ambidextrous work sometimes think it absurd. They do not realize that we do not attempt to sketch or paint with the left hand, and that it is mainly for its physiological and educational value that we train it.

Reasons for  
ambidextrous  
work

The reason we do ambidextrous work is for the physical co-ordinations acquired. Biology teaches that the more the senses are co-ordinated to work in harmony in the individual, the better. If I work with the right hand, I use the left side of the brain; if I employ the left hand, I use the right side of the brain. In truth, I exercise some special region or center of the brain in every conscious movement I make, and in every change of movement I bring into play some other center. If, by performing any such action with energy and precision, I aid in the development of the accordant center, I am improving the cerebral organism, building for myself a better and more symmetrical mental fabric.

Not  
unreasonable

Does this seem unreasonable? We use both feet, both eyes, both ears. I am firmly convinced that the better and firmer the union of each hand with its proper hemisphere of the brain, and the more facility we have of working each together, and also independently, the better the brain and mind and the better the thought, the reason and the imagination will be. The results of my method have fully demonstrated this fact, as the teachings of modern science, and especially of psychology, have fully established the truth of this contention.\*

---

\* "Every impression of sense upon the brain, every current of molecular activity from one to another part of the brain, every cerebral reaction which passes into muscular movement, leaves behind it some modification of the nerve elements concerned in its function, some after-effect, or, so to speak, memory of itself in them which renders its reproduction an easier matter, the more easy the more often it has been repeated, and makes it impossible to say that, however trivial, it shall not under some circumstances recur. Let the excitation take place in one of two nerve cells lying side by side, and between which there was not any original specific difference; there will be ever afterward a difference between them. This physiological process, whatever be its nature, is the physical basis of memory, and it is the foundation of the development of all our mental functions."—[Maudsley, *Physiology of the Mind*, page 27.]



### Drawing and Painting Birds from Life

The appreciation of color and the fidelity with which the grace of natural forms are reproduced by children who have had the elementary manual training described in Books Two, Three and Four of this work, is as gratifying as it is useful.



Mind building

I am convinced that in proper manual training movements—exercises that make a firm, well knit union between the hand and the brain, making the hand (and each hand) obey the mind independently, we are producing new mental conditions, or physical structure in the brain. The brain has growth in the beginning for a certain period, and arrives at a certain size during youth. Afterward it increases in complexity and structure. All recent studies of the cerebrum point to the fact that our intelligence is associated with a union of brain cells one with another, and the more experience we gain through the various senses, the greater will be the structural union and complexity of the brain cells.

Abstract work  
wrong

It seems wrong to see children compelled continually to memorize and to draw on the reason, the fancy and the imagination, before they have well developed centers or brain cells with which to think, reason and ideate. I know for a fact that the energy of many children is consumed and exhausted by the use of abstract thought work too early in life, instead of being conserved by proper training.

I claim better results from the right hand, when the left is worked also, than from the right hand working alone, in the same space of time, in almost any kind of hand work. In 240 trades or crafts the workman employs both hands quite freely, and in certain occupations, like carving, engraving, modeling and chasing, the left hand works as much as the right. Muscular co-ordinations and facility with the left hand as well as the right are therefore very important and of large practical application, apart from the physiological and mental value of ambidexterity.

Old methods of  
education  
neglect both  
hands

Indeed, the old education neglected *both* hands, not the right hand only. Yet who shall now say that the education of these marvellous portions of the anatomy should be longer neglected? Truly says Sir Charles Bell, in "The Hand" (Page 134):

"The human hand is so wonderfully formed, so beautifully shaped, it has so fine a sensibility; that sensibility governs its



motions so correctly, every effort of the will is answered so instantaneously, as if the hand itself were the seat of that will. Its actions are so powerful, so free and yet so delicate, as if it possessed a quality of instinct in itself, that there is no thought of its complexity as an instrument or of the relations which make it subservient to the mind. We use it as we draw our breath, unconsciously, and have lost all recollection of the feeble efforts whereby it has been perfected."

Surely, then, the new education must not make the mistake of training but one hand—one only of these two instruments of power and action.

Meissonier also said: "It would be a great advantage to be ambidextrous,—children ought to be taught this habit."

Illustration 25



Freehand Original Designs, Public School, Germantown

All the children in the room draw at intervals on the blackboard making original designs. The pupils at the benches work on paper from objects and in color, sometimes at designing, sometimes at natural forms.

## CHAPTER VII

### Drawing Correlated with Other Studies

---

Correlate the  
drawing with  
other school  
work



Modeling Fruit Forms from  
Nature

Bad use of art  
work in schools

THE LESSONS IN THE SUCCEEDING books of this work have been evolved from the results of years of experience in working by a number of different methods. They have been arrived at after much experiment, on account of their suitability for the young and the old, and the fact that very little plant is required. From the very beginning, the object has been to co-ordinate or correlate the drawing with all the other school work. One of the greatest troubles with drawing by the old method is that it seems to be something entirely apart from the other studies, a mere accomplishment, something for the select few, the ones who display a certain amount of talent. This is wrong. Drawing and manual training are especially suited for backward and dull pupils; they are the very ones who most need its training.

Drawing can very readily be made one of the most vital of studies, one of the most important. It is the study on which half the drudgery and tiresome work of the school can be placed.

It is the study that makes pleasing and interesting to themselves the work of the pupils. Drawing and manual training, above all other work studies, will enable the child to work out its own salvation, in the fact that they form a disposition to action and allow the child to make the energetic movements that are so good and proper for its well-being.

Drawing in the past, to many teachers and children, has consisted of mere imitative work from a few type forms,—meaningless blocks. It has not been made a vital and connected part of their other studies. If children are to know things, to gain knowledge (and their coming to school is for this purpose), I know of nothing that will take the place of the right kind of instruction in drawing, as it compels their attention to things, if properly presented.

Compels love  
of nature

Take, for instance, a rural school, where the children get a little reading, writing and arithmetic, in homeopathic doses, and very little of anything else. See what glorious possibilities and potentialities there are here, if the teacher has any idea of drawing as it should be taught. Right at the door is the whole field of nature—plants, flowers, insects, animals, stones, fruits, vegetables, can be procured without any trouble. The children are delighted to bring almost anything in the way of models of this kind. If they are near the seashore, the boys can get endless forms of life in the way of seaweeds, shells, crabs, fish, etc. If in the mountains, the same can be done with different kinds of plants, weeds, stones, birds, fish, insects, etc. These forms can be drawn, and the reading, writing, arithmetic, spelling, composition, punctuation, and other studies hung on as incidentals. The children will be fascinated and inspired at first hand. They will take an added interest in their work, especially when the doors of their minds are opened and the things of which they see so much and know so little are transformed for them.

The beginning  
of wisdom

Farmers' children and others should know all about the birds, bugs, caterpillars, flies, spiders, weeds, plants, the flowers and common growths of their environment, and thus have matter





Knowledge of  
things of first  
importance in  
education

that will be of value and an aid to them in their future life. This is very much better than cramming them with disconnected facts of history of far-off countries, incidents in the lives of kings and statesmen, that are not of much value. Of course the young should become as completely educated as possible, but if they are to have one thing or the other, let them get, first of all, direct knowledge of their own environment.

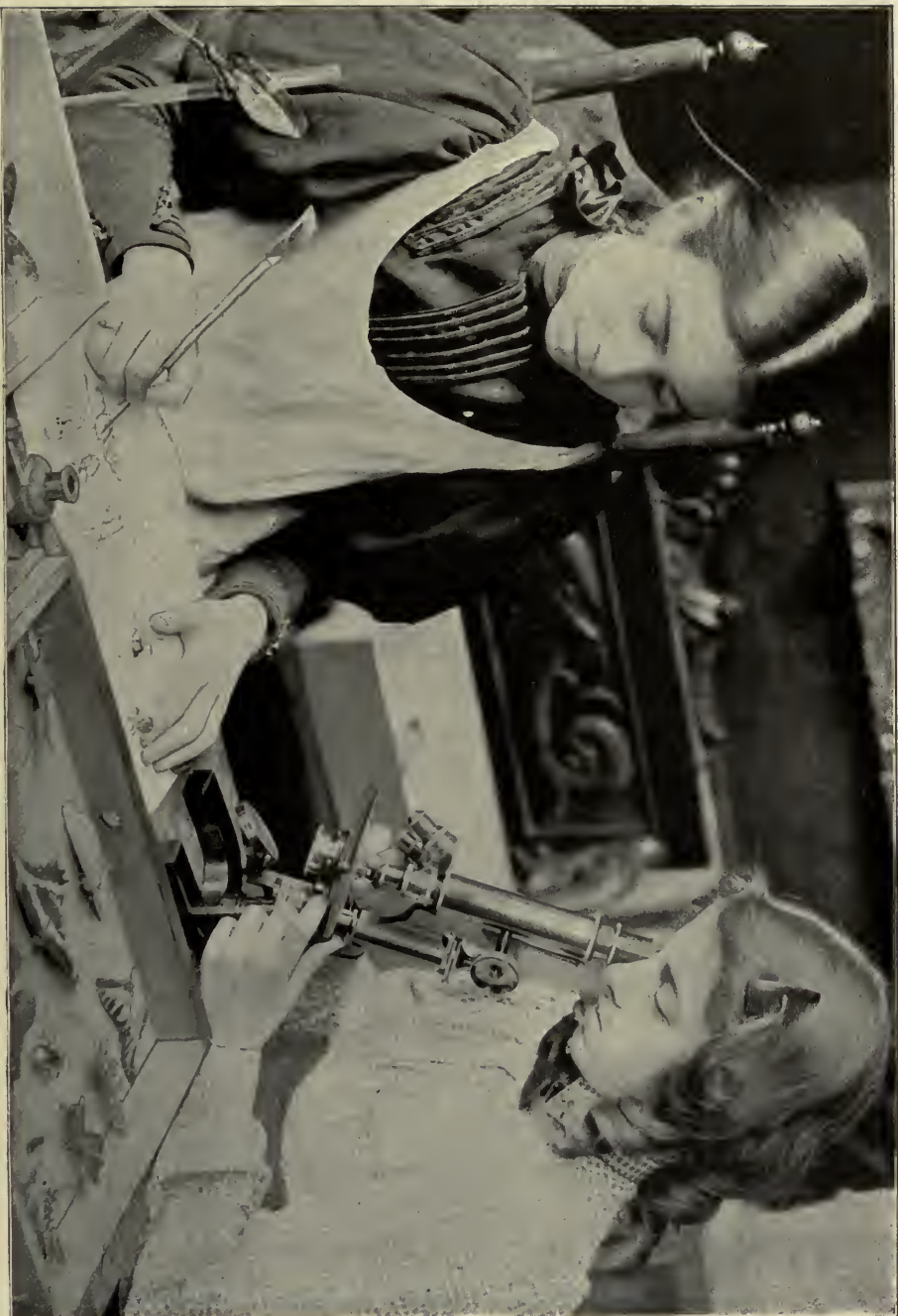
There is no reason, even in city schools, why similar work should not be done; though the country child has far greater advantages in the way of studying natural forms, the city child has many compensating advantages. Nearly all children can get from their homes and from their friends any of the simple common things in the way of leaves, plants, shells, animals, etc., that are the fundamentals of study, and with which we should first fill the mind of the child before we attempt to give the higher thought studies.

I can see already this change coming in many places, although so far it is mostly in the way of the introduction of things that have utilitarian value alone,—trades similar to carpenter work, cooking and sewing, which to me simply consume the valuable time of the children without educating them. I think the time is near at hand when the true idea will be received. Institutions like the Drexel Institute, the Armour Institute, the Pratt Institute, are simply, in my mind, protests against the old methods of education. They are schools where the pupils *learn by doing*, and though in some cases, trades are taught instead of real education being given, I think the latter will be the next step.

Good pictures  
improve taste

No one can see how newspapers and books are changing, with their endless pictures and illustrations; no one can see the improvements and means of getting better pictures in all directions, without realizing that this must have a great influence on the education of those to come. The same is true with regard to smooth roads, electric lights, the bicycle, etc., all influences that are tending to make life easier and better. Some of the papers and magazines to-day are real works of art. Continually they





are pouring out on the multitude streams of visual information that must have an influence. The school is bound to keep in line with these things. Better methods and better text-books and appliances must be used. The old methods *have* to change, and the teachers, too.

Futility of  
present  
methods

Appliances in the schoolroom that have been used for 20 years are still being used the wrong way, and at the wrong time, such as copy books and drawing models, imitations of copies, etc. In some schools, systems of geometric forms (wooden ones) are used during the entire eight years of the school life of the child by teachers who have never been able to draw from the beginning.

Can anyone fail to realize how tired and weary the children must become of these things, and especially when they do not find any vital connection in them with their work? We cannot expect the children to do this when we find the teachers unable. All artists know how unreasonable it is to expect a product in drawing from children if they receive only a few homeopathic doses of "construction," "representation" and "decoration" a few minutes a week. The artist knows how many hours of study and actual delineation must be given before even an ordinary amount of capacity is achieved.

Drawing a  
mode of  
thought  
expression

The whole subject, however, assumes a very different aspect when drawing is used as one of the chief instruments of impressing the organism through all its various sense channels, and is also used as one of the chief instruments of imparting knowledge in all its various branches, being a mode of thought expression, just as speech and writing are modes of thought expression.

Meissonier

Meissonier thought drawing one of the bases of primary education, and said: "To what heights might their intelligences be trained by simply teaching them to see. I would have drawing made the basis of education in all schools. It is the only language that can express all things. An outline, even if ill-shaped, conveys a more exact idea of a thing than the most harmonious sentences in the world. Drawing is absolute truth, and the language of truth should be taught everywhere."

I like my pupils and teachers to understand the distinction there is between sketching from nature and designing. In the one case we put down *facts*, and in the other, *ideas*. There is a tendency for many students to sketch only from nature. We get our ideas by thinking as well. More time should be given, then, to dwelling on our impressions and to systematic mental reproduction, and to giving expression to these ideas constantly by designing and creative work.\*

Growth of  
ideas

To get good art work we must have good ideas, and they must be tangible and concrete ideas that we can instantly revive at will—that will recur automatically to the mind when needed. We can revive impressions of things, and we ought to be able to revive ideas in the mind. They must be placed there first. They must be firmly locked into the mental fabric by the systematic performance of deeds, not only once, but many times. The more experience I have the more I can embody in these ideas; facility of expression giving accuracy of perception. The more I know of history, countries, religions, governments, climates, habits, the more of value I can put in my work.

Ideas must be  
locked into  
the mind

We must take in things, assimilate them and form ideas, and then we will have an outcome. The more we practice this, the more facility we will find ourselves obtaining. It is always possible to revive ideas in the mind and to make mental movements and co-ordinations. The more we do this, the more vital force we will have, the more deeply we will realize and appreciate things. We will begin to understand what inspiration means.



\* "The idea in fact is organized as a separate mental existence in the cerebral convolutions, being for us when so organized to all intents and purposes the object, and may be aroused into independent activity. Every idea is thus representative, the abstract of many sensations, comprising implicitly more than it displays explicitly; in it the essential is embodied, the unessential suppressed or rejected; it is not the idea of any particular object or event, but the idea of every object or event of a particular kind; it is fundamentally a generalization or induction. We may justly say, then, that the ideational nerve centers idealize or ideate our sensory perceptions; the process of ideation, like other processes of organic evolution, being one of progressive differentiation and integration,—of discrimination of the unlike and assimilation of the like." [Maudsley, *Physiology of Mind*, Page 272.]



## CHAPTER VIII

### Nature Studies—Right Methods

---



Looking at  
things not  
enough

Boy making large chart freehand with brush and ink on manila paper. All the common names and technical terms are lettered by him on each part.

AN EDUCATIONAL AUTHORITY has stated: "The only way to teach nature study is with no course laid out, to bring in whatever may be handy and to set the pupils to looking at it. The pupils do the work. They see the thing and explain its structure and its meaning. The exercise should not be too long, not to exceed fifteen minutes at any time. And above all, the pupils should never look upon it as a recitation, and there should never be an examination. It should come as a rest exercise, whenever the pupils become restless. Ten minutes a day for one term of a short, sharp and spicy observation upon plants, for example, is worth more than a whole text-book of botany."

I seriously doubt if this is the way. I question if they see the thing simply by "looking" at it. I question if in this way they can comprehend and explain its structure and its meaning. Many teachers have been following this method for years, and even adults in normal schools have been doing it for a series of years, but I fail to find much product or result. If simply looking at things will accomplish this, why is it that so few people,



suddenly asked whose head is on a two-cent stamp, can answer correctly? Are not stamps seen and handled often? I have tried this and other experiments on thousands of teachers for many years, and I know people do not learn or see by simply looking.

I find that even looking at and handling things all their lives will not enable some people to know the shape of the most familiar forms. Take a common spoon, for instance. Not one



in fifty can give a sure answer as to how its handle curves, up or down. I do not mean that they should be able to make a drawing of it, but that they should be able to know actually how it bends.

Familiarity  
not  
knowledge

(See diagram.) From the concept that they have, or have had, of the spoon in their minds for perhaps years, not one among fifty will answer this correctly. Try it and see. The same is true of the shape of the most familiar tools. I can take people and prove that they do not begin to know the shape of their own most familiar hammer or saw handle.

Capacity of this kind, accurate observation, can only be made automatic and useful by art methods, by practical esthetics, by organized impressions repeatedly and systematically performed until the mind takes in the desired percepts and can form the concepts.

Impressions  
must be  
repeated  
systematically

But giving the sensation through one or two channels is simply useless. All experience teaches this; it is better to make a little knowledge vital and organic by the use of the conscious activities of the child. The child's motor centers must be trained by systematic exercise to respond instinctively to the stimulation of sight and touch, by a product that compels the exercise of skillful manipulation. It is this performance and systematic repetition that make the result permanent and valuable. It has actually been found that children have been made more stupid, dull, tired and restless by too much looking and handling, without using the spontaneous activities of several other motor senses.

Let study have  
permanent  
results.



We must  
appreciate the  
beauty of  
nature

I maintain that through art methods tangible results can be obtained that cause the child to take pains, that arouse its emotions to a point of love and sympathy on account of the trouble required to obtain some wished-for product. However trifling or poor this product is, the thing desired, and for which we must scheme, is to cause the child to re-create, as the work of its hands and brain and effort, the beauty, proportion, fitness, grace, etc., embodied in the forms studied. The child loves its product for the trouble it has caused.

This is well illustrated by the habit most children have of saving and keeping as precious, trifling odds and ends that they have made, and that seem to have value to them because they have thought over them and worried over them. Experience teaches that formal collections of butterflies, pressed leaves, eggs, etc., are much less cherished, and usually find their way to the waste basket at some period, only a faint and feeble memory being retained of their forms, one that is entirely useless so far as regards a vital love of nature and the enabling one to enter into its beauties. We will not get love for nature unless we can appreciate the beauty of nature. This must be cultivated. No doubt there are some impressions, some faint traces of these things left in the adult organism, but not sufficient to arouse impulses to action or energetic moving emotion; not enough to inspire the motor reactions that end in deeds, though often enough to result in thinking and dreaming, and sometimes wishing.

Permanent  
organic  
impressions  
must be made

Yet, we can have a right return from nature study if we make the right use of our opportunities. All the rambles, walks and talks of ten teachers, all the looking and handling, are useless for the purpose of nature teaching, unless the impressions and information are made organic by the performance of work that compels systematic reaction of the motor centers to yield a product, this being the outward, concrete sign of the internal structure or thought fabric. So much of the one is shown by so much of the other.

There is something dense in the mind of the average child

Illustration 33



Drawing from Nature

that must be overcome by this systematic work. There is a mental inertia, if you will, or what might be called an infirmity of purpose, that has to be conquered before the union of thought and action can be made automatic and complete. Hence, mere looking at and handling objects will not give the best results desired in nature study. And, in proof of this, we find that most school work of this kind does not produce the expected results. But the methods pointed out in this work do produce the desired results in every case. The children get a loving recognition of things, and this arouses that energetic disposition to perform appropriate actions which is the natural state of the alert and active normal child.

It is dreadful to see children, as they grow up through the primary, secondary and grammar grades of a school into the high school, becoming more restless and more indifferent



to so many of the essentialities, when, if properly trained, they should have become more energetic, and disposed to carry on their work with the same energy they make use of in their play and amusement. I am afraid the element of "fun," with a number of other valuable fundamentals, is gradually crushed out by existing school methods.

Effect on health  
of improper  
methods



No truthful and thoughtful teacher can help but see also that many physical ills result from the present methods of training. Many children that are chubby and healthy and usually have fine color on entering school, are pale, narrow-chested, feeble, spectacled, cadaverous and pimple faced, when they have finished the school course. By damaging the body we, in a measure, damage the mind. After all, the body is the chief fabric. To this our best care should be given. The body, its movements, and its productions, are the outward fruits or signs of the "inner temple."

The idle curiosity excited by things must be cherished and nourished until it becomes attention. Inspiration from things means energy, — physical, mental and spiritual energy. We must assimilate and accumulate this energy. If God speaks at all (and who doubts it?), He speaks through His works. "There are tongues in trees, books in the running brook, sermons in stones, and good in everything" (Shakespeare). Ought we not to understand these tongues, read these books and understand these sermons? Ought we not to get the good from everything? We must, as Emerson says, "Bend to the persuasion flowing to us from every normal thing entreating us to be its tongue to the heart of man, to teach a besotted world how passing fair is wisdom."

Beauty and  
mystery of  
common things

We must make our children realize the divinity that is planted in things: There is a great desire and tendency in some quarters to lift the children above the commonplace. Should we not, rather, make them so familiar with things that even the mud and dirt and weeds will seem filled with beauty and mystery? Should we not open their mental eyes, the eye of the understanding, to the beauty and splendor of the smallest

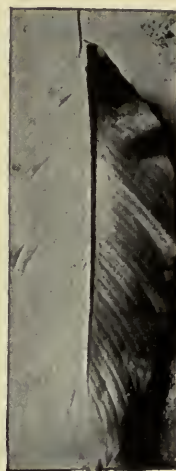


created atom? Make them realize the force that is in every common thing, that holds together each flower and leaf and stone; make them realize that "matter and spirit are two sides of one fact."

We are compelled to be with matter in this world. We cannot lift the children above the commonplace. Instead, we should thrust their heads well into it until they recognize their Mother Nature. There is an irresistible impulse, which is like the tug of gravity, that forces us sometimes against our will, to be close to facts and things. Let us be obedient and bend to the divine energy. Then we can gradually take in the idea, so beautifully expressed by Bishop Keene, that "matter is the stairway by which the soul mounts to God."

Divine energy  
in matter

The desire for nature study is constantly increasing and is beginning to be appreciated among teachers. It is the method of studying nature that must now be improved. When we can learn, understand and make use of the lessons with which nature teems, the new education will indeed have made a great advance. This means much more than merely looking at things, though that is better than only reading about them. A recent catalogue of a summer school contained a picture of a professor of botany dissecting a plant while the class looked on. He was learning something and receiving an actual impression through the touch sense and the muscular sense, as well as through the vision, but the members of the class were getting only a slight visual and auditory impression of the plant and of its parts (for I presume the professor spoke) that they would soon forget. Now if each of the class had dissected the plant and in addition to the visual and auditory impression, had made an impression through the muscular and touch sense, and then had reinforced these impressions by making diagrams and drawings of the various parts, attaching their respective names to each part, first from the plant and then from memory, a more permanent impression would have been made. It is the performance of actions through a number of the modes of expression that calls forth powers of perception and conception and



Improved  
methods of  
study needed

expression, and makes so vivid an impression on the brain as never to be forgotten.

Universal use  
of new modes  
of expression

The power of imitation and suggestion, the ability to draw, to model and carve natural objects, is inherent and only needs to be properly trained to become almost as universal a mode of thought expression as verbal or written words. The succeeding books of this work afford a partial insight into the methods of developing and training these forms of expression.



A Touch of Nature

# BOOK TWO

## Manual-Training Drawing



Original Designs by Grammar Grade Children

---

"The instantaneous judgments of the distance, the position, the size, the figure of objects, which accompany our visual sensations, are not consciously made, nor are they put in logical form; in fact, all the labors of philosophers hitherto have not been sufficient to discover and explain the process by which we acquire them—to set forth explicitly the premises, the reasoning, and the conclusions which are implicit in them."—[Maudsley, *Physiology of the Mind*, page 32.

---

"The great source of happiness is to be found in the exercise of talents, and perhaps the greatest of all is when the ingenuity of the mind is exercised in the dextrous employment of the hands."—[Sir Charles Bell.

---



Models of Leaf Forms



PLATE EIGHT



### Ambidextrous Designing

These boys are grammar grade pupils. They have had two hours training per week for two years, in drawing, modeling and carving, in rotation. Each time they make a design it is different, and they draw various styles of ornament, besides drawing from objects. Such work as is shown herewith is executed in about six minutes.





Some Primary Exercises

## CHAPTER I

### Preliminary Considerations in Manual-Training Drawing

---

**T**HE FOLLOWING METHODS are advanced with confidence, in view of the fact that there is a general reaction against the printed copybook systems of drawing already described. The unsatisfactory character of such purely artificial, nay, even mechanical aids to the teacher, is now generally apparent, and many teachers and others interested, feeling this lack of results and deficiencies of methods, are already seeking better ways.

Many artists are also becoming interested in the education of children in art work, and are practically unanimous in their condemnation of the old systems. Indeed, it is hardly possible to name an artist of any importance who agrees with the systems in general use. Artists, usually, are not much engaged in public affairs, but when one of them does look into the usual methods of education, it is generally with an expression of amazement at the feebleness and utter inutility of the art instruction received. Artists

are beginning to be more interested in the subject, and several voices have of late been lifted up in not uncertain tones, advocating a change to rational ways of work that will produce useful results.

When artists are spoken of in this connection, real ones are meant—those who actually produce art work. I do not mean those teachers of art or of drawing, who have never produced a statue, a model, or a picture. Many of these, unfortunately, are engaged in teaching the artificial systems complained about, and in many cases they have been trained in normal art schools expressly for that kind of work. They never had any real knowledge of art work, and their products are destitute of value, being vitiated by all the intricate inanities of the systems indicated. Artists must, ere long, combine against the errors in education mentioned, and it is only because of ignorance of actual school processes that they have not been already aroused. Surely, their judgment should be consulted as to what is best to do, even if they are not teachers. Some of them are sufficiently interested to condemn false work, and to suggest improvements. I have had many artists visit my schools, and have never yet found any to object to any part of the work, as contrasted with the old methods. They usually

Illustration 41



First Exercise, Manual-Training Drawing

Illustration 42



Manual Training Exercises  
 These grammar grade pupils are trained by the ordinary teacher

endorse even the most radical changes we have made—changes that are the result of experiment—from the standpoint of the artist, not of the teacher.

It is to be distinctly understood by artists and art teachers who read these chapters on “drill” work, that these exercises are not intended to take the place of art teaching of various other forms—the drawing from objects, the study of perspective (in its right place), the use of color, light and shade, etc. But the object of these exercises is for the definite purpose of supplementing art work in all directions, and primarily for giving fundamental skill and dexterity to the hand as an instrument. All art teachers can realize the value of a ready hand prompt to obey the mind, one that by training is thoroughly co-ordinated to perform all movements with facility as soon as thought. Especially is this appreciated if time is saved, and certain qualities—such as balance, proportion, magnitudes, space relations, etc., are made automatic (see page 77) and, at the same time, the mind is stored with all the common and conventional forms and units of design of the best periods and of the different styles or schools of art.

Teachers must realize also that only a very short time need be given to this drill work, about ten minutes each lesson, provided it starts at the nascent or incipient period of childhood. Also, that in all cases, the drill work



in delineation is accompanied by form work on paper, in clay modelling from forms, and (if children are not too young) by wood carving of various forms. Of course, if children or adults have passed the nascent period for this work, extra time must be given to acquiring the desired facility; for few can be found now to dispute the desirability of real manual dexterity for each hand *for all* boys and girls whatever their future life may be, apart from the idea of drawing as a mode of thought expression for educational purposes, and as a means of correlating all the various studies. I do not think a psychologist can now be found who will not strenuously advocate real drawing and proper manual training as one of the chief means to reinforce "knowledge," and to make it "wisdom." They will advocate it as a means—through motor movements and touch sensations— of awakening and making still more alert the brain, which is far too frequently made dull and torpid by too much verbal memorizing, too much print, too much "telling," and too little doing.

The drill forms in delineation, then, are for the purpose of getting automatic facility for motor centers of the hand, just as all other modes of expression require automatic facility, as in speech, writing, singing, playing on instruments, etc. A course of this drill work alone is folly, but accompanied by the other forms of art work and nature study, is of inestimable

Illustration 43



Ambidextrous Co-ordinations in Four Directions



Illustration 44



Free Hand Drawing  
Grammar grade pupils making original designs

educational value. The forms have been arranged in the order of their difficulty, not in the logical order. First, easy line exercises are given, then simple units of design, then complex exercises and units of design, and so on.

It is not expected to at once overcome all the evil effects resulting from art instruction having been left so long in the hands of mere book publishing concerns and their agents, but I do expect to let in some light on the subject. Especially do I expect to see the artists, and people who are authorities on these matters, become interested in the question and to see them earnest advocates of newer and better methods. If this interest is once aroused, we need have no fear as to what will ensue.

*The Two Kinds of Drawing.*—Many will think that too much time and space have been given in this book to the manual-training drawing and drill work, at the expense of the equally important work of drawing from nature and art forms. This has been done intentionally. The value of drawing as manual training, and of manual training to right and good drawing, has not been sufficiently emphasized in the past. No one advocates more strongly than I the importance of drawing from nature and art forms, but I also recognize the importance of manual training and drill work as

elementary to and supreme for the best results in art work and nature study. For this reason I have given the manual training part of drawing in considerable detail.

The distinction usually made between the manual training idea and art work is a false one. They are two sides of one fact, equally important and equally worthy of receiving all possible care and attention.

In devising the series of drill forms in manual-training drawing given in this work, it should be distinctly understood that any forms or like characters can be used. I am aware that the moment set things are suggested as necessary, routine will begin. The teacher should be constantly on the lookout for new forms. In the very nature of the case, false systems grow out of a rigid adherence to set forms and methods of work. Teachers must change and modify their instruction in accordance with individual needs and environment. The forms given are simply the result of the experience of one person, and, though proved to be of value by their use in large classes, may be improved upon by the experience of others.

Illustration 45



First Exercises. Primary School, Colored Children

Illustration 46



Free Hand Work for Very Young Children

*Paper.*— One of the best kinds of paper to use for practice work in drawing and for drill work is the common manila paper. Get the light tints, as they are the best for drawing, although any kind can be employed, the kind that weighs 36 pounds per ream, costing about \$3, is here suggested. The sheets can be cut in half, giving the liberal size of 18 by 24



inches. This will cover the top of any ordinary desk or table, and as it occupies all the space in front of the pupil, the hands can move with freedom over the whole sheet. I use this paper because it is very cheap and quite as good as the white drawing papers for practice purposes. It can be purchased with any kind of texture, glazed or rough. Manila paper is good, even for designing and making of patterns, on account of its texture, strength and durability.

For practice purposes I have the children draw on both sides. Usually we cover the paper all over many times with the drill forms. This paper also takes India ink, or the common black inks; of course it is not quite so good for color work as the white paper. I have settled on this paper after trying many other kinds.

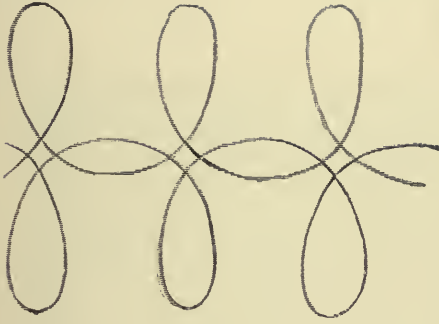
**Pencils**—No Rubber.—Ordinary school lead pencils will do for drill purposes; the best kind is a good, medium-soft pencil. Do not allow rubbers to be used; it simply wastes time, while no good is accomplished. It is, in fact, very important to break pupils of this habit of using rubber. Some children, and even adults, seem to think that the first marks must be rubbed off in any case. In some schools, it seems impossible for the pupils to draw unless they have a piece of rubber in the left hand.

The habit must be formed of putting down the required touches at one touch *to stay*. This can readily be done and gives greater freedom and accuracy than when feeble tentative touches are made, with the idea in the mind that they must be changed several times before they can be right.





Illustration 47



## CHAPTER II

### Elementary Drill Forms \*

---

**T**HIS INSTRUCTION and the exercises in drill work can be given by the teacher to a large number of pupils at once. This will save time and talking on the part of the teacher. It is advisable at intervals to call the attention of the whole class to certain facts. The most convenient way to do this is to ring a bell, when all the pupils cease working and can listen to the teacher's directions. Pupils working at desks on paper can make forms reduced in size from blackboard work. The series of marginal forms here given are intended to illustrate a graded set of lessons. A large number of forms are given, so that the teacher may make a judicious selection therefrom. Bright teachers usually make numbers of other forms, and in a very short time have a collection of their own. I like my pupils to forget all they have learned and studied of other systems, for the time being. New pupils, those who have never received any instruction in drawing, while they may be very backward with hand training, are more pliable and grasp the forms very readily, perhaps more readily than those who have been trained in other directions and who have various faults to correct; especially those who have never been taught to make a firm, clear, decided line with a single stroke, but have been taught to dot their lines or to lightly sketch their lines, making a series of tentative

---

\*All of the cuts, excepting a few of the most complex ones, have been drawn by children.

Illustration 48



Free Hand Exercises in Straight Lines

touches, with the intention, later on, of making the marks or strokes better. In the old-fashioned drawing methods, this is called "lining in." No one can think for a moment without realizing how stupid it is to make several attempts or to work in that way, when, with very little practice, firm, clear touches can be made from the start.

*To Get Automatic Facility.*—I have repeatedly spoken of the desirability of facility in the beginning. These first exercises are chiefly for the purpose of acquiring facility,—actual manual training, the power to make the hand obey the dictates of the mind, to make the hand obedient to the will. It does not matter in the beginning how crudely the pupil makes the forms. Habit and repetition will correct that. Give all the attention in the beginning to position, distance, movement, and the like.

The pupil should learn to draw as automatically as he learns to write.

Some of the written letters of the alphabet are exceedingly complex, embodying difficult compound curves, and growing still more difficult when combined with other letters to form a word. Notwithstanding this, the duller pupil, by constant practice, makes each one of these complex characters unconsciously. The movements of the hand in writing are automatic. When the pupil desires to express himself in words or writing, he is not obliged to "lightly sketch" or "line in" the different characters or letters. His mind is occupied with the *idea* he wishes to express upon the paper, and his hand moves automatically, without a thought being given to the different positions required to form the lines and curves which go to make up the written word.\*

Just so it must be in learning to draw. The different movements must be practiced till they are drawn with as little effort and as unconsciously as are the letters of the alphabet. No special talent or genius is necessary in order to be able to write well. The same is true of drawing, in the mere acquisition of the mechanical part of the work. Talent and genius are required for the higher grades of design and creative work, just as talent and genius are required to express great thoughts in written words.

*The First Exercise Is the Circle.*—It should be drawn with the right hand directly in front (Illus. 40, 41, and 49). Let the circle be about six inches in diameter. Do not make the circles too large in the beginning, but later on they can be made of all sizes—as large as the arm can sweep or as the blackboard

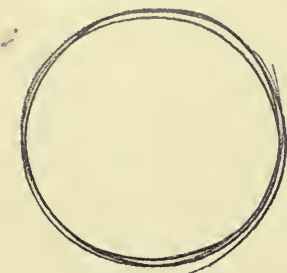
---

\* "It is easy to perceive why will can only determine the *result* when it dictates an act, and cannot determine the action of a particular muscle, or the combined actions of certain muscles which have not acted together before. All it does is to let loose, as it were, the proper agency in the motor center; and this is done by willing the event, which it is enabled to do by means of the proper motor intuition. When I will to utter a certain word, I will the event, the complex articulating movements being possible to me only through the medium of the proper motor intuition. The impulse *plus* the special motor intuition constitutes the particular volition. A voluntary movement is truly a reflex act in the cortical centers of the brain; differing from the lower reflex movements in these circumstances—first, that it does not immediately follow the stimulus, but is caused by the excitation of many associated sensory residua which have been laid up in consequence of former experiences; and, secondly, that it contains or evinces a distinct adaptation to an end or purpose, by reason of the excitation of associated motor residua which have been organized effects of former adjustments. If the result wished is a new, unfamiliar one, no residua thereof from previous experiences existing in the motor centers, then the will is unequal to the accomplishment of it; there is not an exact and definite idea of the end to be effected, the necessary motor intuition being wanting. After repeated trials, the desired skill is firmly acquired, and the movement is thenceforth automatic, the motor intuition having been gradually organized in the proper nervous centers; the result stored up strictly corresponds with that which in other nervous centers we describe as *abstract* idea. It is probable that the so-called motor centers in the cerebral convolutions are really the centers of these motor intuitions; in other words, they are the centers in which the subordinate motor centers act upon consciousness, and they thus constitute the physiological agency of voluntary movements."—[Maudsley, *Physiology of the Mind*, pages 466-467.]



will allow. This graded series of exercises, the result of 20 years' experience, has enabled me to decide upon certain sizes that are more convenient and more adapted for school purposes than others.

Illustration 49



The circle should be drawn on a level with the chin. All children show a disposition to make it above their heads, to reach upward—a fact of much interest to psychologists and physiologists. Adults who have never had any training usually make their circles too low on the board, and aged people make them quite low—another interesting fact. For our purpose and convenience, we make the circle directly in front, just a little below the eye. See that the body is quite erect, and the head level, and

that the hands swing freely around the circle many times. Then, with the left hand draw a circle by the side of the first one (Illus. 41). Practice swinging the hand around until the line flows freely.

Do not allow the body to sway or swing in doing this, but see that the pupil moves the arm entirely free from the body. The circle is essentially an *arm* movement. Let there be an easy swing of the arm from the shoulder, keeping the remainder of the body in an easy, comfortable position, and carefully avoiding rigidity of the muscles—no tight grip of the chalk. Every movement must be as easy, free and graceful as possible.

At first there is a tendency to put the face close to the blackboard surface, and to turn the head to one side. Resist these desires and keep up the practice till the movement is free and easy. Ultimately all these movements should become automatic, or be made without conscious attention or exercise of the mind. Of course this cannot be expected immediately.

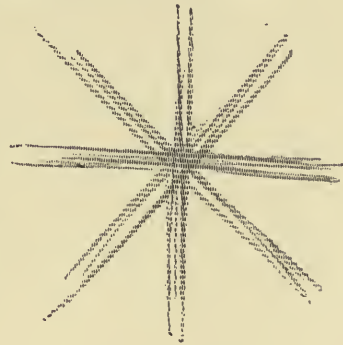
The next step will be to take a piece of chalk in each hand and draw over the same circle with both hands at once (Illus. 41). This movement will be rather difficult, but in a minute or two the co-ordination is made and it becomes easy. This accomplished, the pupil must be trained to swing both hands to the right, then to the left, then in opposite directions, letting each hand go around the circle in a direction opposite to that followed by the other (Illus. 45). This last movement is much more difficult, but in a few minutes it is usually conquered by even the smallest children. These six movements are to be repeated as drill forms contin-



ually, just as the five-finger exercises are practiced on the piano. Do not pay much attention to the accuracy of the circle. It doesn't matter how crude it is in the beginning, facility being the first thing desired. Many children in a very short time can swing perfect circles frequently with each hand.

**Straight Lines.**—The next exercise will be the making of straight lines for the purpose of gaining facility in this movement. The pupil, standing in the same position as before, must swing the hand up and down vertically, making a line about 18 inches in length. In doing this, pay especial attention to the position of the body. See that it is erect all the time and that only the hand and arm move. Do not allow the body to wave back and forth as the hand moves up and down. Try to make the hand independent. Beginners will invariably sway the body at first. In teaching a large class, say 12 or 20, on the blackboard, it is amusing to see the movements some of the untrained pupils make. This is very readily overcome, however, by drawing their attention to it, and in a minute or two the hands can be made to swing freely, with every figure quite erect, the heads level and at the right distance from the board.

A second line can now be made in the horizontal direction, crossing the first, the hand being kept in the same position, and allow it to swing freely from the right to the left, back and forth, till facility is acquired in this movement. The movements can be followed with the drawing of the diagonal lines, also continued until the movements are made with ease in any direction (Illus. 48 and 50). Invariably, in one or two places, lack of co-ordination will be felt and the line will be crooked and uneven, but very little repetition will overcome these defects.



It is to acquire facility and control, and to get the actual structural connection and harmony of relation between the hand and the brain, that we make these consecutive movements all around the circle, not with one hand only, but with each hand. Especial care must be given to the left hand, owing to the lack of its use with the majority of people. But with the young the left hand can be made to work with as much freedom as the right,



Drill Movements and Spirals for Primary Children  
The forms are made with either hand

in a very short time, and I see no reason why any of us should not have as much control and power over the left hand as we have over the right. Crudely speaking, we have two brains, a hemisphere for each hand, and only a very dull person will think it necessary to confine himself to the use of one. Usually, in the beginning, a little more time must be given to left-hand work on account of the movements being slower and more awkward through lack of use. (See chapter VI, page 50, Book One.)

*The Double Loop* (Illus. 52).—In making this form, let it be about 12 inches in length. Very few beginners can draw it so that it will be erect. Usually the force of the writing habit asserts itself and a great many pupils tip this form to the right, finding it almost impossible to make it vertical in the beginning. I have a series of exercises expressly for the

purposes of overcoming the writing habit—the disposition to slope forms to the right. The double loop is one of them. Allow the hand to swing freely, make the two vertical loops equal in size (Illus. 52), and resist the tendency of the chalk to follow continually the same line. Let it move about till the two forms are to a degree equal and the hand moves with ease and facility. Practice the same thing with the left hand. The next exercise is to make the same form horizontally; then to put in the two diagonals, swinging over each loop many times to get facility and to overcome all awkwardness of movement. Practice on the loops should be especially directed to the points where awkwardness is indicated, and continued until this is overcome. This is a beautiful exercise for compelling rectitude and for making balance, proportion and *fitness*. It is quite difficult to make these forms *fit* in the beginning. Do not expect accuracy at first, do not mind how much the forms overlap in getting facility, but as soon as this facility has been attained, endeavor to get fitness and exactness. The same is to be done with the left hand. Many rosettes and forms similar to this can be

Illustration 52



Illustration 53

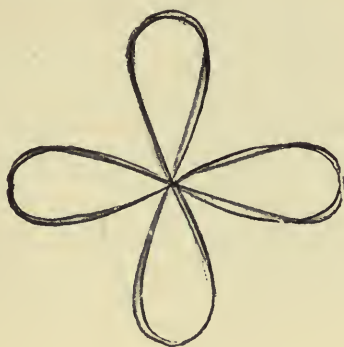
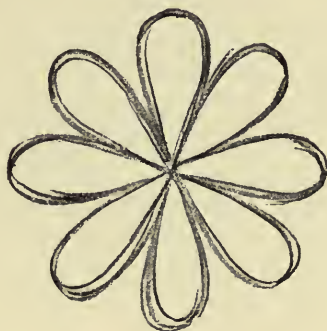


Illustration 54



made. Suggestions may be found in the illustrations in this book. It is a very easy matter for a good teacher to make twenty arrangements of the double loop.

When facility has been acquired, practice this loop as the smaller child is doing in Illus. 51. The pupil must endeavor to make the loops (47) erect, equal in size, and equidistant from one end of the blackboard



to the other. Let them be about six inches in length. Then interlace the loops. It is quite difficult to draw this (Illus. 60) so that the loops will be erect, equal in size, and of equal distance. This is a very good exercise. Do not allow the form to be drawn quickly, and resist the tendency of the hand to move as in writing. Continue the exercise straight across the board. There is a great tendency to let it diminish in size. This can be seen readily when a large number of pupils are drawing the form at the same time. The same exercise can be done with the left hand and many varieties of it can be devised.

*Application of the Loop.*—The next is quite an important exercise (Illus. 55). In making this form, draw the loops from six to eight inches in length, letting the center loop be erect and the two side loops balance. The hand must swing freely over these lines till perfect control and automatic movement are acquired. This compels rectitude, balance, proportion and fitness. It can also be interlaced by another similar form (Illus. 59), making, if it is properly done, a complete rosette. This is also to be done with the left hand. This form can be varied in many ways, making use of six, eight or twelve loops, interlacing them, etc., as shown herewith.

*Reason for these Movements.*—Only a few of these forms should be practiced at each lesson, it being desirable to give all the period to two or three,—a

Illustration 55



Illustration 56

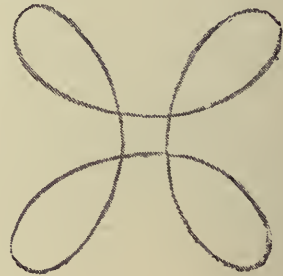


Illustration 57

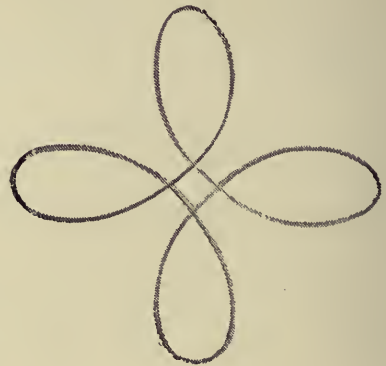




Illustration 58



Making Loop Forms With Both Hands, Primary Children

judicious selection having been made by the teacher. It will be found that the forms and the work are a little tedious in the beginning, just as the scales in studying music, or the exercises required in singing, are considered tedious. But experience teaches that these forms, properly carried out, will produce the desired results in the organism in the shortest space of time, and the teacher will realize that to get automatic facility a flow of

Illustration 59

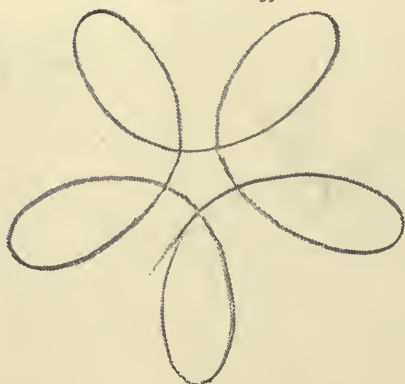
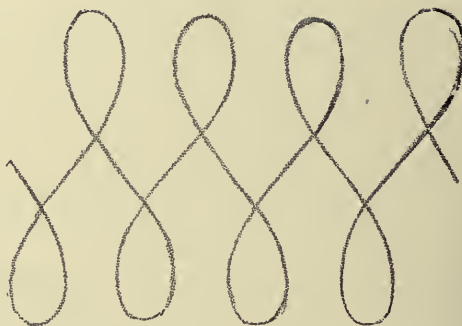


Illustration 60



movement is all-important. Very little can be done in skilled hand training if the movements are made consciously. It is only by making them automatic, thus allowing concentration of thought upon the end in view, that good and skilled work can be done.

**The Spiral.**—The next form is one of the most frequent in all art forms,—the spiral (Illus. 61). In making this, swing the hand to the center with a single touch. Do not mind how crude it is in the beginning. Begin this from the outside at *a* and aim for the center. Let the end of the line be in the middle, at *b*. Continually practice this form. It is the basis of most designs; it is seen in botanical forms, in the movements of water, air and wind. Even the planets spin in spiral orbits. The endeavor must be to make a true and good curve instead of a bent line. Only by making the swing automatic can this be done. The form must be

Illustration 61

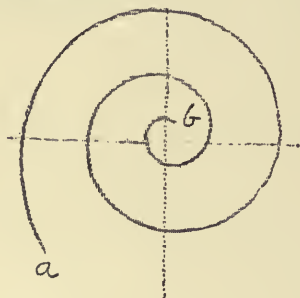


Illustration 62



repeated with each hand in all directions; first, to the right, the left, up and down, and of different lengths.

The next exercise is to double this form (Illus. 63). It can also be made fourfold. Next, practice making the spirals flow one into the other, like No. 65. Let them show gradation. This is quite difficult. Next, make a series of spirals flowing one out of the other and equal in size, as in illustration No. 66. To do this straight across the board, to keep them

Illustration 63

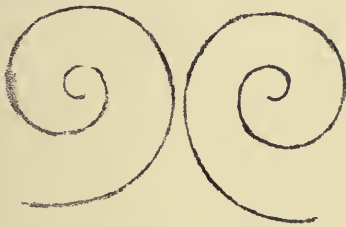


Illustration 64

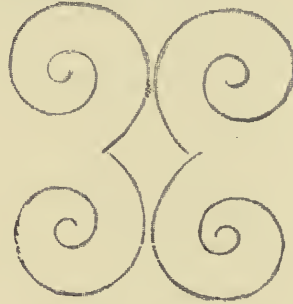


Illustration 65



Illustration 66



Illustration 67 (a)



Illustration 67 (b)



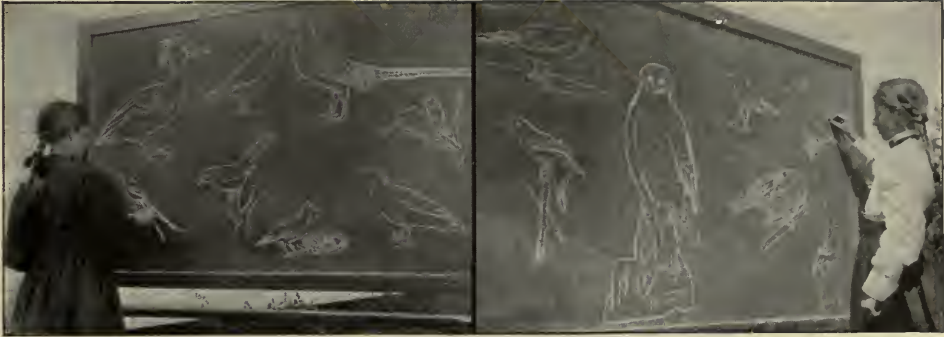
equal in size and at equal distance, is an excellent exercise. It should be repeated indefinitely. This is one of the most beautiful of all forms and it is used continually in many of the best styles. In fact, it is hard to make a good pattern without introducing this unit. Endeavor to make the lines of the spiral flow one into the other gradually, showing the transition increasing and diminishing. Do not let it be abrupt and angular, as at *a*, but flowing and graceful, as at *b*, in illustrations No. 67.

*Modeling and Carving.*—Years of experience demonstrate that copying and drawing from models alone on flat surfaces fail to give pupils the free swinging movements so essential in making artistic curves and touches. The hand always seems to lack a certain facility that even many years of work sometimes fail to give. When, however, the hand becomes able to move with ease in soft clay and tough wood, when it has been trained to follow lines and surfaces through these mediums, it is wonderful how quickly the finest and most complex curves can be produced with free swinging lines and touches. In drawing these spiral forms, therefore, and all the other drill forms, it must be understood that the best results can only be obtained when carried out as I recommend in the various mediums—on paper, in soft clay and in tough wood.

The facility and accuracy of form obtained by pupils working this way, compared with pupils who only draw in the ordinary manner, is extraordinary. At first I could hardly believe it possible, the difference is so evident. Experience, however, proves that a much deeper and more lasting impression of form is secured when pupils make the various forms in different mediums. The hand also seems to become stronger and more energetic. Of course, working in wood compels the exercise of greater strength through the hands, and this exerts a favorable influence over the body, especially over the upper part, the arms and chest. This influence is particularly beneficial to children who suffer from the sedentary habits formed in schools, who lack full chests and droop over their work.







Memory Drawing

These various bird forms are drawn from pictures and the character and size memorized as much as possible. The forms are repeated until they can be drawn from mental image.

## CHAPTER III

### Elementary Units

---

**A**MONG THE MOST POPULAR FORMS of ornament are the various kinds of foliage. Leaves have been modified for many purposes in nearly all the styles of ornament. There is no end to the variety and shape. For our purpose, we will begin by making a few of the simplest conventionalized leaves, from which we may gradually pass to the most complex. The simple leaf units, I find by experience, are among the best things we have for school practice and drill. They embody all the desired qualities and are perfectly graded, from the simplest leaf forms to the most complex of the Roman acanthus leaf shapes.

**Simple Leaf Forms.**—Draw a vertical line, about eight inches long, to represent the midrib of the leaf. On each side place a double curve, as in No. 69. Draw the center midrib upward in the direction of the growth of the leaf. This form should be repeated. A very good way is to go over the lines many times till the double curve becomes automatic. The shape can be repeated fourfold (Illus. 70), thus making eight double curves in different directions; this should also be repeated until automatic. It is quite difficult to resist reversing these curves in the beginning, but a very

little practice enables the pupil to get them right and to make good balance, fitness, proportion, etc. The form can be made more complex by adding four more leaflets, forming a rosette (No. 71). This form can be made by drawing the leaflets long and narrow, short and thick, with the complex curve, and the single curve, as illustrated on page 96.

Illustration 69



Illustration 70

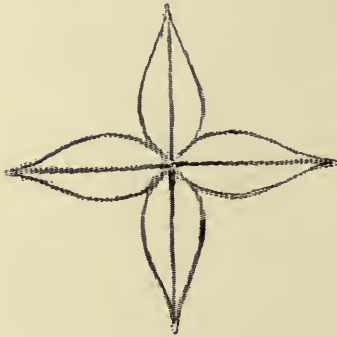
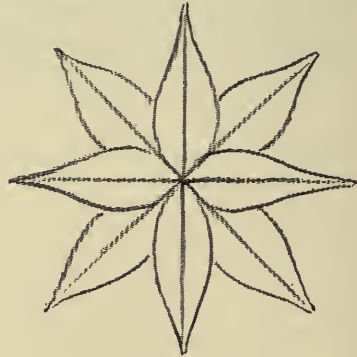


Illustration 71



*The Natural Method.*—Do not expect this form to be accurate in the beginning and do not allow any ruling of construction lines or measuring. This method is a protest against the use of mechanical or artificial aids, which help the hand at the expense of the mind and the judgment. These forms and rosettes will be very crooked at first, but it is surprising how soon they can be made, by very young children, with precision, as though they were measured and marked off by means of callipers or rulers. The more construction lines are used, the more they will be needed. Abolish them from the beginning. Compel the hand and the eye to obey the mind and to gain proportion and fitness without aids. This capacity is so desirable, so valuable throughout life, in any vocation, that it is hard to think that anyone would be willing to use the crutches which are allowed, and usually prescribed, in most drawing systems.

It has been universally the practice to teach the pupils to measure off these construction lines by artificial aids, thus putting it out of their power ever to be able to dispense with them. Do not mind how crooked the form is in the beginning. I have never yet found a child, after drawing the most crooked rosette in this way, who was unable to perceive its imperfection and was not able, if allowed, to improve upon it. It is this capacity that we wish

to obtain,—the power to compel the judgment to act from the start, so that in the course of time the hand will obey the mind and the habit be formed of making accurate proportion and fitness freehand.\* Of course, as facility is gained, accuracy must be tried for.

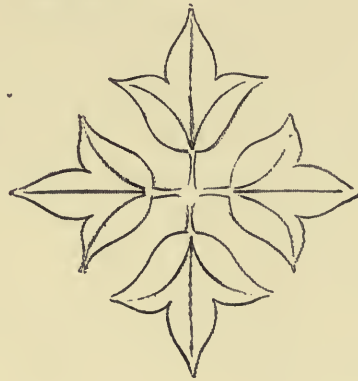
Children in a very short time can make this comparatively complex rosette form with a great deal of correctness and facility. It should be done with one hand and then with the other. It is a construction, a representation and a decoration, and I think it absurd to separate these qualities, as is done in some “systems,” and to give long lists of graded exercises under each head. All of these simple forms are constructions, representations and decorations. It is difficult enough to create the power to make the simple forms well without surrounding the work with a lot of technical and seemingly mysterious terms and processes. Many courses are filled with words like “bi-symmetrical conventionalization,” “systematic modifications of geometric,” “bi-symmetrical ornaments,” “modifications of the round,” “kite form,” etc. Unnecessary technical terms like these simply tend to obscure to the young that which should be as plain and lucid as the thing itself.

*The Next Form* is the same as the preceding, only a little more complex—a leaf with three tips or leaflets. Draw the midrib about eight

Illustration 72



Illustration 73




---

\* The more frequently a voluntary action is repeated, the easier it is to perform, and the greater is the tendency of its constituents (if it is a complex act) to take on the reflex form, i. e., to arrange themselves in a connected series of movements, which runs on mechanically when once initiated by the adequate stimulus.—[Wundt's Lectures on Human and Animal Psychology.]



Illustration 74



#### Drill Work in Leaf Forms and Loops

This picture illustrates a pupil drawing the leaf and loop in various ways. The lines are repeated many times, without rubbing off the forms, which wastes time. By this repetition the child is making the various curved lines, the form, and the space between the forms, organic and automatic, and at the same time facility, rectitude, balance, fitness and magnitudes are being *felt* and planted in hand, eye and mind.

inches in length, balance the side vein on each side, then repeat the double curve to each tip. Let the proportions of each leaflet be about the same. This is a very good leaf to practice on. Do not let the tip be made too small, as is the common tendency with nine out of ten children drawing for the first time. Swing the hand repeatedly over the double curves till they become automatic.

The same thing can be repeated fourfold, making a complex rosette (No. 73). It is almost impossible to make this in the beginning without reversing some of the double curves. Leave plenty of space in the center, and do not mind if it is very crooked at first. This exercise can be repeated till the forms fit each other, leaving a space between each leaf.

No one can see the children draw these forms without realizing what an excellent exercise this is for compelling accuracy, facility, fitness and



some of the most desired qualities in drawing. In a short time the children become able to make these forms automatically. From the beginning, do not allow them to make "construction" lines. Let each leaf be drawn in its turn separately. Do not make the ribs or veins for the four leaves before starting the outline of each.

*These exercises are for discipline*, it should be constantly remembered. Undoubtedly, by using a few construction lines, the form can be drawn more readily and with much better proportion, but my idea is to get proportion and fitness in the hand, to make the hand feel that proportion and fitness automatically. This can be done and well done if the forms are practiced as described. Thousands of children can make this form with ease in some of our schools, showing that it is not as difficult as it appears to people viewing it for the first time. It does seem surprising to see children make their hands obey their minds with fluency, accuracy and fitness, but it is not so surprising when one has been through the stages and can realize how they become able to do it.

I constantly suggest certain sizes for these forms, because experience with thousands of pupils has proved the size indicated to be the best. There are good reasons for making the forms either much larger or very small, but for general purposes the measurements given are the most suitable. It is quite curious to notice the tendency, among children and adults alike, to show their disposition and their training by the way in which they make some of these forms. For instance, children from the kindergarten will almost invariably make minute, puny drawings. The reverse should be the case. Very small children ought not to be allowed to draw that way, because the brain centers with which the fine finger co-ordinations and muscular movements are made, have not been formed and come much later. In some little children even the bones and muscles themselves are not formed. Nervousness and chorea frequently result from work of that character attempted too soon. Their movements especially ought to be large and free, using arm and hand more than the fingers. I personally much object to paper pricking, paper weaving and a number of other similar occupations in the kindergarten, for the same reason.

**Conventional Forms.**—These leaves here given are conventional in form. Some teachers may object to this, thinking it essential that children should make realistic forms before conventional ones. A little thought,



Drawing and Painting Class—Grammar Grade Children, Public School of Industrial Art, Philadelphia

This room is one of three used by about 1000 pupils and teachers of public schools. Each pupil uses the rooms two hours each week, drawing, modeling and carving, in rotation. One side of the room is devoted to blackboard work, with room for eight pupils to work at once.

however, should convince them that if they are troubled with the details and myriad-fold markings on leaves, it will be impossible for them to get facility and speed; but if they work on a few typical or conventional forms of leaves until they can instantly draw them in any position, of any size and proportion, and to fit any space, then it will be easy to grasp details, and with very little practice many kinds of leaves and forms can be put down. We must, as Michael Angelo said, "purge a thing of its superfluities and grasp the essentialities."

Pupils who have arrived at this stage can make many designs by using these simple forms. They have already some capacity in this direction. From the start children must be encouraged to arrange these forms in beautiful ways, to make appropriate patterns for various purposes, in order to allow their creative capacity to come into play.

*Units of Design Based on the Spiral.*—The power having been acquired to make the spiral, a large series of units of design can be based upon this line. In making the first one, the scroll (Illus. 75), draw the outer line first, make the ball come as near the center as possible and endeavor to keep the lines equidistant. This is really a form, the delineation of a solid, one of the forms used in all the arts. It is made in metal,

Illustration 75

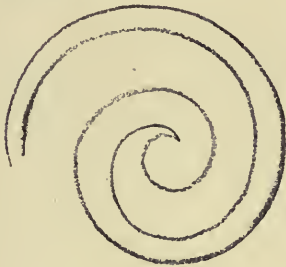
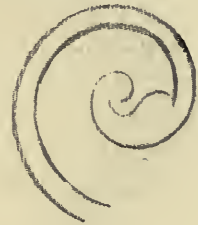


Illustration 76



Illustration 77



carved in wood, modeled in clay and used for a great variety of purposes. Do not make the form reversed, as in No. 76. It is a little difficult in the beginning for some pupils to grasp the shape, but it must be practiced continually until it can be made automatically. The forms illustrated at 77 and 78 will be found useful for practice also, and are based on the same shape, with



slight changes, but increasing complexity. Each of these forms is used in some of the best styles.

Do not allow the children to create freak units. We have so many to choose from among the best styles that it is absurd to expect them to create units of design at first, as is done in some of the poor systems of drawing in which children are expected to create forms. In such cases, the children invariably produce poor and feeble forms.

*The Crocket.*—We next have a series of forms making use of the crocket. We should practice this form first with the crocket consisting of

Illustration 78



Illustration 79



Illustration 80



a single curve on the outside and inside the scroll, as illustrated at No. 80. After this has been acquired, try to make the crocket with the double curve (81). This is much more difficult and requires a great deal of practice, much dexterity being required to get these double-curved crockets so that

Illustration 81



Illustration 82



they flow and have grace. This is one of the units (see also 81 and 82) that must be practiced continually and for a long time.

Do not expect the children to make some of these difficult forms readily. Remember, they have years to practice them in. Some instinctively



Illustration 83



A Variety of Units of Design Based on the Spiral with Various Crockets  
The pleasing forms should be memorized

let the lines flow with gradation, beauty and grace almost from the beginning. With others it requires a good deal of practice to get the very delicate transitions, from one curving to the other, that are exemplified by this form. It can be made to look quite clumsy, and it can be made with a great deal of beauty and grace. This is true of all the forms given.

*On the Elements of Design.*—Now that we have some units of the regular styles, we shall in every case hereafter in practicing these forms,

Illustration 84



This pupil is practicing the scroll and various crockets. Repetition will enable the hand to make the form any size and proportion with clear swinging lines. When it can be made freely this way, beautiful flowing designs can be produced.

make the form to get (1) balance, (2) proportion and (3) fitness. Do not let the pupils practice any of the shapes given without trying for these qualities. Very good simple designs can be made by using these forms; the children in the primary schools can make them with a great deal of facility.

From the very beginning, originality of arrangement must be encouraged. Be sure to have the children make their patterns for

some definite purpose and be able to specify what they are for, thus associating in their minds the drawing with some object for use. It seems very foolish, as is sometimes the case, to find a number of children in a class unable to state for what the drawing they have been making is intended. When you ask them they say simply, "it is a pattern" or "a design," and when pressed for further information about it, they say, "it is for the teacher." This shows that they have not made any mental connection between idea and subject, and the work soon becomes irksome unless they have an object in view.

It is wonderful what a variety of patterns children will make spontaneously and bring to the teacher if they are encouraged to make designs for various purposes about the house,—designs for carpets, wall papers, hangings, metal work, chandeliers, brackets, registers, fixtures of different kinds,

Illustration 85

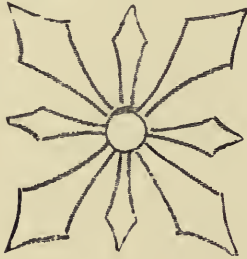


Illustration 86

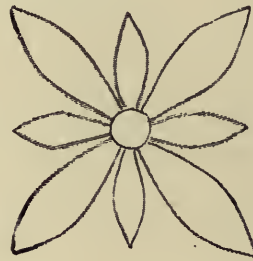


Illustration 87

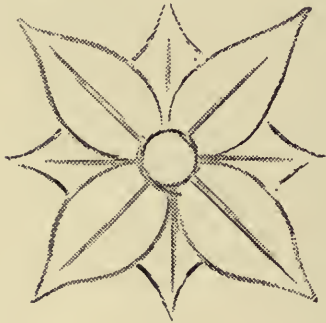
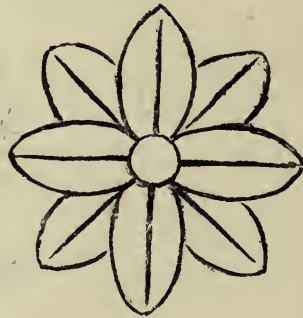


Illustration 88



Rosettes for Drill Work

carving on furniture, chairs, tables, sideboards, frames, hat racks, etc.; designs for pottery and dishes of various kinds. The children instantly see the connection and take a great deal of pleasure in making these forms; and

by using the objects in their own homes they are inspired thereby to better work. Parents and friends also become interested, especially when they see the practical application of the work.

**Combinations of Units.**—The children should be encouraged, as a unit is thoroughly mastered, to double it, first in simple positions and then in complex ones, as shown in variety in Illus. 89 to 92. It is surprising in how great a number of positions the simple scroll can be placed.

Illustration 89



Illustration 90



Illustration 91

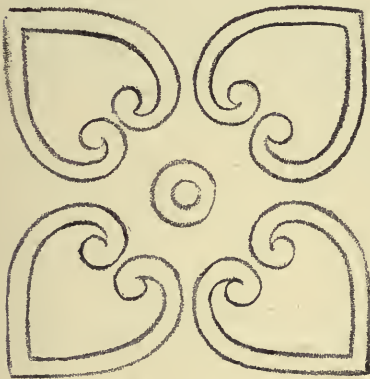
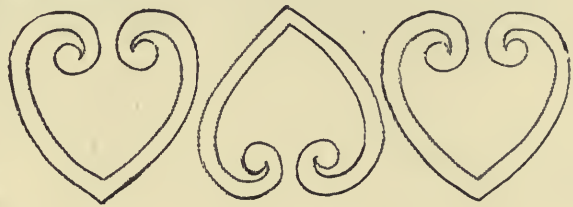


Illustration 92

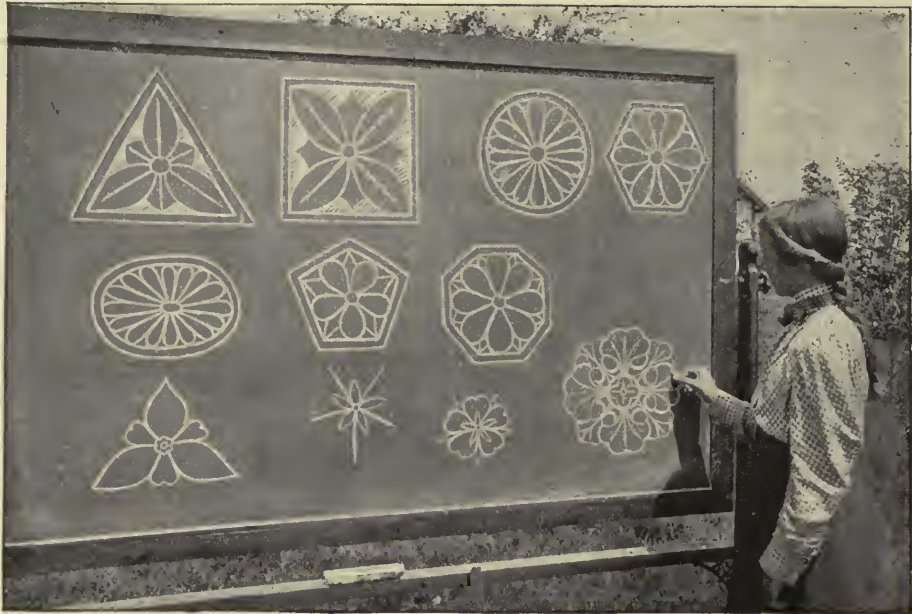


The children must be encouraged continually to arrange all the units in this way, so as to form different combinations. Do not let them copy only the combinations given here, but encourage them to form combinations of their own.

A very beautiful series of exercises for beginners can be practiced in making rosettes, using the simple lobe or leaf form. The rosette can be placed in a triangle (Illus. 93), in a square, in a circle, in an oblong, in a pentagon, in an oval form, in a hexagon, in an octagon, and so on. There is no end to the variety of simple shapes that can be made this way. It is a beautiful exercise for fitness and construction. Make the square, or oblong, and all construction lines entirely freehand. Do this from the very begin-



Illustration 93



Blackboard Exercises—Drawing Rosettes

It is excellent practice to make similar rosettes fit and fill different shaped spaces. The hand and mind soon grasp the idea of concrete size on the flat surface, and become able to make definite proportion automatically in any position. The children practice these forms entirely without construction lines.

ning. Very young pupils make very irregular forms at first, but they soon begin to get a certain amount of proportion and gradually gain the correct shape. *Do not* expect little children to make perfect forms. Accuracy comes by degrees. Facility first, then accuracy.

**Leading Lines.**—So far we have chiefly been studying units of design. Now that a number of units have been mastered, we can take up the subject of leading lines, one of the most important things in designing. In all patterns there are a series of fundamental lines that can readily be seen by any one who will study them. On these leading lines the units are placed, and in accordance with the character of their arrangement will the pattern be beautiful or the reverse. The basis of leading lines is the spiral, one form flowing out of the other, as in Illus. 96 and 98. If this form is doubled or made fourfold, we at once have an arrangement on which any of the units



of design can be placed, making a pattern that is beautiful or not, as the arrangement is beautiful or the contrary.

Practice many simple arrangements with a few curves first. In making arrangements do not allow the spiral to be made the same size. This is one of the universal tendencies of a beginner. Insist on variety. Let some of the scrolls be large, some medium and some small. Let them show a certain amount of growth, as a plant grows. They should display a certain amount of branching also.

Illustrations 94-95



Rosette Models for Drawing and Modeling and Carving

Attention must be given also to compactness, to radiation and to tangential flow of line. A very good exercise for practice is to make a number of tangential curves flowing from the spiral (Illus. 99). This must be constantly practiced till the forms flow and branch out without angularity or stiffness. Good tangential curvature must become automatic and organic. Very little

Illustration 96

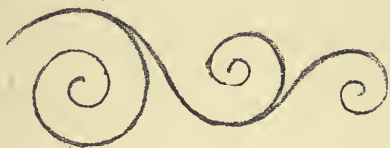
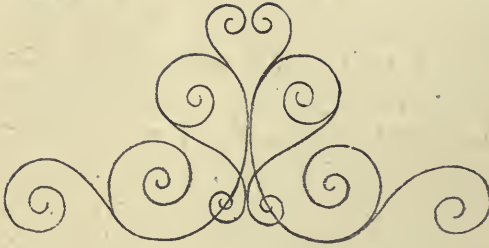


Illustration 97



in the way of fine designing can be done till the hand makes these movements automatically and with absolute freedom. If we have to think of the transition of one line into the other, it will never be graceful. That duty must be relegated to the spinal centers.

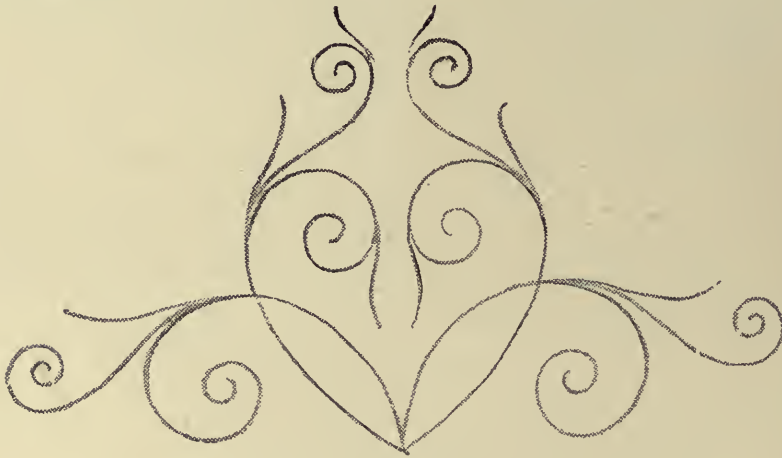
Illustration 98



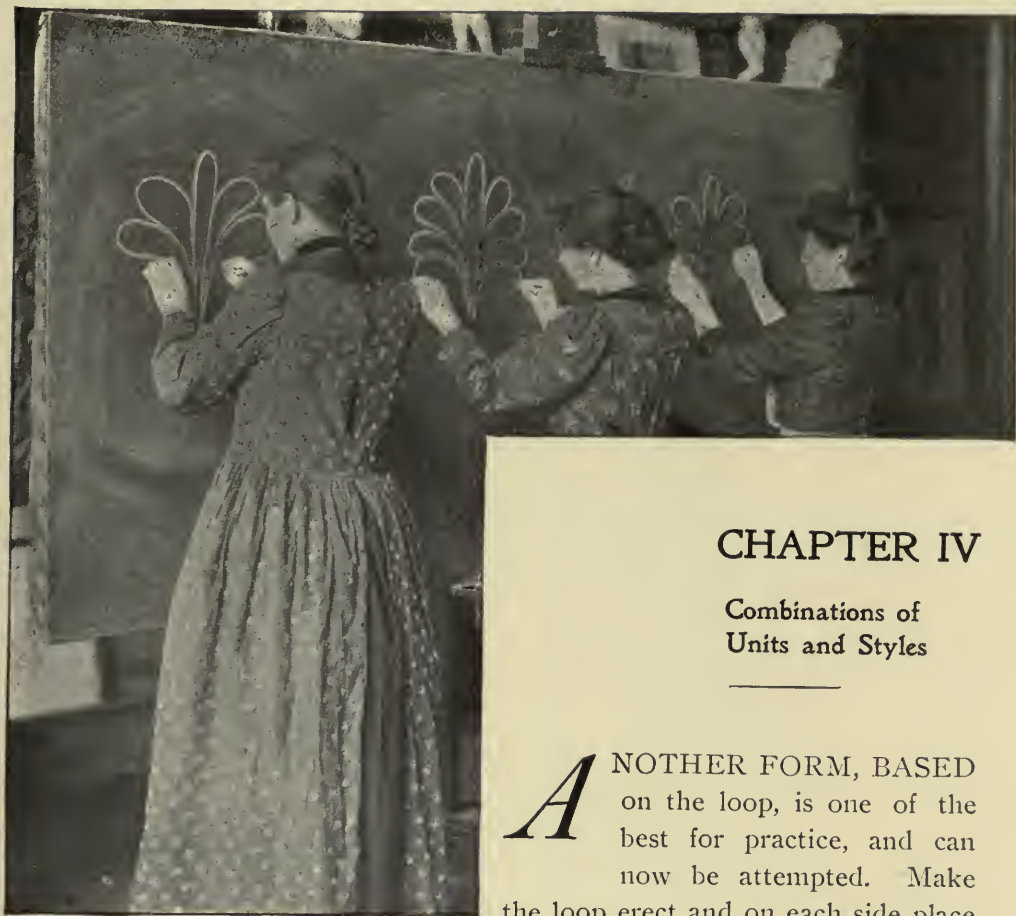
Resist the tendency shown by a great many beginners to make a series of little curves all alike and flowing in a like manner in different directions. Try to get a certain amount of strength in the patterns, a certain amount of interlacing, and at the same time a

certain amount of simplicity. There will always be a few main or fundamental curves that can be readily seen, no matter how complex the pattern may be. From these main curves the minor ones can branch out. Very little can be said in the way of rules and laws with regard to the real truth of arrangements. Like harmony in music and meter in poetry, it must be felt, it must be part of the organism.

Illustration 99



A Suggestion in the Use of Leading Lines  
Many arrangements of leading lines should be made for practice



Drill Forms—Teachers Practice in Unison

## CHAPTER IV

### Combinations of Units and Styles

---

**A**NOTHER FORM, BASED on the loop, is one of the best for practice, and can now be attempted. Make the loop erect and on each side place two or three lobes, as shown at 101. See that the center lobe is quite erect, or vertical. Let each one of the side lobes curve a little more, increasing in magnitude and then diminishing. This form can be made with five, seven, nine lobes, etc. Properly drawn, it makes the anthemion, one of the most beautiful of all Greek forms. It is quite difficult to get the side lobes to curve and at the same time to show gradation and fitness, but comparatively little practice will enable one to do this. This form must also be practiced with both hands, it being one of the very best exercises for ambidextrous practice.

Illustration 101

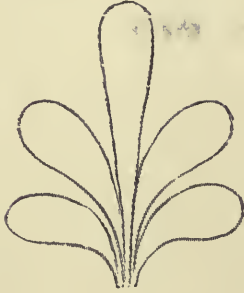


Illustration 102

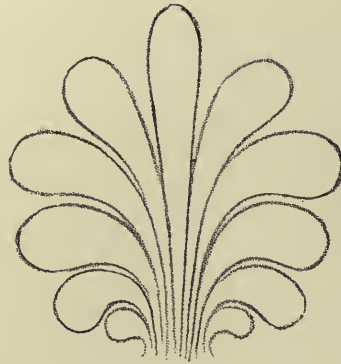


Illustration 103

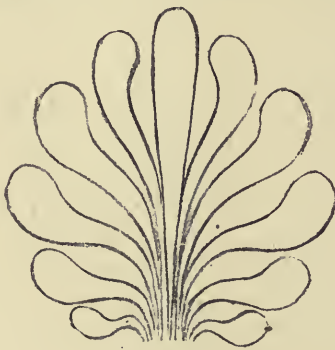


Illustration 104



*The Anthemion.*—This form can next be practiced in the four different directions illustrated in 106 and 116, making another beautiful rosette form. To do this successfully, so that the lateral movements may be right and the drawing erect, requires a great degree of manual dexterity and physical co-ordination, but children in the primary grades can readily make this form after a few months' practice.

It is important that children should understand the meaning of the forms drawn by them, and when they are producing one they ought to be taught what it embodies. The anthemion is a fundamental Greek form, and, properly drawn, possesses a variety of qualities. For instance, the center lobe contains straight lines. The form has a graded series of curves from a straight line to an acute curve. It has balance, proportion, fitness, grace





#### Co-ordination of Motor Centers

This exercise illustrates how readily children can make complex physical co-ordinations in all directions. The exercise is repeated until the child can swing all the various curves with (1) facility, (2) balance, (3) proportion, (4) fitness, grace and beauty, automatically. Mental co-ordinations are being made, as well as physical. All the varieties of the anthemion should be practiced in different sizes and memorized. The children should be encouraged to draw them in lead pencil and to note variety of forms on surfaces and in material. This form is the basis of some of the most beautiful of decorative forms.

and beauty. It has tangential curvature of lines. Its magnitudes are well proportioned. It conforms to a great many of the natural laws and the laws of art. It has a certain amount of growth, radiation and distribution, and hardly an abstract idea of form can be conceived that is not embodied in this shape. This is the reason it was used by the Greeks in preference to almost any other form, and I believe it was for this reason that they used it as the antefix of the Parthenon.

Illustration 107

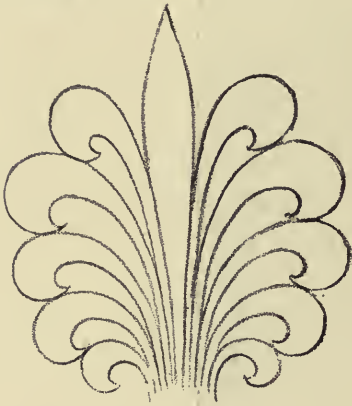


Illustration 108



Illustration 109



Illustration 110



Varieties of the anthemion can be made in a great many ways, as here illustrated. Names have been given to many of these, as the honeysuckle, the palm, etc., but as used by the Greeks it was simply an ideal form and not an imitation of any one plant:

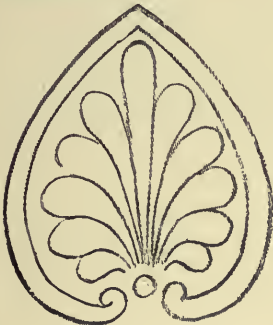
Illustrations 111-112



Plaster Models from the Antique

*Combinations of the Anthemion.*—When facility has been acquired in making this form, a very good exercise is to combine it with the scroll (Illus. 113). In the beginning, make the form without many lobes, taking particular pains to make the lobes fit each other and fill the space equally. This is a little difficult, but if practiced continually, a short time will enable one to make the most complex of lobed forms with ease and beauty. After trying the simple ones a number of times, then more elaborate and complex ones can be attempted. No. 114 is a very beautiful form, combined with

Illustration 113



the scroll, and can be used for an endless variety of purposes. It can be made short and thick, long and slender, and can be compressed or extended to fit almost any space. With the introduction of crockets, first, the single crocket and later the double-curved crocket, it can be made to look still better, as illustrated in Figures 115 and 120.

As soon as facility is acquired in making this form, which should be practiced with each hand, and as soon as the power to make it with balance

Illustration 114



forms are fixed in the mind they are not forgotten, but can be called upon almost without consciousness.

and fitness has become automatic, it can also be practiced with the scroll combined another way, as in No. 120. In making this, draw the lobes first, with both hands and then the inclosing scrolls. Endeavor to make the forms fit. This is a good exercise for teaching compactness and the filling of space, and may be performed in a variety of ways (Illus. 120). All of these forms should be made fourfold as soon as the first form has been memorized, for once these

Illustration 116

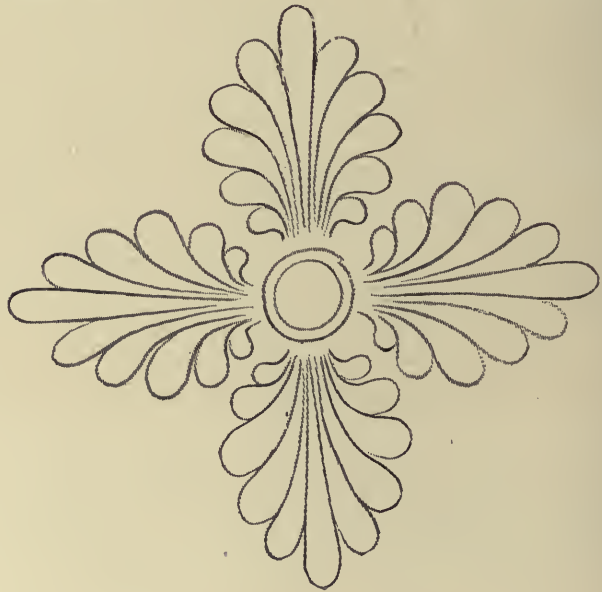


Illustration 115

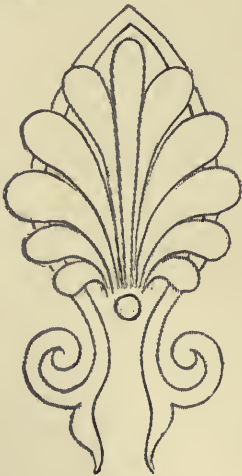




Illustration 117

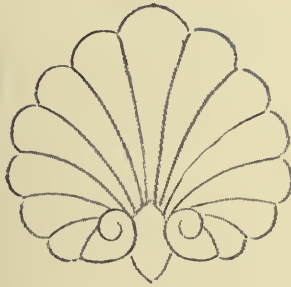


Illustration 118

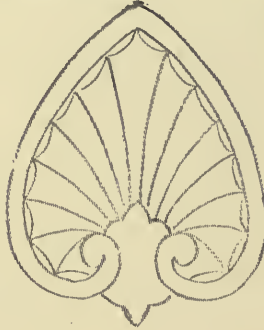


Illustration 119



Illustration 120



Anthemion and Scroll

These forms, varied in size and proportion, must be drawn with clear swinging touches until they can be made without conscious effort. The basis of the seemingly complex form is the spiral and loop. When once facility and magnitudes become automatic, beautiful forms result.

*Complex Leaf Forms.*—The next step is to make a leaf with five leaflets, palmate in shape. Proceed in the same way as with the three-pointed leaf (page 89), making the midrib first and two curves on each side balanced, then the double curves forming each leaflet (Illus. 121). This

Illustration 121



Illustration 122

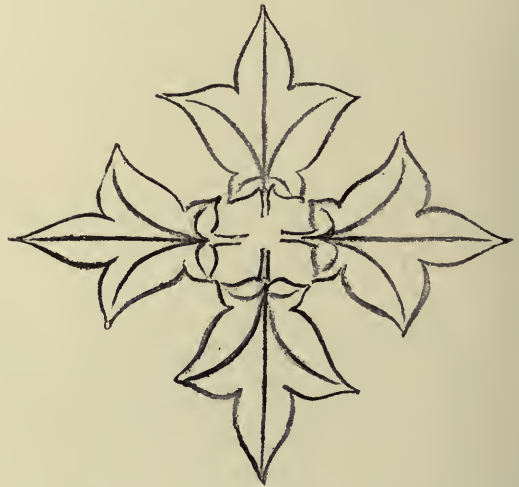
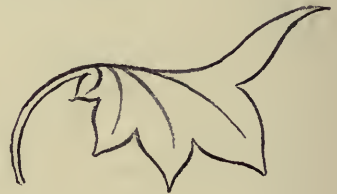


Illustration 123



Illustration 124



must be repeatedly practiced till a medium sized leaf of fine proportions is made. Do not let the children practice a very narrow or a very short and thick form. This leaf must also be made easy by repetition, and it can, like the former, be made in four directions (Illus. 122). Let it be about ten inches in length when drawing it on the blackboard and three or four inches in length when drawing it on paper. Reference is continually made to the

measurements that have been found by experience to be the most suitable for school purposes. If the blackboards are of the ordinary size the measurements given are far the best for general purposes. Be careful not to let the children make forms exaggerated in size, or in miniature.

It is more difficult to draw a side view of a leaf, but when facility is acquired it becomes quite easy on account of its not being a balanced form. Let the leaf part be about ten inches in length, draw the large double curve

Illustration 125

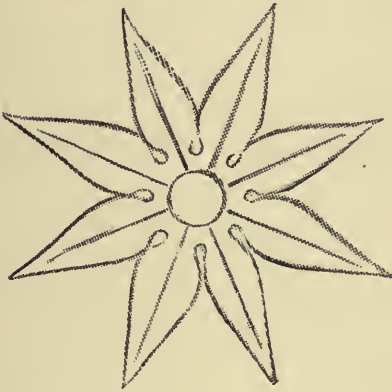


Illustration 126

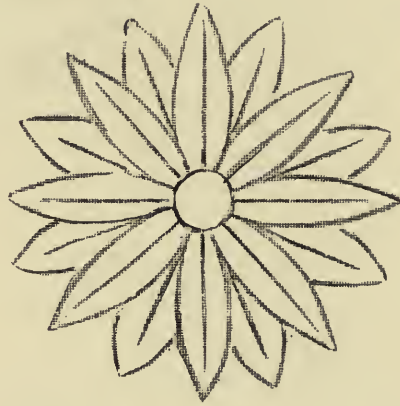


Illustration 127



Illustration 128

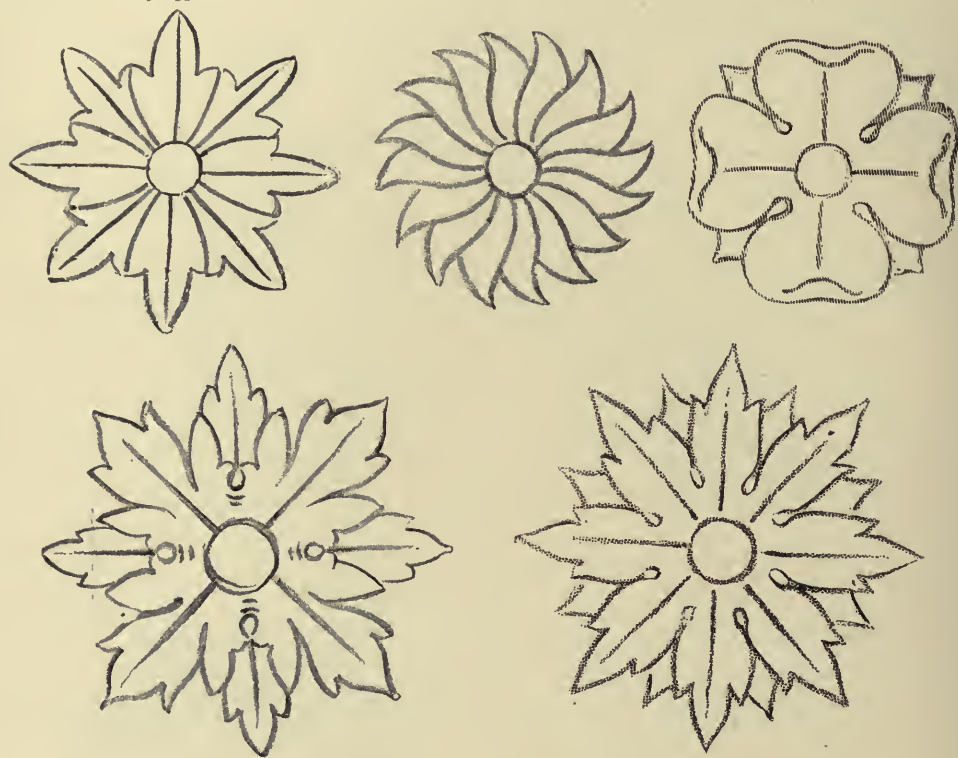


first and then the two ribs. (See 123.) Do not make it look ungraceful or too thick and let the stem be narrow. These are common tendencies in the beginning with all children. The form must be repeated a number of times

to get facility, and then it can be drawn in different directions, balanced, made around the circle, etc.

By this time the double curve should flow from the hands with ease, and therefore much more complex forms may now be attempted, as in Illus.

Illustrations 129-133



124. As many ribs and leaflets as are desired can be put in. Endeavor to get style and beauty in these forms. They can be drawn so as to look very coarse and clumsy, or, on the contrary, to look exceedingly graceful and beautiful. In making these complex leaf forms, get as much variety of proportion as possible; do not let the leaflets be all of the same size. The same with the ribs; let them flow out with gradation and tangential curvature.

Beautiful rosettes can be made by using the leaf curve (see 125). Small points or darts can be placed between each leaflet and an endless variety of such shapes can be made. Make the center boss or ball first, then draw the leaflets out on each side entirely freehand, without construction lines, mak-



ing some of the leaflets with three tips, some with five or more, as shown in the pictures.

**Bud Forms** can also be made, and leaf sheaths, consisting of an exterior and interior double curve (see 134). The same forms can then be made with very simple collars (as in Illus. 135), using four, five or six leaflets. Let these little collars appear to embrace the root of the bud first, and do not draw them as though they came out from one side only. Remember that this is delineating the appearance of a solid on a flat surface. It is difficult to make the collar fit in the beginning, but the children soon grasp the idea and make very beautiful ones,—some short and thick, some long and slender. This is called, in its most complex stages, the acanthus leaf bud form. It is simply an ideal bud form.

*Another Beautiful Series of Leaves* can be made by using the dou-

Illustration 134



Illustration 135



Illustration 136



Illustration 137



ble curved leaflet as before, but making an "eye" between the leaflets. This change makes it more complex and a little harder to draw successfully, but it is soon conquered. Make the five-pointed leaf and the side view and all

the other forms with the eye, as illustrated in No. 136. The same thing can be done with the bud forms of the last series, always drawing the bud itself first, then the midribs for the collar of leaflets radiating from the bud, and

Illustration 138



the collar of leaflets last. Never, in any of these exercises, allow the children to make the outline first, but let them begin with the ribs forming the skeleton or the framework, and if you once get this right, the detail is an

Illustration 139



Leaf Forms Modeled in Clay

easy matter. As a result of this practice, the most beautiful and elaborate acanthus leaf buds and foliage can be drawn organically. They will then appear very different from the usual forms given pupils to copy, in which the leaf margins and the forms of the leaves themselves are drawn with meaningless lines, and with notches and points like saw teeth, instead

of the beautiful double curve that we always find in work of the best periods (see Illus. 140-142).

These idealized forms very soon take on the character of the individual drawing them. Just so much balance and proportion and fitness as the pupil has in himself can be embodied in the work of the hand. If there

Illustrations 140-142



is a tendency to make coarse forms, then the pupil must struggle, and by repetition from good copies and good styles, gradually grasp finer forms. I have taken the clumsiest of boys, who seemed to have all their fingers

Illustrations 143-145

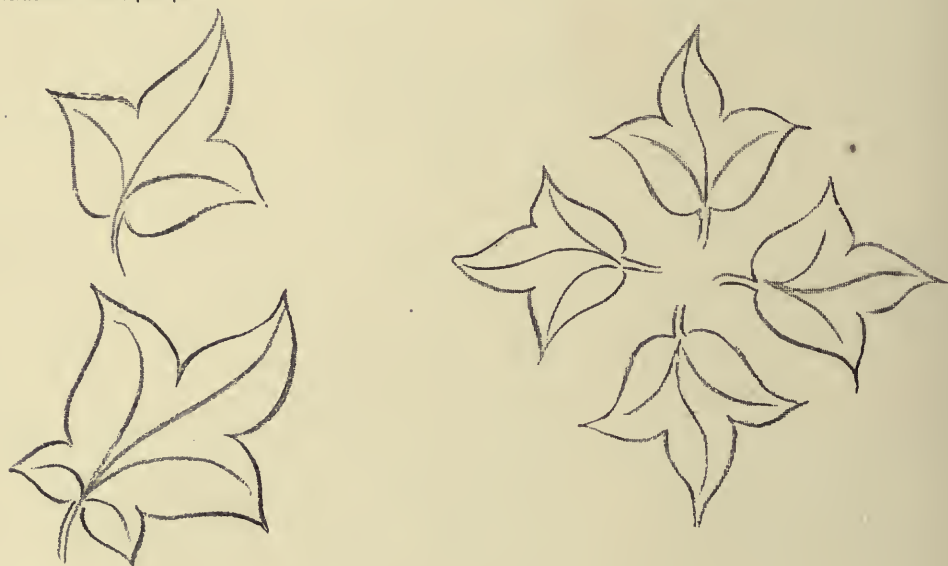


thumbs, and who produced in the beginning thick-set, coarse and clumsy forms without grace, and by giving them special drill on one or two of the most graceful of these forms, I have seen them enabled to draw them with

unusual grace and beauty. To do the work successfully, then, it must be made automatic.

The work at this stage, although good discipline, is not a task, because the pupils take pleasure and joy in their efforts. There is no more pleasant sight than to see eight or ten children swinging with each hand these forms freely and gracefully on large blackboards. Even the beginners soon grasp the spirit and endeavor to do it also. Do not, however, allow the pupils to struggle with the very complex units before they have mastered the simple

Illustrations 146-148



ones, as you will find that they continually wish to do. I am well aware that there are many drawing teachers, and even in some cases artists, who ought to know better, who will say there is not much good in drilling children and requiring them to do work of this character. Usually, however, they will be found to be thoughtless people who have not looked into the laws of mental growth and who do not know the force of habit. The drill is necessary to get the qualities desired, and as long as it is enjoyable, benefit comes to the pupil. I am well aware that the work can be overdone. This is true of any good thing. But I write this simply for the benefit of



teachers who have a little imagination and who will not be tied down to any one set of processes or forms. Ten-minute periods are quite long enough for this practice.

Illustration 149



Illustration 150



Leaf Forms Modeled in Clay

Another series of beautiful leaf forms can be made, using the leaf either with three points or five points, and with and without the eyes, by employing double curves in each midrib. These are much harder, and should not be attempted until the erect or straight leaves have been mastered. The forms can be made around a circle, turned up and down, to the

Illustration 151



Illustration 152



Leaf Forms in Design Modeled in Clay

right and the left, as illustrated in No. 146-8. Pupils will in the beginning find that they reverse these double curves frequently in starting any new

form, and that is a sure sign that the curve is not made automatically. It must be practiced with both hands till it is right every time. Just as we have practiced to get facility in making these leaves and a certain good proportion, they should also be practiced to get fitness,—that is, to make them fit different sized spaces and to proportion them to other surroundings with ease and grace. This will not take so long as one would think, when the first stages have been mastered. Designs embodying these forms should be made, first, by simply doubling, then by making fourfold and still more complex arrangements.

Illustrations 153-156



*Combinations of Leaf and Scroll.*—Practice making this scroll and leaf in a very simple form first (Illus. 153-6). Make the scroll with a single touch, a little crocket inside, and lastly the double curving portion or piece of leaflet. When this has been tried in different directions a number of times, make the same form, adding other curves as with leaflets.

Practice making these in different directions quite a number of times. Then the same form can be attempted with more elaboration. Make the leaf portion with several leaflets. These forms will be quite awkward and clumsy in the beginning. It is very hard at first to make them flow out from each other. Let them "grow." Persist in making them with the left hand in the drill work, and in a very short time beautiful conventionalized foliage can be drawn.

The result is very different from the amateur work usually produced by people who attempt to make foliage without having first learned to draw thoroughly and automatically. It is impossible to express growth and tangential curvature and flow of line with complex leaflets and buds in different places, if one has to think of details and the shape of the different portions. That must all be automatic in the hand, the thought being given to the arrangement, the flow and the transition of one form into the other. Only when such freedom is secured do we have *drawing as a mode of expression*, which is very different from imitative drawing, copying a piece and a portion, first "sketching" in with light lines and then "lining in" with others. Our children have plenty of chance to make merry over that kind of drawing.

To replace the scroll any other of the units of design can now be used

Illustrations 157-158



with the leaflet in endless combinations, paying attention, of course, to fine arrangement, to flow of line and to beauty. Space will not allow me to illustrate a fraction of all the combinations that can be made, though I should like to suggest a few. These forms can readily be seen in the illus-

trations of pupils drawing on blackboards, in different parts of the book. To make combinations of these forms is one of the usual drill exercises in all our schools, the children stepping up to the blackboard in rows and each one making different patterns, that are elaborate and graceful according to the amount of practice they have had. Children starting with this work at the regular primary age can readily do as good work as is here illustrated by the time they are about ten years of age.

Illustration 159



Moresque Designs

These forms are quite difficult to make flowing and graceful. The single units must be thoroughly memorized before successful designs can be made. Fine arrangements of these can be made with brilliant colors.

*The Moorish Units.*—Another very good unit for practice is the Moresque unit. This is much more difficult to make automatic than appears from its simple form. Make the large double curve on the outer part of the unit first. (See Illus. 160.) Then swing in the double curve



from the point so that if prolonged it would flow from the stem and the two short curves, diminishing in breadth toward the stem.

This form must be drawn with a single touch for each line. It is an ideal form, and perhaps next to the Greek form is one of the most beautiful in the whole range of design. Make the unit short and thick, or long and slender, but always with a narrow stem. It is quite difficult for the pupils to resist making a scroll instead of a point on the short blade, as indicated in Figure 162. Point out to the class the two blades, a long double curving blade and a short thick curving blade. Time must be given to this form, and after a good deal of practice it can be doubled. Practice drawing it singly and doubled in all directions around the circle.

The next unit (Illus. 163), also Moresque, is likewise good for practice. This is much more easy than the preceding form, although it looks more

Illustration 160

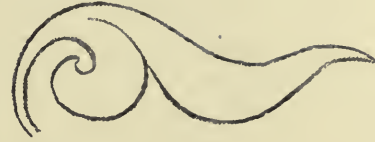


Illustration 161

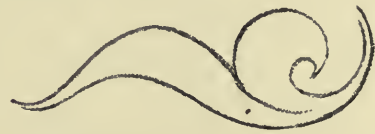


Illustration 162



Illustration 163



Illustration 164



Illustration 165

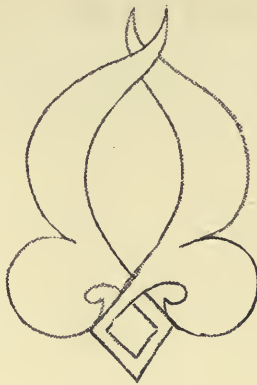
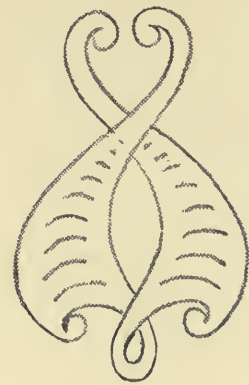


Illustration 166



complex. Make the outer curve swinging to the top scroll, and then a double curve to the second scroll and then a long, slender stem. This must also be practiced in many directions. Be careful to space markings equally and parallel. In combination with the other form given, beautiful Moresque patterns may also be made. Great care should be exercised in spacing out these forms and in interlacing them, otherwise the product will be poor. Simple arrangements are best in the beginning. Each of these forms doubled can be used for drill work on the blackboard, a few of which are illustrated in No. 159.





Colored Pupils from Public Schools

These children have been instructed by their own school teacher, in drawing and modeling.

## CHAPTER V

### Drill Forms and Designs.

---

**A** COMPLEX EXERCISE and one requiring a certain amount of dexterity is to combine circles, making different figures. Do not allow the pupils to make these exercises until they are expert with the single circle. Make the following exercise (Illus. 171) by drawing first one circle and repeating the line by swinging the hand on it several times to memorize the size and proportion, then swing the hand to the second position, making the circle as near as possible the same size, and then to the third position. If it is properly drawn, it ought to make a complete circle inclosing three equal circles, equally interlaced.

This is a good exercise for the judgment and to fit the forms. When the three-sided center piece is made of equal curves, equi-distant, and the next space is even and equal, and so on to the inclosing circle, it shows great accuracy. I shall repeat again that we must not expect accuracy in the

beginning. Facility first and then accuracy. This is a statement that I shall make continually. Measured accuracy, of course, is not required.

The greatest artist that ever lived could not perform these simple exercises absolutely true, but ordinary people can perform them to a degree,

Illustration 170

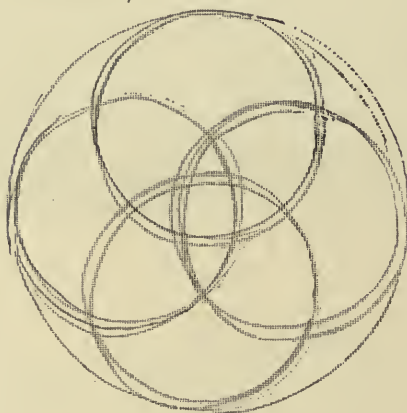


Illustration 171

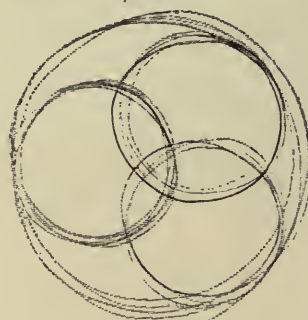


Illustration 172



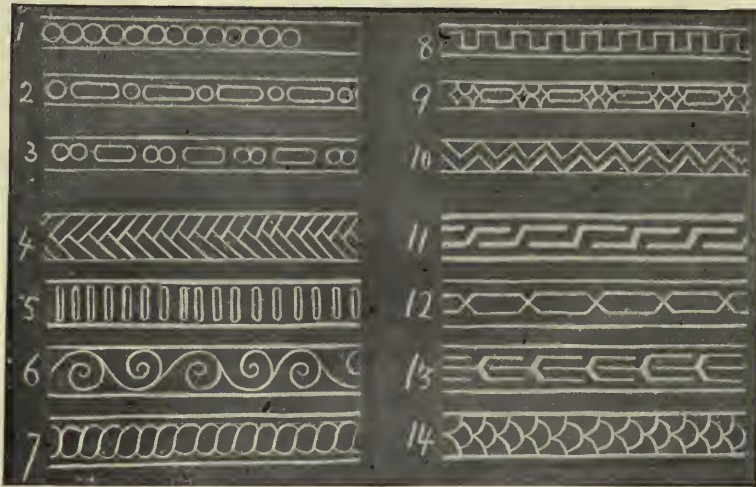
showing very good proportion, fitness, and so on. If a large class is drawing the same exercises, it is very rare that one or two do not fail to show remarkable facility and exactness in doing these things. Some have facility and accuracy almost organic or automatic in the beginning; others seem to entirely lack these qualities, and it seems as if they could never acquire them.

Borders make a very good series of exercises for practice and drill work. The pupils can begin with the simplest frets (like 173). Make these forms entirely freehand, straight across the blackboard or paper, from end to end. Do not mind if they are not accurate in the beginning. The tendency with everybody at first is to make them diminish in size. Resist this and keep up the practice, and very soon the border can be made with straightness and the other required qualities. Make a number of forms similar to the border, using straight lines, as illustrated. Then a series can be



made, using a combination of the horizontal and the oblique line. A number of elements are used in borders. The pupils can begin, say with the simple frets, using straight lines, then a simple elementary plait, the zigzag, the beads, and other complex ones. The wave, the scroll, and the spiral will make a beautiful series of borders, and all the different units of design can be used in it. The scroll and crocket, the leaf, the Moresque unit, the Greek form, etc., can be used for the same purpose, as partially suggested in the accompanying sketches.

Illustration 173



Exercise in Drawing Borders

Borders of many styles can be drawn and memorized by repetition. All the good common borders seen in wood, metal and stonework should become familiar to the pupils. It is excellent practice to draw them entirely freehand across the board, also on paper and slates. This compels a great deal of accuracy.

Endeavor to have the children vary these forms and make the same units of different proportions. Beautiful borders can be made with the Greek forms, introducing the anthemion. Then there is a series of Celtic frets, Arabian frets, Moresque, Chinese, and so on. It is quite important that pupils should understand the meanings of some of these ornaments, this enabling them to enjoy the ornaments more thoroughly. Very few of the wonderful patterns seen sometimes on barbaric ornament fail to contain or symbolize certain things.

Illustration 174



Strap Work

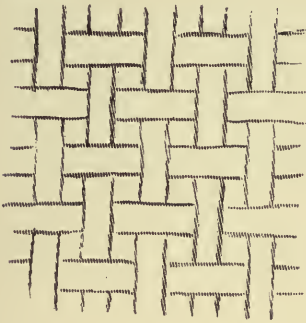
To make these forms interlace and balance without erasing lines or marking off the dimensions, compels attention and is valuable manual training. Very elaborate work, strap work and complex frets, etc., may be drawn for practice this way.

***Exercises to Compel Accuracy.***—The little exercises here given are to compel the hand to attention. I begin with a simple form, the loop (shown at 174). The object is to enable the hand to make the loop stand erect and to interlace the band at once, freehand, without crossing. To make the double loop is a little more difficult. To make it so that it is equal on both sides at first is almost an impossibility. But notice that when the form is repeated a few times the hand gradually becomes accustomed to it, and makes it in better shape; and after a few repetitions the power to get the form interlaced and at the same time drawn correctly is unconsciously applied or becomes automatic. Do this with the loops fourfold as above. Next try the band (Illus. 174), making all the links equal in size and each band interlaced with others at regular intervals. To do this at first without raising the pencil except at the required places, compels attention and a certain amount of thought and care that is beneficial. Next, try the

form of two rings interlaced. The lines are to be drawn at once without cutting each other, and the rings should be quite evenly drawn. This must be repeated many times. Then the same thing can be done with three rings interlaced.

The next exercise is to draw a band interlacing the ring (Illus. 174). Remember, it is required that these forms should interlace without cutting and without lifting the pencil except at the proper stops. The work requires continued thought and trouble in the beginning, but can be done quite swiftly and with a great deal of accuracy after practice. This is a thing to be desired and helps exceedingly in a variety of places in drawing. It makes the hand obey the thought in certain places with rapidity. Do not mind how crooked the forms are in the beginning, or how many errors are made. Persist with the work till it can be done with ease and accuracy. A good return will be had for the trouble taken.

Illustration 175



Interlacing work of several kinds can also be attempted. To make this so that each band is of the right length without cutting the wrong band, requires a certain amount of dexterity and neatness that is much to be desired, and is difficult to get. Remember, the hand is to practice this till it can do it automatically. This seems impossible at first, but it has only to be repeated till the hand and the mind are thoroughly familiar with what is required, when it can be done readily with great ease. The size of the mesh can be changed. It is a good plan to try strap work of different kinds like this and other patterns.

These exercises are especially good for students who are inclined to be a little careless or slovenly in their work. It is especially good for those who are not careful in the beginning, and expect to come back at some future time and make things better, when it might be done right at the start. It is also excellent discipline, and is useful for adults for practice when they require to be braced up a little or do not have energy sufficient for more important things.

**Drill Work.**—Throughout this period of our work I attach much importance to drill. I want lines to be drawn automatically. I want them



to be made with single sweeping touches. A curve is something very different from a bent line. The more sweep and swing you can obtain, the better the curve will be. We should be able to swing curves of any size and gradation automatically with a single movement. We cannot imitate a true curve or spiral by patches and short touches. This is the reason the drill forms are so continually emphasized and that I wish you to practice the sweep and the swing over and over again, until you can make good spirals, double curves, circles and ellipses.

The ellipse is the most beautiful of all geometric forms and one of the most useful in design. It is even more beautiful than a circle, because it

Illustration 176

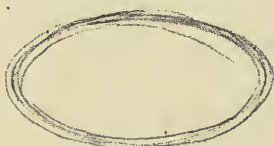
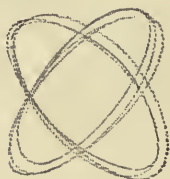


Illustration 177



has the qualities of the circle combined with variety of curve. Practice to make the ellipse automatic by means of the following exercises. In swinging this form (Illus. 176), do not endeavor to follow the same line. Swing about in different places.

Facility first and then accuracy. This is a good

exercise, because it compels balance. Both sides of the ellipse must be symmetrical. When facility is acquired with the one form, practice it in combination (Illus. 177), as in the preceding exercises. It is also good to make long and narrow ellipses, short and thick ones, to be able to make the hand obey automatically the mind in response

to the desire. We should be able to put down in drawing all these forms in the proportions desired without an instant's hesitation. That is what I mean when I say that proportion must be made organic, just as we endeavor to make balance, facility and fitness organic.

When this can be done it is very good practice to make a series of vessel forms. Let the form be simple in the beginning, like 178 for instance. There is no exercise that will give the children the idea of a solid, the complex solid, in different positions, more quickly than this. The making of simple saucer or bowl-shaped forms must become automatic. One must practice with them till the form is symmetrical and stands properly. It can be made deeper or wider, and different sizes can be

Illustration 178

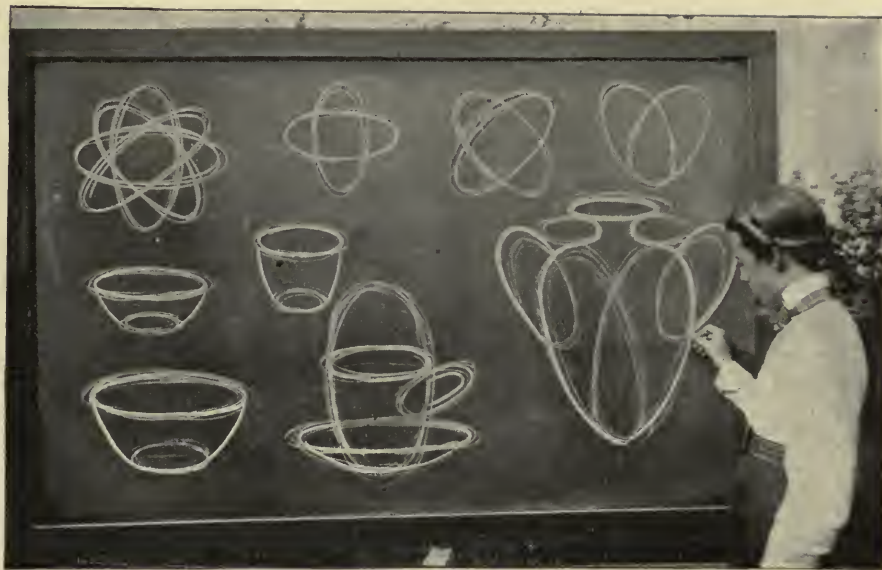




made so graduated as to indicate the whole gradation from a straight line to a circle, as observed in different relations to the eye.

Practice with these curves will enable one to get very accurate balance in these vessel-shaped forms, and the children can also do it. Of course,

Illustration 179



Drill for Magnitudes

This picture shows pupils memorizing magnitudes and making solids. The ellipses must be swung with free continuous touches until the balance and size of form is felt. Various cylindrical forms should be drawn as cylinders, cones, circular plinths, etc.

in the beginning the vessels will seem a little bent or crude, but they will look like solids, like vessel-forms, containing cavities. In teaching delineation, this is quite an essential point to make children realize. It is quite difficult by the old way to make some children, and even adults, realize that the movements or touches they are making are the visible representation of something in their minds. Usually they look at the marks on the paper or the board as they make them, disassociated from the mental image of the thing they want to represent. They look at the pencil lines or chalk marks as the diagram in itself, and begin to work with that, modifying and changing, instead of keeping to the original mental image, and making the hand follow that form.

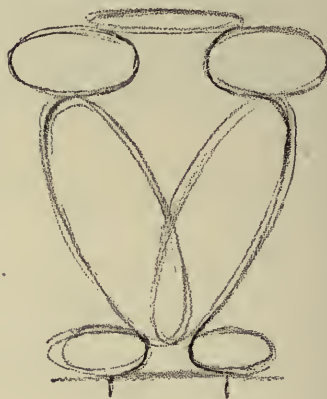
It is not easy to make my meaning clear by means of printed words, but if one will practice with this form, and at the same time think of the saucers and dishes being solids, the hand will very soon grasp the feeling that it is delineating something tangible and concrete, not simply making pencil or chalk lines. This association is strictly necessary in drawing. We want to make the connection between the eye and the hand machine-like, automatic. We want to make one obey the other without thought, and the more we encourage this capacity the better the drawing will be. All kinds of cylindrical forms can be made, cylinders of various sizes, circular plinths of different sizes and the like.

It is a very good exercise when the children have acquired facility in this way to make a cup and saucer. (See Illus. 179.) Every line in this cup and saucer can be made accurately by means of swinging the ellipse in different directions, and it can be put in very accurate perspective. It is quite difficult to make the cup fit the saucer in the beginning. It is good practice also to make different sizes of cups and saucers fit each other.

I believe this principle was understood by the Greeks. Certainly their vessel forms of all kinds conform to it. Almost every Greek vessel can be drawn by a series of these curves. In the simple vase form with handles, illustrated in No. 179, page 127, every line is made without any trouble, and very good balance can be obtained if the ellipses are even. Of course this cannot be expected until the ellipse is made automatically, but when that facility is once obtained, beautiful, balanced vessel forms of all sizes and shapes can be produced with a few touches. It is very good drill, when the children are practicing, to have them make new vessel shapes, using the principle. Do not let it be overdone. Keep the forms simple and beautiful.

The transition of curve into curve can be studied while producing this vase. Some of the most beautiful Greek moldings conform to this principle. Usually, the more gradual the transition from curve to curve is made, the better the result. I repeat that this is useful in enabling one to make the two sides of a complex-shaped curved figure of any kind, in wood,

Illustration 180



stone or metal. It is easy to bring the concrete ellipse to any proportion and then to repeat that in any position. I have never known any one taught in the old way able, in drawing a vase form, to make the balanced line down the other side of the complex form. They can very seldom get the two sides alike, and never with a single line.

It is one of the most tiresome of the drawing exercises usually given to children in schools,—to make the two sides of a vase, and I have even

Illustration 181



Diagrams (or Section Views) of Vessel Forms for Designing Upon

Some of these shapes are copied and modified. The good forms are memorized and original designing is attempted. The balanced curves of these forms have been made by swinging the ellipse lightly and then erasing the unnecessary lines.

seen the vase form cut out on paper and pasted on the wall, for them to copy, as though that would make it more easy. Magnitudes must be grasped mentally before they can be delineated, and to do this, power to make magnitude must be made automatic by proper exercises. It is foolish to expect a child to put down a complex magnitude by imitation at the first attempt. It is invariably exaggerated in size, and little profit results to the pupil. The eye and the hand must take in proportion by repetition of various sizes consciously assimilated (Illus. 181).

**Work in Design.**—When the children have had a little practice







Illustrations 190-193



Design, in Several Colors, for Stained Glass Window

Made by a pupil in the Manual-Training classes of the New York Young Women's Christian Association.  
The fine color-qualities cannot be perceived in this reproduction.



Designs by Public School Children

The center cut is unfinished. These designs are made in various colors for different purposes.  
The forms are made entirely freehand.

in drawing the units of design on paper, as well as the drill forms on paper and blackboards, they can begin to make designs. See various illustrations of original designs by children and teachers on pages 66 and 130, also scattered throughout the work.

In some of my classes I allow the use of the ruler, making straight lines and marking out the sizes of the space that the pattern is to occupy. In other classes they have to do not only this, but the drawing of the straight lines entirely freehand, according to the amount of discipline which it is desired to give them. If they are very young, or perhaps mixed classes in the night school or mixed classes of beginners, it is advisable to give them the ruler to help them. If they are pupils who have had thorough training and the right elements of drawing, and have a certain amount of good hand and eye power, like the grammar grades of children who have had this training from the beginning, they can readily make their entire patterns freehand, drawing all the lines without the use of a straight edge or ruler, not measuring distances, and making all circles without callipers. It is good sometimes to give the ruler to pupils to test or judge the amount of proportion they have made, if you can depend on their not making the actual forms with it. This is a question for the individual judgment of the teacher. Some classes of pupils, of course, will cheat and use the ruler, others will do as is required.

***Color and Brush Work.***—When designs are finished to the teacher's satisfaction with a pencil, it is a good plan to allow the pupil to paint the background or the design, whichever is best, in black ink. If it is a matter of economy, say in the night schools or rural schools, common jet black ink can be used, with a round pointed brush, with hairs about half an inch in length,—Nos. 4 and 5. If the best results are wanted, allow the pupils to paint the pattern with India ink, or Higgins's black ink, or preparations of that kind. This throws out the design and enables one to see the full effect, besides affording the pupil the opportunity to use another tool, the brush.

It is quite important to get good brush handling, and in this elementary brush work you should endeavor to get the children to make free, clean touches with the brush (Illus. 194). Practice making some of the forms large, and some small; try to swing the brush freely, without resting the hand or arm. The most beautiful flowing lines and forms can be made this

way. At first, the forms will be very crude, but to be of value the forms *must* be made freely without help. Do not allow them to pick out the shape with little patches. Endeavor to get them as much as possible to draw with the brush. Very little practice will enable one to grasp the best mode of handling the brush. There is no better way than the Japanese method of

Illustration 194



#### Freehand Brush Play is Good Practice

in making various forms and also backgrounds in color. The pupils must endeavor to make the forms with as few touches as possible. Try to draw with the brush, also to do it without supporting the hand in any way. Much of the best Greek and Japanese work has been painted freehand. Grasp the brush sometimes in the hand like a pen, sometimes by the tip of the handle.

working, where the entire forms are made by brush work. The patterns can also be painted in monochrome, in one or two shades of the same color, as sepia or terra cotta; and later on two, three and four shades of different colors.

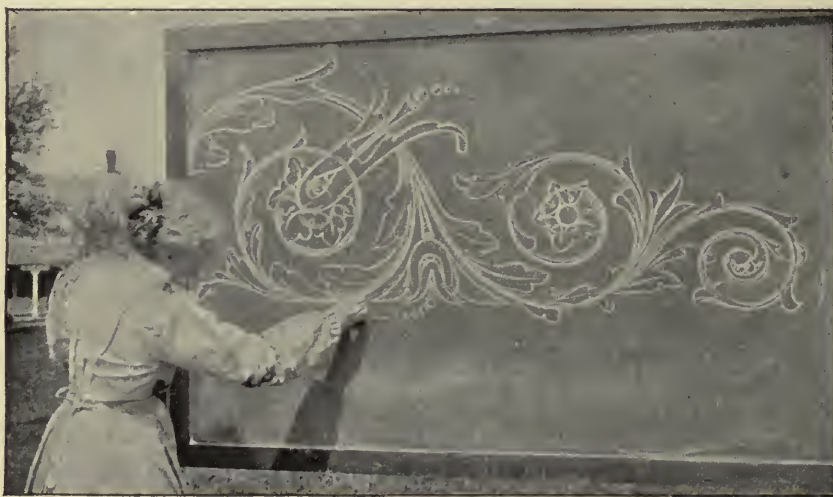
From the beginning the best pupils should be allowed to use white paper and should be given water colors. If it is a matter of economy, cheap colors can be purchased that are very good for this purpose, as low as fifteen cents a box. For ordinary school purposes, however, it is still



better to use the regular water-color paints. They last a long time, and five or six boxes will answer the demands of a large number of designers.

**Blackboard Work.**—Class instruction at the blackboard is shown in elementary stages for grammar grade pupils in illustrations 41, 42, 43, and 45. These pictures are from photographs taken in one of the public schools in Philadelphia. The teacher has about 60 pupils, and all receive this instruction in turn. The four pictures simply show a series of stages from the simple circle to elementary designing. No. 41 represents the children making the first exercise, the circle, which is usually drawn,

Illustration 195



Freehand Designing

Allow pupils to draw bold and free flowing arrangements as large as possible, making the curves with swinging lines. This is open air work on blackboard, made by a member of my summer school in the Adirondacks.

as described before, in six different ways. The second picture (page 69) illustrates the children drawing the scroll form doubled with each hand, the beginning of a pattern. The third (43) illustrates the pupils drawing the anthemion four different ways, the hands being placed for the purposes of illustration in the different positions. The fourth picture (No. 44) represents the children drawing designs. These pictures were made on the same day and the visit was unexpected. I



made the pictures myself, but had never been in the building before, so that the test was a fairly good one.

Under each stage represented there is a very large series of forms in which the children are drilled. Of course it is not possible to represent each one, though I should like to do it. The children are called up in rows, two or three to a board, there being four blackboards in the front of the classroom. In some schools there are blackboards around two sides of the wall, which will allow more pupils to be drilled at the same time. I find some teachers can, by thus dividing the class, give very conveniently a good lesson in blackboard-drawing to a large class in 20 or 30 minutes, every pupil working in turn on the blackboard.

The wise teacher will modify the suggestions offered here to suit her own environment. It is advisable for the pupils not working on the blackboard to observe closely those who are drawing, the teacher calling especial attention to faults in position, or to particularly good results; then if convenient, or at other times, the pupils at the desks can draw the same forms on their slates or paper, as preferred. It would appear from the pictures that these children are too close to their work, almost as though their faces were touching the blackboard. This, however, is not the case. The effect is produced simply because the camera had to be placed behind the children. You will find that some are almost at arm's length from the designs. There is a tendency with little children to stand too close to the board. Resist this as much as possible. Let the work be bold and free.

*Designing on Blackboards.*—When the pupils have become able to make the elementary forms and units of design without any trouble, and have gained a certain amount of automatic balance, proportion and fitness, it is desirable that they should take up a course of designing on the blackboard, it being one of the best possible surfaces for doing good or advanced work. I recommend, if the classes are not too large, that one pupil work on each blackboard, or at least have a space 3x4 feet; 4x5 feet is still better. This makes a splendid surface for a single pattern. It is advisable that the designs be made as large as possible, and that both hands be used.

Notice the illustrations herewith, page 136. This is part of a blackboard-drawing class. For convenience, I have shown the same teachers drawing two different patterns. It will be noticed that each pattern is different, that the scroll, anthemion, leaf form, shell form and



#### Blackboard Designing and Drill

These designs have been made by teachers of the public schools, members of the teachers' classes, Public School of Industrial Art, Philadelphia. The forms are memorized but the arrangement is original, and is drawn without erasure until the entire pattern is finished. Both hands are used, the left hand for the left side and the right hand for the right side. See page 135. Work like the above is done in about 4 to 6 minutes usually.

Moresque form are used. The teachers are using the left hands in every case illustrated. This is simply to emphasize the desirability of using the left hand, for reasons advocated in First Principles.

It is best for the pupils to make the center of the pattern first, being sure that they find the middle of the board. It is not necessary to draw a line, as is done in some cases, down the middle of the board. They must be able to feel the middle. The center parts can be drawn with both hands at once when they are symmetrical. If the pupils have had proper drill in the elementary stages, this will be quite easy. Then the rest of the pattern can be put in position. From the beginning, emphasize the desirability of firm lines made with clear and swinging touches. Endeavor to erase as little as possible. Of course when the pattern must be modified and changed, the eraser may be used, but refrain as much as possible from altering every little part.

Try to see the form as a whole before making it. A good designer can always do this; a bad designer is one who makes it up as he goes along, putting things here and there by chance, if they happen to look well. It is much better to be able vividly to form the concept of what is desired, and then to put it down complete, with a few firm touches. The teacher can very soon distinguish the pupils who are drawing this way, with a complete concept in mind, from those who are "making up" as they go along. Lack of clear thought shows in the hesitating movements, which betray lack of confidence. I can also distinguish this class of work in finished designs.

It is a little difficult to cover the whole surface of the board with judgment, good balance, etc., but it is good discipline, and can be done just as readily as if the pattern were very small, and gives much greater dexterity. Patterns drawn this way in the beginning will sometimes be very poor in composition and sometimes be too large or too small in parts. The object of the teacher should be to rectify, as much as possible, this fault. The moment the pupil steps back, errors of this kind can be perceived and rectified. It is better to hammer at one pattern several times than to try making a number of different ones, letting each one have an entirely different character. Modify one pattern till it becomes very much better,—till teacher and pupil are alike satisfied with it,—then attempt another.

This practice should be continued till the forms of any style can be



varied endlessly at will. Very soon, when pupils arrive at the stage illustrated, there will be a desire to introduce still more complex forms in the design, such as dolphins, griffins, grotesques, and other decorative forms. This should be encouraged in moderation, and attention should be given to the form used. It should not be used unless the pupil is thoroughly familiar with it. From the beginning, see that the patterns are made for some purpose. Do not let the drawings be meaningless patterns on the blackboard, without any intention. Of course there is practice in this, but from the beginning the pupil should firmly keep in mind what the pattern is for,—whether it is to be used for wood, or for stone carving or fabrics, etc., and as much as possible it should be rendered so as to be fit and appropriate for use in those materials.

Illustration 198



Free Hand Design with Griffins

Do not let pupils use any complex form in designing until it is thoroughly memorized. This pattern has been drawn in six minutes, without removing the hand until finished. The left side was drawn with the left hand first, then the right side drawn in proper balance with the right hand.





Drawing from Life

## CHAPTER VI

### Drawing From Life Forms and Memory Drawing

**T**HIS IS AN IMPORTANT PHASE of our work, and one that must be emphasized by the teachers, all the time, if they desire to get good results from the pupils. Pupils should be encouraged to draw from living forms as much as possible. A few illustrations herewith will serve to explain my meaning. Notice the picture of the girl drawing chickens. The chicken is moving about in a coop. At first the results produced are very depressing. The bird will not keep still, the pupil complains. With a little practice, however, it will be found that it is not necessary that the chicken should keep still; that its shape can be observed even when it is moving about. Notice that the girl has drawn the same chicken in five different positions,—a side view that

was drawn first; the chicken eating corn; a front view of the chicken looking up; the chicken seated; and the chicken holding up its head.

If the pupil will persist in making a few of these diagrams without minding how crude they are in the beginning, in a very short time it will be noticed that the hand and the mind become more familiar with the form, and that although the drawings are very rough, they will become successively a little better. A little more power will be registered in the mind and hand by means of each diagram made, and by degrees the hand will become more obedient. The feet will not be made too large or small, the bill will become of the right proportion, and the tail will stick out in the proper way. Nothing but making the form of the chicken organic by constant repetition, will enable one to draw it properly. When a sufficient number of impressions of the various parts of the chicken have been received by the mind, through the hand, then the hand will begin to obey the mind and be able to reproduce them readily. This is the stage desired, and it will come to almost any one who practices a sufficient time. The chief thing to do is to work, and not be discouraged by the distortion of the first forms that are made.

The same discipline can be obtained from cats, dogs, horses, birds, or any living animals that can be seen without trouble. The sketches may be made on pieces of paper or in a note book or sketch book. In some of my summer classes we frequently use blackboards in the open air, as will be seen from several illustrations in this book. It is of no use to copy the chicken a few times and then stop. The work might as well not be done if that is all that is done. The memory of the form must be fixed by subsequent repetition without the chicken. This is an important point. Sketch first from the real things, as often as is desired, to make the required mental and manual connection, and then as soon as possible test the mind and the hand by trying to recall the shape or shapes.

Do not be discouraged if the product is bad at first. Continually re-enforce and refresh the mind with new impressions from the object, and in a short time it will be found that facility is obtained, and that much better power of expression is the result. The first pictures and sketches are not made to keep. Of course I understand as well as any one that there are degrees of capacity in this work, as in all other kinds of work, but I have

## PLATE TEN



Painting in Color from Nature

Beautiful color work from natural forms can be done by children in the lower grades of all schools, if they are rightly instructed. Vivid memories of color should be received from fruits, flowers, insects, birds, fish, shells, etc. Color harmony and values should be taught from natural forms, not from stained and tinted papers. The butterfly should speak directly to the child. The colors, their areas, tints and values should be memorized and similar arrangements made in designs for various purposes. The teacher should be very careful in the beginning not to puzzle children with abstract theories about color, or to teach false nomenclature.



never yet found children, teachers, and other art students who have not been benefited, however bad their work may be at the outstart, by working this way.

Good drawing and sketches of this character can be made from the mounted animals and other specimens in any good museum. There is a certain stiffness and rigidity even in the best stuffed forms, but they are good to use if nothing better can be had. In some of my schools I have beautiful stuffed bird and fish forms of various kinds, mounted for study, but if possible I prefer the pupils to work from the real forms, and for this purpose excursions are made to zoological gardens and to other places, and the children are continually invited to draw animal forms in their native environment. Almost every one has a cat, a dog, or a canary, and there is no better practice than to sketch one of these forms continually until it can be put down successfully from memory alone.

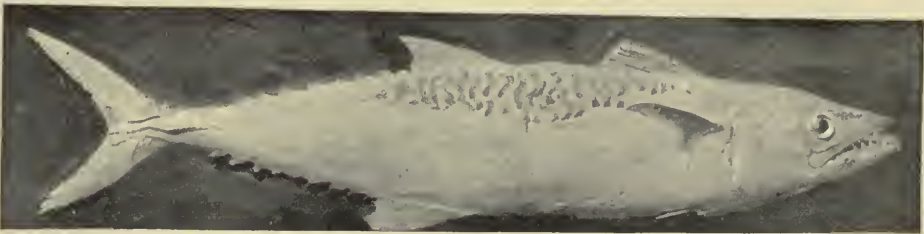
*Persistence Required.*—To do this properly requires a good deal of artistic and manual skill, and these exercises are desirable for their aid in this training, apart from the even greater value to the mind, the judgment and the imagination that always accrues from vivid, permanent impressions registered in this way from the realities of life. Such sketching from memory must be done continually, not a few times only, followed by long intervals of cessation. It is like practicing on the piano; fifteen minutes or half an hour each day, steadily persisted in, will do more good than five or six hours a day with long intervals between.

I think this holds good with almost anything. All progress is a matter of persistence and self-control. There are many people who desire to be able to play well or to sketch well, yet who have not enough force and energy in their disposition to be willing to make the required movements continuously, and who allow the influence or force of their surroundings to draw them away from their desires. This yielding is in proportion to their weakness of character. I think one of the most valuable lessons that we can learn from this work is the fact that it helps to form the will and develops a tendency to continuous application, which increases as the difficulties increase, and our line of work is of such pleasurable character that it carries with it a certain amount of satisfaction and joy that cannot fail to expand and elevate the mind.



*Memory Drawing* of all forms and ideas is not insisted upon enough anywhere, though it is one of the most beneficial exercises for expanding the mind and giving the artistic ability so much to be desired educationally.\* All good artists sketch incessantly; it is beneficial even to recall forms and designs when there is no opportunity to put them down on paper. Not life forms only should be memorized, but the mind should be exercised in mentally designing, and making compositions or patterns. Very valuable and useful power can be gradually acquired in this way. We should be able to think compositions and designs, and mentally to change them from state to state, just as the character of our speech or the current of our ideas change when we are thinking or reasoning.

Illustration 200

Common Mackerel—*Scomber scombrus*

One of the most important of food fishes. It is finely formed and a very active oceanic fish. All the fish forms illustrated hereafter are drawn and modeled in my various classes.

*Fish Forms* are fine subjects for study. Usually simple in form, the children will be found to draw them with much delight,—good typical forms like mackerel, the salmon, the bass, perch, blue fish,—what fine shapes! There is something about the fish that usually makes children's eyes sparkle. I don't know whether it is because they have experienced the joys of fishing, or whether it is that the drawings revive the sparkle and the gleam of the actual fish in or out of the water, but I do know that children take much delight in making these forms. A few suggestions will be given as to drawing these on the blackboard and on paper. There is an endless variety

---

\*The physiological condition of memory is that organic process by which nerve experiences in the different centers are registered; and to recollect is to revive these experiences in the highest centers the functions of which are attended with consciousness—to stimulate by external or internal causes their residues, aptitudes, dispositions, etc., into functional activity. Stimulated from without, they constitute recognition, that is, cognition, with memory of former cognition; stimulated from within, they constitute recollection.—[Maudsley, *Physiology of Mind*, page 514.]

Illustration 201

The Carangoid Fish—*Caranx hippos*

This fish is related to the mackerel, American blue fish and pilot fish. This and other essential facts about it are learned by the children as they draw or model the form.

of form among the fishes. Some seem all head, some nearly all tail, some are without fins, some with fins like wings.

Fish are beautiful examples of color. It is important to draw the attention of the children to this. The colors are iridescent, pearly, and brilliant to a wonderful degree in some fishes; when they first come out of

the water, they gleam like a rainbow. Get the children to recall these impressions. In many schools and homes small aquariums afford good opportunity to study the movements of living fish. Small fish have just as beautiful movements as the large ones. After some of my talks the children take a joy in visiting the fish markets. Nothing is more beautiful in color than a heap of shad, herring, mackerel, lobsters, crabs, and shell fish, when just out of the water, and children, when they once become

Illustration 202



Angel Fish

interested, are fascinated and register many vivid impressions in various forms. Encourage them to look at these things. Hardly any one can go to a

fish market, when the fish are beginning to arrive, without seeing crowds of men and boys, usually idlers, looking at the splendid forms, the beautiful curves, the variety of color, as the fish slide about. If anything exceptional, like a large turtle or sturgeon, is on view, there will be a crowd around it for some time. There is something more than idle curiosity here, there is so powerful an attraction in these strange and beautiful forms that the attention of even the most careless is compelled for a little while.

This is the thing to lay hold of, with children, and it is a divine energy poured out on every one. On this we must build if we wish to get them in-

Illustration 203



Sheepshead—*Archosargus*

A large and valuable sparoid food fish. So called from the fancied resemblance of its head and front teeth to those of a sheep.

oculated with the love of nature and the beauty and the joy that follow if this is cultivated to the higher stage. This energy must be cultivated and conserved, otherwise, like other vivid impressions of youth, it fades away, and finally, in a great many cases, is wholly lost. It must be cultivated skillfully and systematically from stage to stage. This a true teacher will do without taking the life out of the work by tedious, needless repetitions of tiresome formulas, graded steps, definitions, etc.

**Typical Forms.**—I use fish forms throughout all the grades. In the first grade I find the children fascinated in drawing a fish, while in the



Illustration 204



The Silver Moonfish—*Vomer setipennis*  
Called also Blunt-Nosed Shiner.

highest grades they are pleased to make various fish forms and also to idealize them in the way of dolphins of various shapes. The experience of many years has taught that the child in the beginning must have a concrete generalized fish form in its mind, a kind of type form if you like, one that has the usual spines on its back, the tail at the end, fins on the side, gills, etc.,

but which is not the picture of any special fish. But I find that when the children have once become able to make this generalized fish form with facility (and by making it, I mean when the connection has been thoroughly established between their finger tips and their brains so that they can reproduce it automatically as they think of fish), the moment they think of spines, the spines grow on the back; the moment they think of tail, the tail rays out from behind; the moment they think of fins, the fins are placed in position automatically; while the same is the case with the scales. I find also, if this form is thoroughly organized into the mental fabric, that children, when they have special fish forms presented to them, can readily grasp the differences and the resemblances, and with very little practice become able to delineate these forms.

***Speaking Through the Finger Tips.***—This is the manner in which I should wish all drawing to be done, and the way in which I have endeavored to make my pupils work. It has proven to be quite successful. To me this method is in accord with the usual process of mental development, it being simply the assimilation of certain impressions till they are made permanent and can be reproduced through the finger tips, just as we assimilate impressions and through other motor reactions give utterance to our ideas vocally or in writing. The time is coming when people will speak with their finger tips as well as their tongues. I mean the common people, not simply a few geniuses. I believe that there is a larger proportion



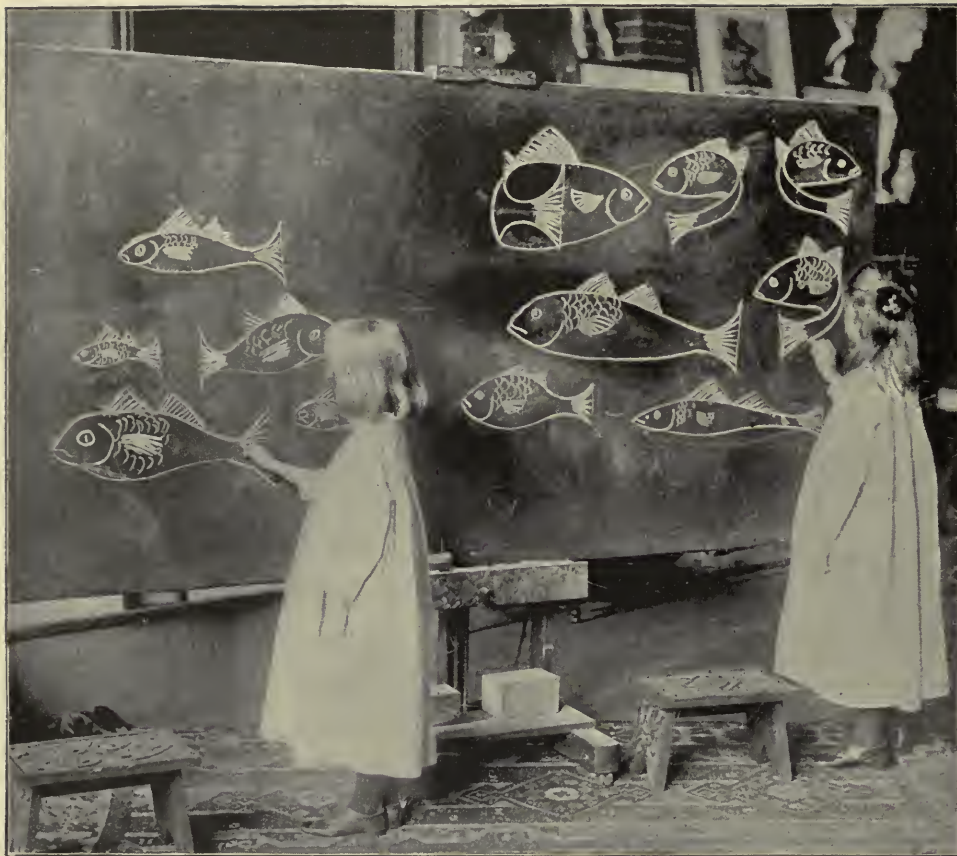
than we think of people who are gifted in this direction, and I see no reason why the hand should not respond to any idea or thought as instantly as the tongue usually does. In education, I have found that working in this direction is perfectly practicable; that the instrumentalities in all children and their powers and capacities seem as though they were specially endowed to this end. I really believe that all hands are capable, in the way of art work, of responding in an exceptional degree to some environment, or to some of the varied conditions of nature.

Notice the children drawing fish forms in Illus. 205. These are generalized forms. In making them the children, of course, have had the real fish, a plaster model, or a diagram, to study. I am not as firmly set as some teachers on the subject of copying from models all the time. I find that a photograph or print will call up a good memory of the various parts of a fish to children, especially if they are encouraged to look at and memorize the real forms. I find every day that it is more important to get the children to mentally recall form than it is to imitate it from the object. Of course some imitation must come first, but the fine technic is a matter of years, and the ideas of form can be growing meantime. But there is a great deal of merit and discipline in getting the children to endeavor to make tactual impressions on paper of even the complex things they cannot readily have before them, like a horse, for instance, that they have seen on the street. If you speak of a car horse or a cab horse or a horse in any of the wagons coming along the street, and mention several parts of its form, the children usually look for these things the next time they see the horse.

I frequently ask them to draw a shad during the shad season, and find they do not know its shape. They have forgotten, perhaps, the shape of its spinal fin or its tail or the bulk of its head. Let them do the best they can for the lesson, and then request them to look at the shad, and you will find that the next time they draw they have a very vivid impression organized in the mind, of spinal fin or tail or head, usually an impression that is organized so that the concept never fades. It is to get this knowledge to come to the finger tips, instinctively on command, that we work.

*Importance of Simplicity.*—Notice that these diagrams of fish that the children are drawing are very simple, that they contain the fewest lines possible. From the very beginning the essential features of form should be

Illustration 205



Memory Drawing of Fish Forms

The children are practicing drawing various fish from memory, to make different sizes and proportions, and to make them turn in different positions. The child should get facility of expression with a few essential features, before much in the way of detail is required.

grasped with a few touches. If I give a fish form to a student, of any age, who is not practiced in our method, there is usually an attempt to represent a maze of details, and the fish form or other form is lost in the endeavor to put down unessential features. To grasp the "essential" features and "to purge the form of superfluities" is of course the artistic part of the work, and this point the teacher can illustrate in different ways by showing good sketches, diagrams, and pictures by good artists. Invariably it is found

that great artists simplify things. And in drawing as a mode of expression,—the kind of drawing that we wish to get,—this simplicity and strength is what we aim for. There is no harm in the beginning to have little children copy one of these fish forms from the teacher's diagram on the blackboard, or from a chart or a good photograph. The teacher can also have real fish, bought for a few pennies, on the desk; can have a stuffed fish, a plaster model, or a living fish in a globe. He must aid the child, however, to get a certain proportion in this work, just as it gets a certain proportion in a leaf or an apple. The teacher must direct attention to the radiation of the spines and fins, the marking of the scales, and practice must be given in making these forms a number of times, till the proportion and detail of the different parts become automatic.

Then the teacher can let the children make the fish move about—or take different positions. This is much harder, but they soon conquer it. To make the fish turn around or swim up or swim down, or flap over, is quite difficult, but if they have once conquered the generalized form, so that it is automatic, they can very soon become able to make the same forms move about, and they take a great deal of pleasure in doing so.

*A Warning.*—Do not expect these things to come in two or three lessons. Remember, though you can give a little child these forms, that it usually has eight years of school time in which to practice. The children you see in our illustrations drawing these forms have become able to make any kind of fish in any kind of position, just as readily as they speak. Of course it is a matter of years. It is a very foolish teacher who expects a child to make a fish or other animal turn around in a few lessons, a thing that some artists cannot do (if they are requested) after years of experience, simply because they do not draw from memory, by the expression of ideas, but by imitation. They must imitate some form before them, they have never done anything else.

This is usually the trouble with many of the art schools,—there is imitation of models and sketching from models endlessly, with very little memory work. I believe if a quarter of the time spent in looking at models was given to recalling, without the model, the impressions made by it, much more valuable results would be obtained.

*Variety in Forms.*—When the children have facility in making the fish forms, as illustrated, drawing them with ease, allow them to make



Illustration 206



The Sea Bass.

A large marine food fish, called also locally blue bass, black sea bass, black fish, blue fish and black perch.

varieties of fish, long and slender, short and thick, etc., and encourage them to look at fish.

Invite them to catch fish. If we register the vivid impression that comes when a child first catches a fish and inspects it in all its glory of sparkling color, if we can make this impression vivid and organic with the joy and the beauty that goes with it, we have done something toward developing the artistic sense;—and I attach much importance to these unconscious glimpses of nature forms, as seen in the fields, the streets and the markets. Let us do all we can to make them indelible and permanent, especially through the feelings and emotions. This can only be done by frequently recalling the images and nailing them into the fabric of the mind by deeds, by performance of actions through the different channels of human activity. For our purpose we do it by recalling and recording the forms as often as possible on paper, in clay and in wood. Beware of making any of this pleasant and enjoyable work a task. This is where the teacher's judgment and skill must come in. Through the same door that you open into the mind, this energy or spirit can fly away. Watch, therefore.

Invite the children to try to represent fish forms that they have experience of and with which they are familiar. They become sometimes especially fascinated by strange fish forms, and it is well, if you have the



facilities, to show them pictures of these or make pictures of them on the blackboard,—a shark, for instance, a flying fish, or some of the many various forms with special peculiarities.

By degrees various adjuncts of the fish form can be taught to them, with the names of the different parts, like the diagram on page 153. These technical terms and others have a more or less complex character, according to the grade of pupils that are receiving instruction, but they can readily be fixed in the mind by this method.

I have many children who know the names of the different parts of the fish, which they can express with ease by drawing. To get them to memorize the names of the first dorsal, the second dorsal, the pectoral fin, the ventral, anal and caudal fins, and other difficult technical names, without some means of systematically reproducing them, is a hardship, and one of the things from which the present schools suffer. It is unreasonable to task the mind,

Illustration 207



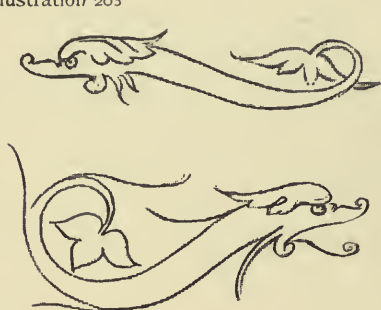
Drawing Fish Forms From Memory

The children also write or print the name of each variety under its form, so that they never forget it.

the verbal memory, with such things. Placed in the mind, however, by these instrumentalities, learning, and even the practice of expressing abstract thought in symbols, becomes a delight and a pleasure, and is continued with ease.

Encourage the children to notice the strong erect lines of the spines, the stiff, springy look. In some positions fish assume most beautiful

Illustration 203



curves and when the children begin to idealize these forms, very fine designs and suggestions can be received from them. Notice the many varieties of form in which the fish is used in combination with other forms.



Fish Forms in Design

***Fish Forms in Design.***—Like other animal forms, the fish is much used in decorative work, and gives additional beauty to some parts. The scales are used for surface decoration of many kinds. Practice in drawing scales so that they fit is one of the exercises that I give children at certain periods. To draw scales so that they are equal in size and fit nicely, so that they gradually diminish or increase in size, compels a wonderful amount of attention, and requires a great amount of manual skill. To do it successfully in certain materials, like clay and wood, requires fine manual training. Further suggestions for the use of fish forms in design are described and illustrated in Chapter VIII of this book.

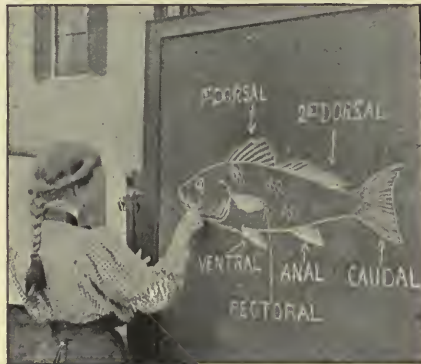
In making work of the highest character, of the most beauty, it is important that we should know as much as possible about fish forms and their color. The more intimate we are with these things, the more wisdom and the more knowledge we can put into the designs that we idealize or ideate from them. Very few people can really enter into the pleasure and the joy

of some of the great works of the best periods of different nations, simply because they do not see the connection between the natural forms and the idealized forms. Some of the most beautiful and wonderful of the Japanese and Chinese dolphins, dragons and grotesques are made from idealized fish forms. It is an added pleasure and joy in life to be able to perceive the beautiful as rendered even by "pagans" and other curious peoples.

Fish forms should be modeled in clay continually, especially if a vivid memory of the form is desired. They also make beautiful decorative forms for various purposes.

**General Remarks.**—I have given this lesson on fish forms enlarged and at length simply to illustrate and suggest a few points to instructors that can be applied equally to all forms, the same ideas and movements applying to everything created and suitable for instruction. Stupid and dumb is the teacher who cannot, even in the most degraded and forlorn environment, get the common bits of nature that are so silently eloquent. Make even the sticks and stones and grass speak to and through the hand, the head and the heart!

Illustration 210



Nature Study

Drawing a chart to indicate technical names of the different parts

PLATE ELEVEN



*Drawing from Nature*

Rapid sketches are made of the movements of the dog. This work is difficult at first, but if the pupil models the form also, accurate memories of form are received and made permanent.





Various positions of the same shell, as memorized by the children. The shells being fine in form are good models.

## CHAPTER VII

### Drawing from Nature and from Memory \*

**N**ATURE IS THE BEST DESIGNER. Our pupils must assimilate a variety of impressions from nature before we can expect them to create anew. Take shells, for instance. It is almost impossible to think of a new shell, the entire field seems to be exhausted by nature, shells being of every conceivable variety. It seems as though nature had worked out every possibility to its utmost exaggeration. We have shells thick, shells thin, shells long and slender, shells very short and thick, with spikes, spines, processes, ad infinitum. Before drawing shells it is advisable for the teacher, and the pupils also, to make a few diagrams, illustrating the growth of shells by addition to the margin, as pictured in No. 214. They can be made to take much interest in the growth and structure of the shell. It is advisable to explain to them how and why shells assume the different shapes, from the flat, scalloped to the pointed, spiral form.

Simple diagrams should be made at first, almost conventionalized forms if you prefer, and study should be made of shells simple in form, like the scalloped shell, spiral shell, cockle shell, clam shell, etc. If some of these are in pairs and doubled (Illus. 215), it makes a still more interesting picture, and the children grasp the relation of actual shell forms to some of the beautiful idealized shell forms in ornament.

---

\*As much as possible, nature forms should be used in drawing. Good work, however, can also be done from photographs and books. Diagrams from books are used several times herein as suggestions.

Illustration 214



Drawing from the Object

All sizes of shells can be drawn in the hand this way and form memorized. Small shells of beautiful form and variety can be purchased cheaply.

are never tired of looking at them.

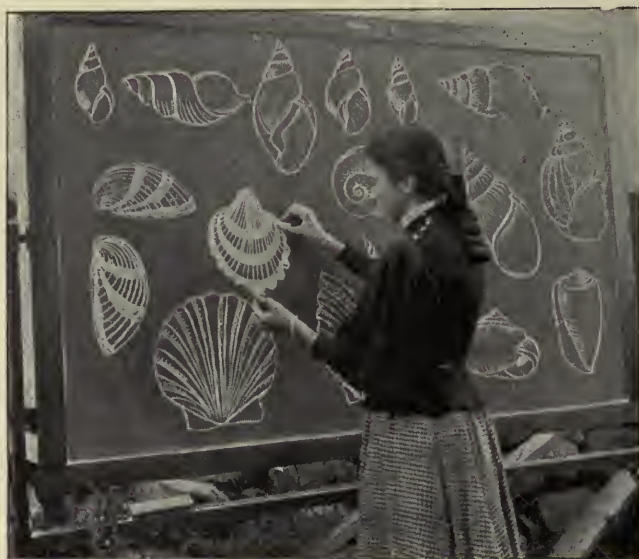
Shells are among the best things we have for teaching color. Some of them are perfect poems of color, and as they can be bought very cheaply, they are among the best things we can have for school models. The children have learned one of the most desirable lessons when they begin to appreciate the wonderful architecture spun into a shell, its form, its color, its structure and texture. When they can in the slightest degree reproduce its beauty, proportion and fitness in actions that

are themselves fit and beautiful, the shell has fulfilled one of its missions.

There is a great deal of talk about the expensiveness of school models. It is simply an excuse made by some ignorant people for the barrenness and

It is good practice to draw the shell freehand on the board from one held in the hand, making different views, then memorizing them, like the illustration 214. There is no better practice in drawing and color work than can be received from making accurate drawings of beautiful shell forms. Shells can be purchased in some instances for ten cents a quart. In a quart of such shells scores of perfect and beautiful specimens can be found. They last a long time and the children, if they are inspired properly,

Illustration 215



Drawing from Memory and from the Object

bareness of the ordinary common school room. A bright teacher can collect or gather clam shells and oyster shells that are perfect in form and color. Sometimes a clean oyster shell is a revelation of perfect colors and tints, being iridescent, translucent, pearly, etc. The greatest scientists or artists could require nothing better or conceive anything so fit. It is possible, for two or three dollars, to get a collection of shells of the commoner varieties that would stand the wear and tear of a class room for many years. The same is true of other forms.

I find usually that this idea of lack of materials is more a matter of ignorance than anything else. It comes from a barrenness of mind which is an outgrowth of the common idea, so fixed in the mind of most people, that reading, writing and arithmetic are the main things. Fortunately that

Illustrations 216-217



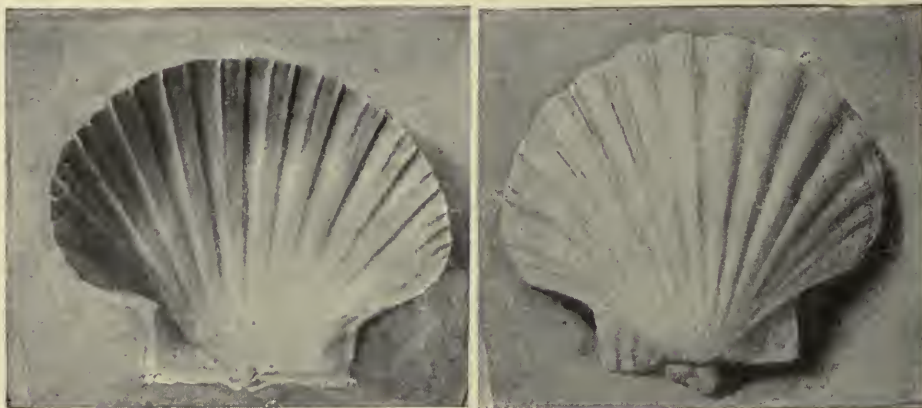
Shell Forms

Some of the most beautiful lines in design and ornament have been taken from shell forms. No study will broaden and expand the mind more quickly than to assimilate, first hand direct from the shell, complete ideas of fine lines, curves, structure, texture, color, etc.

time is passing by, and we are beginning to find school rooms filled with appropriate things. I read in a recent paper the account of a new school in a large city where the committee are actually requesting the sum of \$100,000 for plant and fixtures alone. I know by experience that, unfortunately,



## Illustrations 218-219

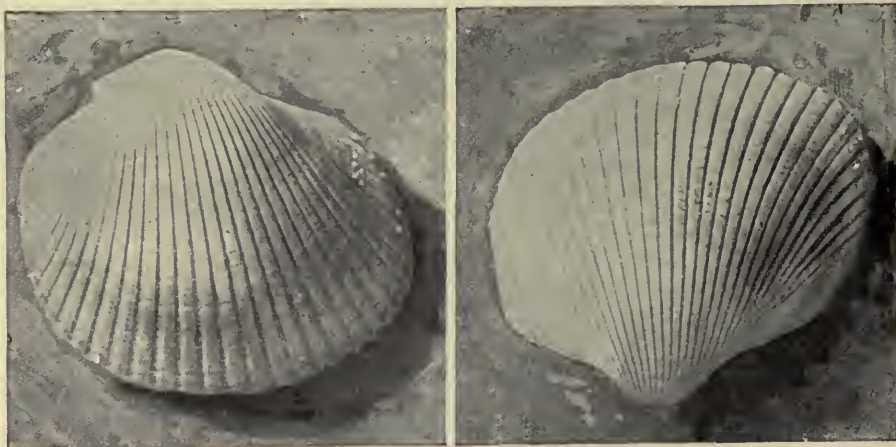


Inside and Outside of the Same Shell

a great deal of this money will be spent for elaborate furniture, cumbersome desks and closets, etc. But the beginning of the new era is upon us.

**Blackboard Work.**—Shells should be drawn on the blackboard at intervals. Allow the children to select any shell they desire and to make different freehand views of it on the blackboard. The shell can be held in

## Illustrations 220-221



Lesson From Shells

The examples of tangential curvature, radiation, transition of curves, etc., are perfect on shells. The children should be carefully instructed to study and reproduce these qualities in pencil and with color. Some of the scallop shells are much used in carved work.



the left hand while doing this, and even very small shells can be used. At first allow the drawings to be as simple as diagrams and of the easiest views, gradually attempting the more complex positions, as facility is gained. Remember that the first object of this work is to store the memory with impressions of shell. To enable the mind to vividly recall or recollect shell, these exercises should be repeated until typical shells can be drawn from memory. Lead-pencil sketches for detail should be made, and also, if possible, sketches in color.

Shells should also be modeled in clay, producing both realistic and conventional copies.

**Bird Forms.**—Little children can begin to draw bird forms. The concept or typical idea of bird is made up, to the child, of the various impressions it has received from the birds with which it has been familiar. (See illustrations of children drawing birds on pages 160 and 161. It does not matter how crude the first attempts are. It is a good plan for the children to make simple diagrams of birds' heads, like those of the pigeon, crow, hawk, parrot, paroquette, eagle, and so on; or of the common chicken, the rooster, the duck, the goose, the swan and others. Side views of the duck swimming are perhaps as simple as anything in the beginning.

Endeavor to get the children to think of the shape of birds. Simple diagrams or drawings can be made on the blackboard of very different shapes of birds, for instance, the crane, the stork, the heron, and then birds of opposite characteristics, like the owl and the eagle. A simple bird form, like the sparrow or any small bird that can be readily procured, should become automatic. The children should be made by repetition able to put this form down without trouble from memory. When this can be done readily, then the bird should be placed in different positions and the child should be encouraged to make drawings of these positions and to memorize them. Allow the children to attempt these different positions on the blackboards. Of course to render a bird flying or spreading its wings is difficult, and it requires a knowledge that you must not expect from children in the beginning. But as they become able to place the simple forms in various positions, and as they get more practice, in drawing, of the different things required in their different studies, so they will become able to make these complex forms with greater ease than one would think possible if it be attempted to render them without this previous work.

Illustration 222



Primary Work by Little Children  
Drawing bird forms, dogs, cats, etc., from memory, in different positions

Encourage the children to notice different kinds of birds, as the canaries at home, the parrots, and other birds they see when they go to the zoological gardens, or the common birds seen in the country. Encourage them to make drawings of these things, even while they are moving about. I have numbers of children who can do this readily. It is not necessary that a bird should be stuffed or that it should be dead before you can see the length of its bill or the size of its head. If a child is looking at a flamingo walking about, making its peculiar motions in the water, it can notice the strange shape of the bill, the wonderful length and beautiful curving of the neck, the remarkable length and structure of the legs, and other particulars without any trouble. It should be able also to make a drawing or tactual record of these remarkable points. It does not matter

if the bird bends its neck while the drawing is being made; it is still the same bird and neck. With very little encouragement children become able to grasp the form and reproduce it, even when the model is moving. This is a great and desirable step in drawing.

It is only the most stupid kind of people who think that the living forms must pose before them to enable them to grasp the shape. The children you see working in the pictures here given have made many of the drawings from living forms. They can also make very good drawings of the same forms in any position without the models. The chickens have been drawn while walking about, the same with the parrots.

Of course in the beginning bad drawings result. No one can make six or eight diagrams of a crane without making the last diagram better than the first, if they have a crane or a picture or model of one to refer to.

Illustration 223



Memory Drawing

These bird forms have been memorized from specimens photographed in this book. This pupil can draw any of the birds in different positions from memory.



Illustration 224



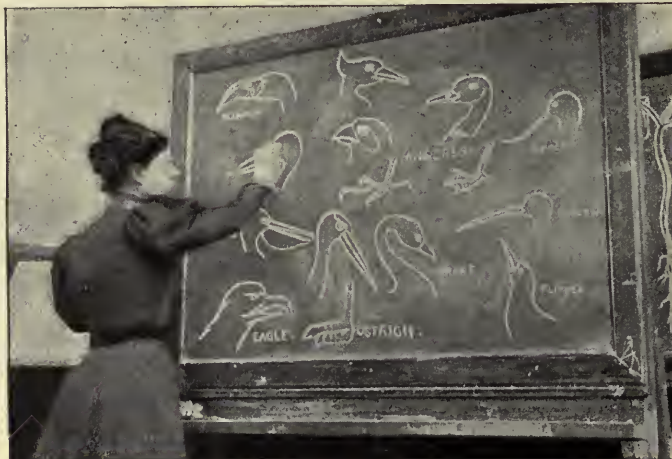
Enlarging Drawings from Sketch Book

The same forms should be drawn in many positions and memorized.

It is the constant repetition, the association of idea with movement, the constant endeavor to reproduce, that ultimately leads to achievement.

And do not expect likenesses, actual portraits of these forms, from little children. If they get any idea of the form in the beginning, they should be encouraged. When they have had sufficient practice with this

Illustration 225



Bird Studies

Variety of birds' bills, drawn from Webster's dictionary. The teacher is giving an object lesson to a class.



memory drawing, some can reproduce images with the utmost fidelity, and it is remarkable what an amount of observation they disclose and of acute perception of details that they can render. Never expect them to render forms without first assimilating impressions from the real things, or from prints, pictures or drawings of some kind. They must be constantly sent to the source, to the thing itself, to receive fresh impressions.

By degrees they will lose the desire to sit and imitate detail by detail, and this is a valuable quality we wish them to get,—the power of being able to mentally photograph the object they look at, and then to revive it later; to be able to recall it with its original vividness of form, color, light and shade,—its essential qualities. That this can be done and well done by children I am convinced from the product that we get in our schools. If it is done systematically throughout all the years of school life, I claim that we will have a product that will be much more valuable than any yet attained. As teachers, this is what we must aim for.

**Color in Birds.**—Let the children study a feather. Beautiful lessons can be given on a feather. And then, wings! Is there anything more beautiful in the world than a wing, in its wonderful structure, form, texture, color? A few wings of different kinds should be drawn repeatedly till the children can automatically reproduce the overlapping of the pin feathers and the short feathers, just as they draw the scales of a fish or any other detail. There is nothing more beautiful in the world than the appearance of some flying birds; the spread of wing, the gradation of form shown by the feathers, the regularity, strength and beauty of movement must impress the most careless. Children can be encouraged to make simple diagrams of flying birds, like the pigeon or the sea gull, and they will very readily when they see these birds watch their movements and make visual notes of their different positions when flying. The same is true of birds swimming in the water, like the duck, the goose and the swan,—the perfection of living beauty, grace, and fitness. (Illus. 232.)

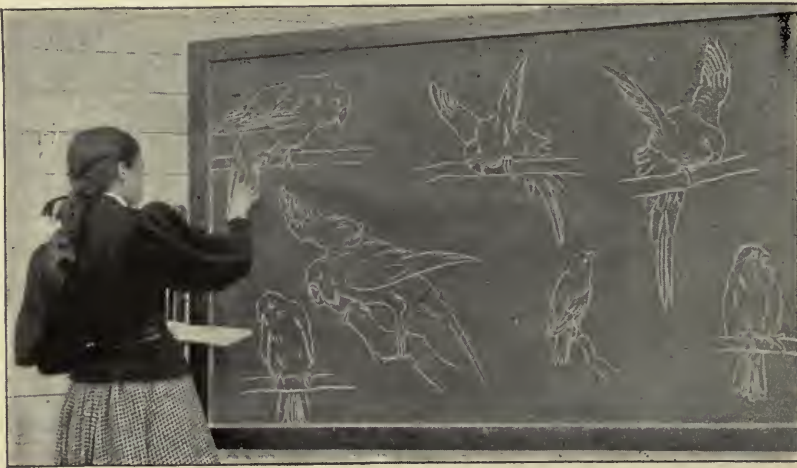
The children should be obliged continually to notice the colors of birds. I believe we can get more real knowledge of the tints, the tones and shad-

Illustration 226



ows, and the harmonies of color from a dead sparrow or a pigeon or the head of a duck than from all the books and stained papers that have ever been printed, for the purpose of teaching color. Some colors on birds are ravishing. They shine like jewels, and there is a flashing effulgency and a delicate iridescence on the neck of a pigeon that will in a measure reproduce the soft glowing radiance of the heavens, to the heart who can

Illustration 227



Enlarging and Memory Drawings

Of birds in various positions from sketch book. The original sketches were made from the real birds.

look at it with sufficient love. If there is anything in education that we ought to cherish and to nourish, it must be this; to give the children a feeling for these things, to touch their emotions if we can, to infect them with the almighty energy of the love of nature. These experiences help to develop desirable phases of character in the young, which are seldom reached by other means. Other bird forms are shown on page 179, and elsewhere in this book.

***Botanical Forms.***—Splendid lessons in drawing and elementary botany can be given. Botanical forms are especially beautiful, interesting and useful for school work. The simplest leaves and flowers, the commonest weeds and grasses, make good illustrations, and the pupils can be led on

from the simple diagrams made of these forms to the most abstract and difficult scientific work. The difficult nomenclature used in botany can be memorized without effort if the lessons in drawing are given rightly. The tactual, muscular and visual impressions seem to make the form and the name stick more readily in the memory. They can be recalled more clearly at any future time.

Take the horse-chestnut leaf, for instance (Illus. 230). This embodies the whole of the laws which are to be desired in some of our work. It has perfect grace of form, proportional distribution of areas, radiation from parent stem, tangential curvature of lines, even distribution of surface decoration, repetition, growth and a number of other minor qualities. This is also true of an assemblage of leaves,—with their equal arrangement of masses, and perfect distribution of group or groups.

Try to make the students enter into the beauty of these simple forms.

Illustration 228



A Lesson in Drawing and Elementary Botany

Use the real flower forms to draw from as often as possible, then memorize the characteristic features, as described in Chapter VII. The last flower form is a cross section of a daisy. Small drawings should also be made in pencil and color. The drill work in Manual-Training drawing in the present and preceding chapters is of wonderful value in imparting the faculty to draw from objects of all kinds.



Do not allow them to create freak units. When we have such a wonderful range in nature of leaves, flowers, shells, and so on, it seems foolish to require students to make kite units and the varieties of the kite unit, as some stupid systems do. If the child is made to produce these forms, they are simply wasting valuable time, but the tendency of a great deal of the present mode of culture is to create freaks. All the objects of nature are beautiful, created for our admiration and for our study.

For instance, take the leaves in illustration No. 230,—the pedate, lobate, crenate, palmate, cordate, dentate, binate, and other leaves. If these are drawn, instantly the technical name, the appearance symbolized by

Illustration 229



Drawing from Fruit

Fruit, flowers, foliage should be drawn and memorized. In the spring many kinds of blossoms make attractive studies. Branches of foliage alone make useful models.

the name, is registered permanently. This is a great help to the language work of the children, especially when they begin to dissect the plant forms, and the work from the many different parts begins to be complex.

The technical names can be mastered without any trouble, and some of these technical names are very formidable, even those describing the ap-



Illustration 230



Botanical Drawing

In this drawing, six stages of the dandelion have been illustrated, with various leaf forms. These diagrams are drawn from memory. Accurate drawings have previously been made with pencil from the plant.

Illustration 231



Botanical Drawing

These cuts are from Webster's Dictionary, and the children memorize the technical terms with the form by repetition.

pearance of a simple leaf. I have no trouble even with children of the grammar schools in getting them to remember these terms, if they have had sufficient practice in making the diagrams and drawings, with, of course, the auditory impression of the name associated with the drawing at the same time. Understand, I do not mean notes taken at random during a long, tedious talk about function, growth or structure of various plants or flowers, but I mean the close attention and clear perception of a single plant or few parts of the plant, until a complete mental structure or thought-fabric corresponding to the plant is erected in the mind to stay. The main thing is to actually do and act through the eye, ear, tongue, touch, muscular sense, etc., instead of merely reading about or listening to a lecture upon the subject. I have seen so many classes of teachers and normal-school graduates who have listened to thousands of facts poured out in a stream, and who have filled scores of note books with diagrams and notes, yet who have failed to fix in the mind anything about their work. The many impressions have obliterated each other and only partial ideas result.

Illustration 232



Swans

The perfection of living beauty, grace and fitness



Dolphin Forms in Conventional Design

## CHAPTER VIII

### Conventional and Symbolic Forms

---

**D**OLPHINS MAKE VERY BEAUTIFUL FORMS FOR DRAWING. It is very easy to memorize one of the simplest forms, and then, by practice, to get facility in making this form in various positions, as shown above. Do not let the dolphin be feeble-looking or weak, but let it be made with good strong curves in all of these conventional shapes. It is a good plan to begin with a form almost as simple as the scroll itself (Illus. 234), and then make it a little more complex, in different positions, suggesting the mouth, and with crockets for fins and spines.

The next stage should be to introduce still more detail in the head, putting real spines and fins in different positions, as in 235. Then make it more elaborate by getting all the characteristic features of a dolphin in good proportion and by adding scales, a good tail, form and even with wings, if desired. In making these forms for decorative purposes, it is perfectly proper to do anything one pleases in the way of modification. Units of design of all kinds can be used in combination with the form; it can turn into leaf forms, the acanthus leaf being frequently used in this combination.



The dolphin's head can be used instead of the scroll termination in almost all patterns, enriching them very much in some cases. In drawing this form in patterns see that it becomes an actual part of the pattern. Do not make it look stiff, as though it were added. It should grow out of the pattern, or the pattern should grow out of it, naturally. Dolphins, griffins and grotesques are never successful and cannot be drawn with much success unless they form part of the design. Do not use them too frequently in

Illustrations 234-235



the same pattern. It is very good practice to make the body take different positions for certain purposes, as suggested in the headpiece for this chapter.

The dolphin is one of the best of all forms for use in wood, clay, stone and metal. The fish form must be thoroughly studied to get successful dolphins. There is a squirmy appearance about a dolphin that is taken from the fish, while the scaly appearance of the body, the eye, the spines and the fins are usually fish forms, and the better the fish is known the better these forms can be reproduced. To carve these forms successfully, even after the form has become pretty familiar by drawing, it is necessary to model them in clay several times.

Grotesque fish forms of simple character can also be made, an instance of which is shown in Illus. 233. These are all suitable for designs for various purposes. Make the simplest forms first, and as they become familiar try the more elaborate ones. Any good book of ornament will



contain dolphin forms, but it is still better to see models of the real animal in material of various kinds.

*Griffins* also are conventional or idealized animal forms. To make successful griffins, pupils must understand the character of heads of dogs and lions, and the shape of their bodies. Griffins can be winged, they can have spines, they can have bodies like dolphins, without legs, or they can

Illustration 236



Idealized Animal Forms

This picture shows more clearly than No. 233 the strength and freedom with which the lines are drawn. Advance from the simpler to the more complex.

have two legs, four legs, and any kind of tail, as suggested in illustration 236. The wings can be turned into leaves or scrolls, as can any part of the body. The griffin is simply an animal form introduced as an element of variety, one which allows the introduction of beautiful curves, and which, when done properly, will improve some patterns very much. It is a good

plan in learning to draw these forms to originate them, because each one should be able to make a dolphin or a griffin with a certain amount of style.

It is important to begin with the very simple form, almost like a scroll and then give it still more detail as one advances in knowledge of its characteristic features. These shapes can be made to fill any space, and of any proportion. The necks can be twisted in and out, the wings can be rudimentary or extended as much as the student may desire. It will repay any one to notice the beautiful forms of griffins, grotesques and dolphins. These forms will always be good if the essential character of the lion or the tiger is grasped. An expression of fierceness is necessary to a good griffin. It should never look weak, like a kitten. It is a good plan to practice making it fierce and to sketch open the jaws as widely as possible.

To grasp this form practically and to become able to draw it with thoroughness, it is absolutely necessary to model and carve a good type several times. There is no better practice in drawing on the blackboard than to make, when a little facility has been acquired in making the simpler forms, the more complicated ones in the different positions,—with short wings, long wings, wings closed together, wings extended; to make them jumping, to make them erect, to make them crouching; to throw the head up, to bend it down, to make the mouth stretch open in various degrees. Some beautiful examples of griffins rampant can be found in heraldic devices of various kinds. Modeled and carved work in many materials will embody dolphins and griffins.

*The Bird Form* is conventionalized in a great many ways. It can have the body of a lion or a griffin, and the wings and body can turn into the acanthus leaf or any of the variety of units desired. It is much used on account of the beauty of the feather forms, the curves of the neck and the talons. It is used in ecclesiastical art. Next to the griffin and the lion, it is one of the commonest of heraldic devices. It is the national emblem or device of various countries.

To produce these decorative figures well real bird form must be studied. There is a fierce expression about the eye and the bill of an eagle, and an energy about the legs and claws, that is very beautiful. If these essential features be grasped and the form embodied, the resultant form must of necessity be beautiful. Some coins have the eagle in various positions

stamped on them and they can be studied to advantage. Avoid feebleness and weakness in design of this character—its beauty depends in part upon its strength and virility.

Illustration 237



Decorative Birds

These designs are copied and memorized, then other arrangements of similar forms are made, or entirely original designs are created.

It will be of advantage to study a wing and the different parts of a wing. Some of the arrangements of pin feathers and minor feathers on wings are beautiful, and the wonderful way in which they change their position when the wing is fully extended, partly closed and fully closed, repays any amount of close observation and study. It is a most perfect example of fitness and adaptability.

In drawing feathers, or in modeling or carving them, the main features only must be grasped. When we try to put in the detail of each feather the spirit is usually lost. The large groups must be put down, the striking features and marks, but the detail must be left out. Wings can be idealized and conventionalized just as the other forms are, and very great variety of changes can be given to them.

*Drawing From Objects.*—Children should continually draw from various objects that interest them. If they have had proper training in



elementary work, it will be very easy for them to sketch comparatively difficult forms with much truth. The birds, flowers, fish, shells, etc., are interesting, but it is also important that other forms not quite so entertaining should be drawn.

Great care, however, must be taken not to render the children tired and stupid by giving them too many uninteresting shapes. The cubes, prisms, cylinders, and other blocks and abstract forms that have been given too much to children in the past, actually seem to make them blockheads for the time. We must make the young love the work if we wish true art, and the greatest art of the teacher is to bring in the uninteresting forms without making the children tire of them. Blocks and type forms continually administered to the children by stupid teachers, who consider that through them they will get a love of nature, are responsible for much of the lack of interest and disgust of children for art work. The true art forms are natural forms, and God has planted a certain beauty and fascination in some of the simplest forms on purpose to inspire love. The truest inspiration comes from the common natural forms, and to get the children to love nature, then, is one of the chief works of the elementary teacher.

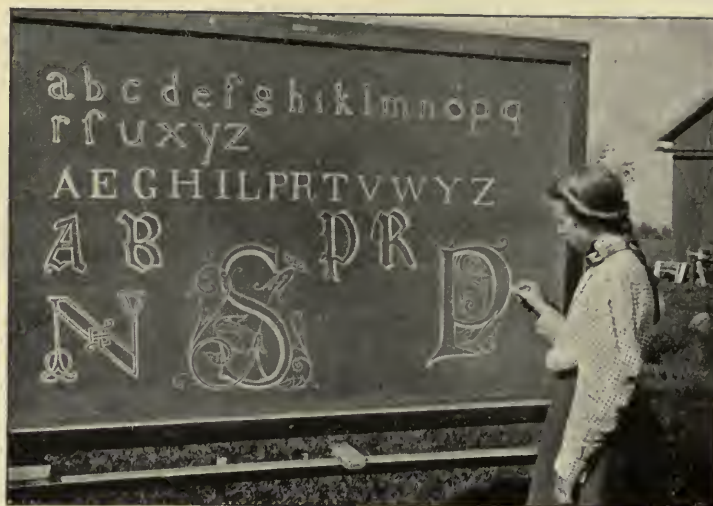
Children will take pleasure in drawing boxes, books, furniture, boats, tools, etc., but great care must be taken not to make them dislike the work.

It is good practice for pupils to draw different kinds of printed letters from type and from memory. Very few people know the actual shape of common printed letters in books and newspapers. It is very good discipline in free-hand work to space out and draw block letters on paper and on the blackboard, being careful to make the actual form of the type without measuring and without ruling lines. Ornamental letters can also be copied, and then original designs attempted, as illustrated in Nos. 238-241.

In these suggestions for manual-training drawing, it is not possible to give details about light and shade, color-work, perspective, etc. Unless the teacher really understands these principles, formal lessons should not be attempted. No one should attempt to teach these subjects unless qualified to do the work.

Children should never receive formal lessons or lectures in perspective, except by continually drawing forms of different character, and then having their attention drawn to self-evident facts. Thus the abstract part of the work gradually dawns upon them in a natural way. Nothing is more

Illustration 238



Exercises in Lettering and Design

Some of these letters are copied and memorized. Various styles of type should be made, without the use of ruling and measuring. It is quite difficult to draw simply formed letters straight across the board equal in size and spaced correctly.

Illustrations 239-241

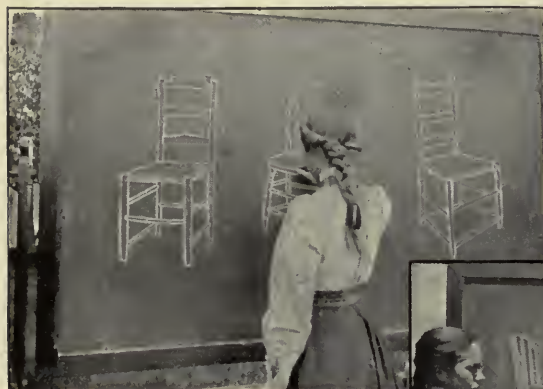


Colored Designs for Initial Letter

Made by pupils of manual training classes, Young Women's Christian Association, New York. It is impossible to reproduce in black and white the beauty and charm of these illuminated designs in several colors.

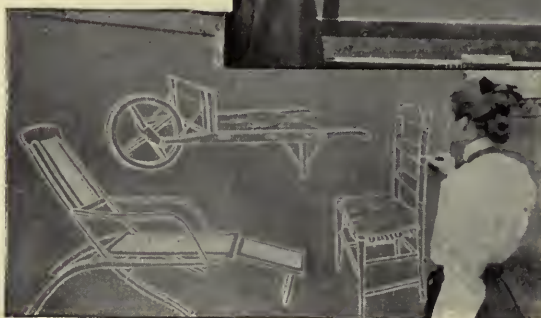
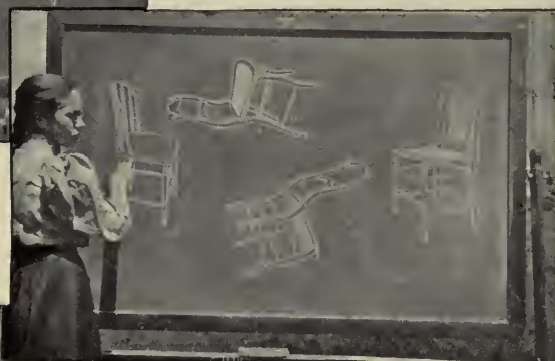
injurious than the lectures on perspective given to some pupils about "angles of vision," "vanishing lines," "picture plans," etc., before they are ready for them. They tend to obscure the subject so much that I have known many

Illustration 242



These children are memorizing chair forms. The chair is placed near by and drawn in various positions many times, the lines being entirely freehand and not erased until finished. The character of the lines is better shown in the larger engraving on page 177. The perspective is not correct every time, but each time the form is drawn a more vivid memory of the correct form is produced and by degrees the various parts are drawn into their relative positions without trouble. To make the vari-

ous parts or the chair move into their right places on the flat surface is the problem. Merely drawing it once with labored detail will not enable the child to know the complex form. It must memorize the form, by feeling through the eye, the touch, and the muscular senses, the various positions in relation to the eye. Drawing from objects of this character has its proper place, for it obliges the pupil to express through the hand the perception and memory of artificial forms as well as natural forms.



But this practice is not allowed at the expense of facility and sweeping free curves and touches. To make the hand spin true spirals and accurate curves of all dimensions, at will, implies a dexterity that is not only indispensable, but that is useful in every vocation.

Drawing from Objects in Various Positions

students to be only confused by the seeming complexity of a comparatively easy subject.

To understand correct perspective is abstract work. It requires a certain amount of reasoning, that must only be done *after* a sufficient number of visual and tactual impressions have been made; then it becomes

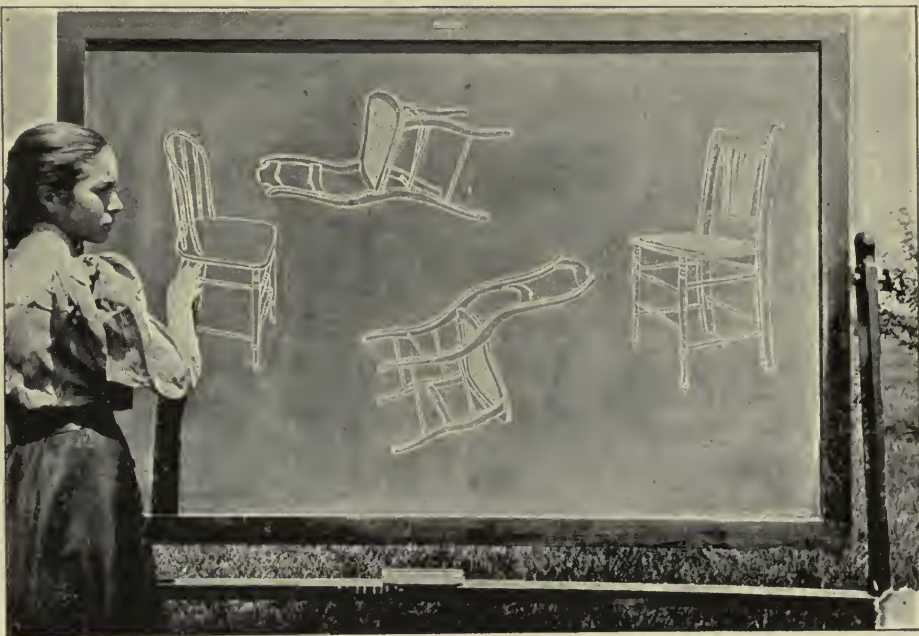


clear and plain to the dullest pupil. Perspective is very often taught as syntax used to be taught in language work—the hardest part first, the rules before the words.

Form is first considered, and then comes light and shade in color. I lay great stress upon the pupils learning form by modeling, and learning light and shade also by modeling, in Book Three. If possible, pupils should be allowed to use light and shade and color in drawing from the birds, fishes, shells, leaves, etc., as well as in designing.

The simplest forms about the house are good subjects for drawing. To be able to draw chairs free-hand, as in some of the pictures herewith, is good

Illustration 243



Freehand Drawing of Chairs in Various Positions

This larger illustration shows the strength and positions of the lines more clearly than the smaller pictures in No. 242.

practice. Of course, in drawing them on the blackboard only an outline can be rendered, but to make that outline free-hand, without erasing, and to place the chairs in different positions, is no easy task. If, however, the pupils

are encouraged to repeat their poor drawings until they actually get good chairs, and then become able to draw them from memory, these comparatively complex forms, and others, can be drawn with considerable ease. The perspective is not absolutely correct in these drawings, but to make them freely, especially when foreshortened, and when the chair is quite near, shows skill and power, particularly when the lines are drawn from the first intention and are not changed.

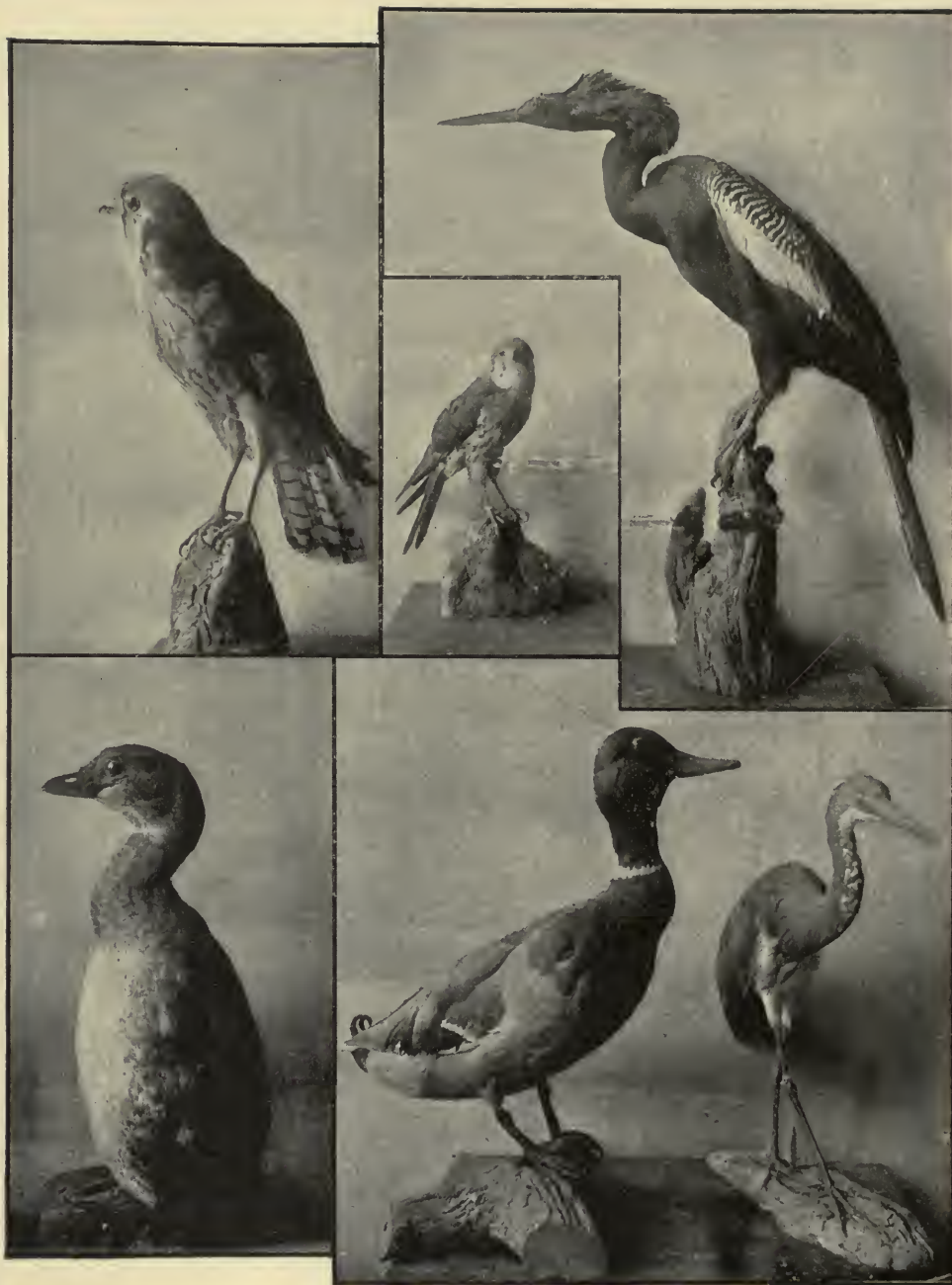
Animal forms should also be drawn freely, as, in Plate Eleven, the pupil trying to get the movements without detail, trying to get the essential features with the fewest possible lines.

**Symbolism.**—Some of the most wonderful art forms in the world are symbolic. It is important that we should understand symbolism. Too many people see forms in art, decorations of all kinds, without understanding their import. I do not think one person in a thousand begins to appreciate why some of the greatest and simplest forms are so interesting and beautiful. Most people look at ornament, and at conventionalized and symbolic work, as the savage looks at print,—regarding them as simply marks, forms, colors, that convey no idea. The mind does not grasp any of the thought conveyed. It is important that common people should be able to comprehend the abstract idea of these things through observation of concrete forms of various kinds.

Symbolism is a word of Greek origin, and signifies a visible form; implying something that is in itself incapable of representation. It embodies a thought that is the sign or symbol of something higher than merely meets the eye. It has been used in all times, and some of the most wonderful as well as some of the most beautiful art work and ornament of all periods have been symbolic. Before print was in use, or had come into common use, symbols were frequently employed as a means of impressing on the multitudes truths that were incapable of being represented by words. A sign lifted up meant the same thing to everybody; a statement in words could hardly be as generally understood. Symbolism has been used, perhaps, most widely in religion.

Ecclesiastical work of all periods embodies some very beautiful conceptions. These are symbolized in the simplest possible forms, and gradually come to mean the same thing to different people. The circle, meaning eternity, without beginning and without end; three circles interlaced,

PLATE TWELVE



Bird Forms

These real birds, with many others, are used as models for the children to work from. They are drawn in pencil, painted in water color and modeled in clay.



meaning the trinity in unity, or the three persons of the Godhead. The trefoil has the same meaning.

The cross has been employed in myriad forms all over the world, from two sticks crossed to the greatest concepts in art that it is possible for the mind to bring forth. It has gradually become the keynote of Christianity, which it pre-eminently symbolizes. At one time the symbol of suffering and degradation, and forever after the symbol of achievement and victory, it to-day forms the ground plan of the noblest buildings, and in gold is a fitting emblem to crown their pinnacles. Bejeweled and begemmed, and stamped on the books of prayer carried around in hands gloved in costly fabrics, the cross has too often lost its meaning.

The nimbus or halo is a symbol. Among the early Christians many forms of this were used to symbolize their rites. The Egyptians used it almost entirely. Their hieroglyphics are symbols, written pictures, some of them embodying very fascinating meanings that should be understood. Many living forms have been used as symbols,—the serpent, the dove, the eagle and a great many others. It is wonderful to what an extent ecclesiastical art has gone in the representation of these forms. Take, for instance, the passion flower, which symbolizes the passion of Christ. To every part of this strange and beautiful flower has been attached some symbolic meaning. It can be seen used in every conceivable form in wood, clay and stone, in churches; even windows, and fabrics of various kinds are embellished with it.

**Plaster Models.**—The series of vegetable fruit forms and forms illustrated herewith (No. 244) suggest an excellent primary course for young children. They can be graded according to the desire or inclination of the teacher from the simple forms to the more complex. Each one of these vegetable or fruit forms has been cast from nature, endeavor having been made in procuring the original forms to get those most typical in shape.

Children should not draw from casts of fruit and vegetables unless it is impracticable to provide the real forms. As often as possible, real apples, pears, potatoes, and other fruits and vegetables should be furnished for the children to study. The forms are also to be modeled in clay. Only by doing this repeatedly can organic memories of the forms be made that will

Illustration 244



Models of Fruit Forms

be permanent and valuable. These forms, heads and other models are also more attractive to the children than geometric forms and blocks, and inspire them with more desire to work and more admiration for nature. It is desirable to have as many good casts of art and nature forms as possible. All

Illustration 245



Animal Forms

These plaster models are nearly life size, and with a number of others are used for drawing, modeling and carving.

of the models pictured in the various parts of this book are used in my schools. Many of the casts are original.

The casts of animals' heads have been made especially for school pur-

poses. One series is quite small in size, the other series is of life size. Some are quite difficult and some are easy. It is best, however, to allow the children to make their own selection. These forms are carefully modeled, and in some cases have been made by skillful artists of acknowledged reputation. As well as being useful for class purposes, they are especially appropriate for decoration of the class room. They should never be shut up in closets, but exposed to view all the time. It is a good plan to change their positions occasionally, to hang them in different places in the room, or to turn them around to show different views.

In some of the classes, casting in plaster of various forms is done. It is good practice, and requires skill to make a fine cast from nature. The work is very simple and can be done by grammar grade children who have had any manual training work. All teachers should be able to make plaster casts of leaves, fruits, fish, birds, animals, etc. Except the original, nothing is more instructive than a fine cast of some natural form. The finest detail can be reproduced with the utmost fidelity. The time occupied in making the casts is almost the only expense, the material costing very little. It is well to occasionally encourage the pupils by selecting some of their most perfect modeling to be multiplied by casting in plaster. Casts of so many things can be made good use of in every day life, the operation is so simple, so quickly learned and so educational in value, that it should not be overlooked as a minor feature in the course in modeling.

The Barye casts of animal forms (see page 213), of which examples will be found in many of our pictures, are especially useful in the class room. They are examples of the work of the greatest modeler of animals of the modern period of French art, and are especially appropriate to the school room for their fidelity to nature and for a certain amount of breadth of style in modeling which makes it easy for the children to reproduce them. In some cases, the partly finished forms afford good illustrations of how they should be blocked out. The young never tire of these noble and interesting shapes.

***Architectural Models.***—These plaster models, represented in the illustrations on page 184, will be found very useful for a variety of purposes in the schools. I wish it were possible for a series of them to be placed in every school in the country. They represent five great styles of architecture,—the Doric, the Ionic, the Corinthian, the Roman and the Composite. They are



in perfect proportion with the great originals, and should be studied carefully till the pupils know thoroughly the essential features of each style, their differences and their resemblances.

Illustration 246

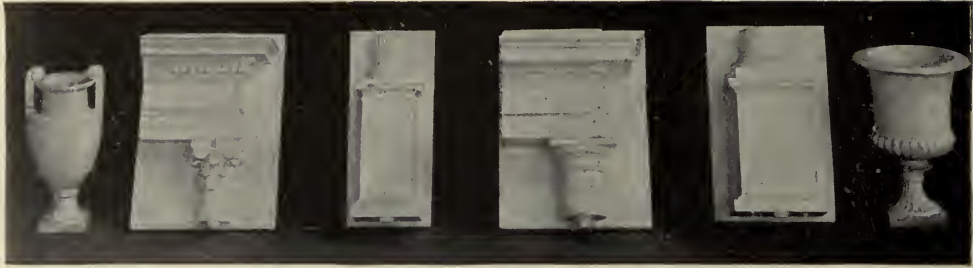


Architectural Forms

Drawing from memory various capitals. These should be drawn entirely freehand.

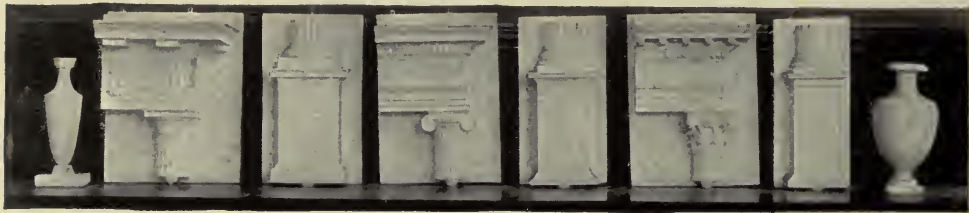
It is good practice to sketch these forms freehand on paper and to delineate them large on the blackboards; to make accurate measurements, and to memorize frequently as many things as possible from them. This knowledge is of great service to all pupils in their after life, whether they become architects, technical workers, artists or tradesmen. It will be found that one can enjoy the appearance of buildings ever so much more, and that one's taste is influenced by properly embodying these forms. The vase forms are classic examples of the best periods, and should also be studied carefully from the models. It is quite surprising, even to experienced edu-

Illustration 247



cators, to witness the admirable effect on pupils in the grammar grades of a little experience in drawing and modeling typical forms of the great styles in architecture. If these units of style are modeled as well as drawn, the pupil acquires a far more intimate acquaintance with their proportions and peculiarities.

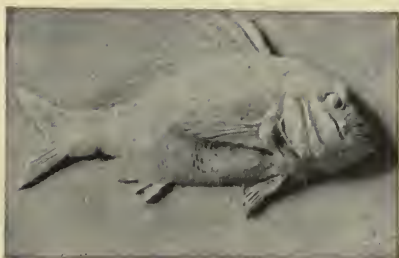
Illustration 248



Plaster Casts of Architectural Styles

# BOOK THREE

## Modeling



Clay models of real fish made by  
grammar grade pupils



"Perception and memory should be indissolubly associated. Two errors—to expect a child to remember what it has never perceived, and to allow it to perceive without any systematic representation of the object in memory."  
[Jacobi.

"Good thoughts are no better than good dreams unless they be executed."—[Emerson.

"Without action, thought can never ripen into truth."—[Emerson.



Wood Carving by School Boy





### Modeling Animal Forms

This pupil is modeling one of the Barre tigers. These animal forms are especially attractive to children. Being very broadly modeled, they are able to reproduce some of the animals with great fidelity. Animal heads are also good for children to model.

(186)

Illustration 249



Plaster Model  
For drawing, modeling and carving.

## CHAPTER I

Introduction,  
Plant, Etc.\*

---

**T**HERE IS ONLY ONE WAY TO KNOW FORM—that is by making it, not simply drawing it. If we are to know things as they actually are, and at the same time to cultivate an energetic disposition to perform deeds, then modeling, clay modeling, must become a part of educational work. The greatest artists have been the men who have been able to model, like Michael Angelo, Donatello, Cellini, Leonardo da Vinci, Leighton, Gerome and others. All sculptors have to know form, because they have to make it. There are many artists who know form but slightly, and that is the reason some of them fail in their work.

In many art schools modeling is now advocated as a means of teaching form, even for painters, engravers and illustrators, for one may draw the shape of an object many times, and still not be familiar with its appearance all around. This is not the case in modeling, for in this you have to make it all around and touch it all over. A vivid impression is gained through

---

\* All the modeled work in the illustrations, and the tiles inserted in the text, have been modeled by the children of the various grades.

the sense of touch and the muscular sense. I have continually spoken of drawing as a mode of thought-expression. In like manner modeling in clay is a mode of expression, only a more thorough mode than any other.

Modeling compels the use of both hands continually. The more we use our hands the more control we have over those organs, and the more vital we make the connection between the hands and the brain. In modeling we use several channels of impression, the sight, the touch, and the muscular sense. All sculptors get a wonderful sense of form through feeling or touch; the most beautiful curves and the most delicate portions of some statues being made by the fingers alone. All bronze and marble statues are first modeled in clay, and then cut in marble or cast in bronze. The actual thought of the artist, the real manipulative work, is always impressed on this plastic medium, that responds to the slightest touch. It is this wonderful "feeling" that enables the sculptor mentally to grasp almost imperceptible variations and gradations of form that are invisible to the ordinary vision. This seeing-power, as it may be called, is partly the result of the tactual impressions on the mind. Touch has been considered by some to be the master sense, one of the first developed, and few realize its importance as a means of training the mind and the judgment. A great part of the knowledge attributed to the sense of sight is received through the touch alone.

In these chapters on modeling I have purposely refrained from grading the work too closely. The elementary forms suggested for little children are just as good for adult teachers or others, if they have never handled clay. The exercises on manipulation of course cannot be attempted by very young pupils. The following lessons may be taken in any order desired, and are chiefly intended to indicate the variety of things that can be made and one way of making them. The lessons are the result of experience with large numbers, and the forms given are some of the best for class purposes.

*The Plant Required* for modeling is inexpensive. A board 12x14 and about one inch thick, a palette knife to cut and smooth the clay, one or two modeling tools for each pupil, and one or two cups for water for a class are all that is required. Clay can be purchased at any pottery or brick-yard. If it is not convenient to get it at these places, it can be purchased through any art-material store. It should not cost more than a cent and a half a pound, although some dealers charge from three to five cents a pound.





### 180 Small Forms Modeled in Clay, Suitable for Young Children

Many of the forms were made by the pupils without suggestion. The flat tiles are made, and various simple patterns are drawn and stamped upon them. The forms are not arranged in any special order, but the simplest are the balls and arrangements, next the tiles and rolls made into arrangements, next the geometric and fruit forms. Sixteen life forms are in the series, and all the forms have been made many times by very young pupils. The forms are taken from a large number made by my private pupils, and are suggestive to teachers of modeling. In many schools the geometric forms are modeled too frequently, with perhaps a potato or an apple by way of variety. Children will never tire of the work if they have a chance to vary forms.

(189)

It can be purchased in quantity at any pottery for about \$20 a ton. This clay, used in making pottery, is very fine, clean, sifted and screened, and is the kind used by sculptors. Clay in some localities is gray, in others red or yellow or blue. The gray clay is the best, but good work can be done with the red, blue or yellow. If possible, however, procure the ordinary gray clay.

Good clay is one of the cleanest mediums of which we have any knowledge. It is antiseptic. If disease germs are placed in the clay and it is allowed to remain in the sunlight to dry, the germs become devitalized.\* It brushes from the clothing with a very few touches, and if the pupils are not allowed to scatter it on the floor, when the modeling boards are put away no one need know that clay has been used. The children should be allowed to wash their hands after using it. Like flour in mixing dough, it has a tendency to make the hands feel a little dry in the beginning. This soon passes away.

Many teachers object to the use of clay in schools because they say "it makes a mess." Only in the hands of an ignorant teacher can it do so. No one should attempt to teach clay work who is unable to model. The clay must be in good condition every time it is given to the children. Only an expert, one accustomed to model, can tell when the clay is in good condition. It must not be too hard, it must not be too soft, it must not be rotten, it must be just right. This can be "felt" only by one who himself models. In this series of lessons I propose to illustrate, by means of a few exercises, the manipulation and care of clay, the use of tools and appliances, and then the making of a series of easy, simple elementary forms suited for the very youngest children in primary schools, the exercises increasing in difficulty up to the ordinary work of the grammar grades.

Teachers must not give these series of forms to the children one after

---

\*The following is an extract from the report of the committee of hygiene of the Philadelphia board of public education as to the value of clay modeling, made in 1895:

"Your committee would urge as a matter pertaining to the health of the children attending our public schools, the most extended introduction possible of the present system of clay modeling, believing that such manual training is in every respect valuable and likely to be followed by the best results to mind and body. As the Director of the Public School of Industrial Art has said, 'No medium better than clay will ever be devised to fulfill the plastic requirements of educational thought-expression, as is witnessed by its universal use in the arts and industries of all nations since the beginning of history.'

"(Signed) Alexander H. McAdam, M. D., Chairman.

"(Signed) Thomas G. Morton, M. D.

"(Signed) William K. Mattern, M. D."

the other in quick succession. Many of the shapes need to be made a number of times, and others of like nature should be given. The series are taken from a variety of forms used in my classes, and with some classes of normal pupils the entire number can be made in a few weeks. Teachers must not cease to remember that the children have several years to become

Illustration 250



Geometric Forms and Bird Forms

Beginnings at Modeling

This picture at the right represents the first attempts of a beginner ten years of age and made at one sitting. First the large rosette, then the starfish, then the rosette with loops and then the small cantaloupe. The hands can be seen making the loop. The clay has been rolled out to about the thickness of a lead pencil and then is bent into position as desired. These pictures illustrate the simplicity of the work and the little plant that is required. Almost any object in the garden or the yard can be modeled.

proficient in this work, and that it is unreasonable to expect fine results at the first attempt. This is a constant failing with some teachers; they expect too much from little fingers.

*A Good Box for the Clay.*—In constructing clay boxes, see that they are made without any metal or slate lining. There is no substance better than wood or clay. In some schools I have seen zinc-lined boxes and slate, used through ignorance of this fact. Clay will not stick to a wooden surface, it sticks to metal or porcelain-lined boxes like wax.



Any carpenter can make suitable boxes. Of course the form can be modified to suit any sized space in the class room.

I have found it useful to use a case that runs up like a book-case, with shelves that are removable. It should be possible to put the shelves close together or far apart, as desired, according to the size of the work. If the work is on flat tiles, they can be put within two inches of each other; if it forms a large mass, several shelves can be taken out and the work put in without trouble. Doors can be put to the case to keep the work secure. Its lower part may open with lids. This is for the mass of clay, which should be easy of access on account of its weight. A spade can be used to keep it in good condition. The box may be made large or small, according to the size of the class or the number of pupils. A box 5x6 feet and 3 feet deep for the clay part will serve for a class of 200. The clay can be kept moist by means of pieces of flannel or blanket spread over it. •

Illustration 251



Portion of the Modeling Room, Public School of Industrial Art, Philadelphia

The room accommodates fifty pupils, five at each table. Eight hundred grammar grade pupils and various teachers' classes rotate into this room each term.



Making a Ball of Clay

## CHAPTER II

### Elementary Courses in Modeling

**M**ANIPULATION OF CLAY.—Take a piece of clay in the hand. I want you to learn something about its manipulation. Roll it out between the palms of the hands until it is as thick as the finger and about four inches long. Notice when you hold it by one end that it is limp, and will not stand erect. Now observe that I pinch the clay together and “wedge” it, making it a little firmer in consistency. “Wedging” is a potter’s term for soldifying the clay in this way. When I hold it up you perceive that it will support quite a weight, that it is strong. In every piece of work that we make we should endeavor to keep the clay wedged. Now I will take the same piece of clay and roll it out again two or three times on the board or between my hands. I rub it out and then roll it out again. You will now see that the clay is no longer plastic, but rigid, and that if I bend it, it breaks. This clay is now “rotten,” unfit for use. It has ceased to be elastic or pliable. Do not let children use it when it is of a consistency like this. “Rotten” is the technical name given to clay that crumbles like bread, instead of being tempered and pliable, or plastic. It can be improved very quickly by moistening and kneading over again, and it is then what is technically called “tempered” clay.

*The Spiral.*—Take a piece of clay about the size of the last joint of the thumb. Roll it out between the palms till it is about as thin as a slate pencil, allowing it to be pointed at one end. Then try to make a spiral (Illus.

Illustration 253



The Spiral

The form shown in this picture and the next is an exercise to test the texture and temper of clay. If the form can be made with a few turns of the fingers, the clay is just in the right state for manipulation.

253). You cannot do this at first, but with a little practice you will be able to do it well. I have had pupils try to make this form for weeks before they succeeded. Others can make it in a few minutes. The more you practice, the more skill you will get. It is good exercise in enabling you to determine the texture and the temper of the clay. When with a single touch and two or three turns you can make this form so that it will stand erect, and remain without falling, it shows that you can manipulate the clay when it is just at the right temper and texture. If it is a little too hard it breaks in a most



aggravating fashion. If it is a little too soft it does not stand up. There is a happy medium, and the sense of touch must become educated until it can feel the proper quality and produce it without any trouble. If you find that the clay breaks, put it to one side and try another piece. Do not use the same piece twice. When you can make a good spiral, you understand the texture of the clay.

**Leaf Forms.**—Take a piece of clay about as large as the last joint of the thumb, and roll it out in the palm of the hand until it is spear-shaped or resembles a spear head. Now take the form between the fingers and thumbs, as illustrated in 254, and beginning at the tip, with both hands make

Illustration 254



Leaf Forms

Exercise for manipulation of clay.

a leaf form. This is a little difficult at first, but with practice each pupil can make a midrib, show each of the veins and the serrations on the edge of the leaf, leaving it thick in the center and thin on the edge. At first there

is a tendency to break and crumble the edge, but when it has been attempted a few times the fingers will respond and a very good leaf will be the result. This is a good exercise in manipulation. It compels the use of both hands, and the complex form is the product.

**Circular Forms.**—Take a piece of clay about as large as the thumb and roll it out between the palms until it makes a good, slender roll about

Illustration 255



Moulding a Circular Form

four or five inches long. Now bend it and make both ends meet till it forms a ring. Then by the use of the fingers alone manipulate the clay so that the joint will not show and so that the ring is true and even all around. This is another good exercise, and one that requires skillful handling. It is still more difficult to make another ring interlacing with this one.

**Hints to the Teacher.**—When

the children are making these forms do

not allow them to break the clay in pieces; let them keep it in a lump except the portion they are using. Allow no crumbs to fall about the board, the desk or the floor. All the pieces must be put back in the main lump. If they are rotten, they can be placed at the left by themselves. From the very beginning, resist the tendency of the beginner to “make a dirt.” In a few lessons it will be found that pupils can model elaborate and complex forms without dropping or scattering the clay at all. It is simply a habit of neatness that must be taught, and if insisted upon from the beginning there need be no trouble with the “propensity to make dirt” that is wrongly attributed to clay-work.

When the children begin to make good forms do not allow their work to be destroyed. Place all pieces made on a shelf to dry. Then if they are not kept permanently, they can be sorted out, the good ones given to the pupil to take home and the bad ones mixed with the main mass in the clay-box. The same mass of clay can be used for years in this way, and continue perfectly healthful and free from any odor. Never allow the clay to remain for long periods in a damp state unused. If it is not to be used for a few months, permit it to dry. It can readily be moistened again when

required. The damp from the clay yields a musty and moldy odor which is not pleasant. If the clay is constantly used, it will keep fresh and sweet indefinitely. Covering with a moist, clean cloth will prevent drying.

Do not attempt to keep the clay in a crock or a tin vessel. A wooden box is far better. I have clay boxes in some of my schools that have been in use for fifteen years, and except that the bottoms are a little decayed, they are as good as new.

Tiles and other unfinished work should be kept on wooden shelves in the clay-box or closet. If possible in the class room devoted to modeling, shelves or ledges should be put around the room, on which finished work can be placed. In this way in a very short time the rooms

Illustration 256



First Exercises, Making Balls, Rosettes, etc.

can be decorated with creditable work produced by the pupils. This is inspiring to all and makes the place look like an art workshop.

***Elementary Forms.***—The following are suggestive of the simplest forms that can be made from clay without the use of tools, for the most elementary classes. Make some balls, by rolling the clay in the hand, about



the size of a large marble. Groups of these can be made. Make groups of three, groups of four, groups of five. Make a pyramid, make a star, and so on. Children of six years of age and upwards take pleasure in making these forms.

Illustration 257



First Exercises in Modeling

Other forms can be made by taking a piece of clay and rolling it out about as thick as a lead pencil and about four or five inches long. Make a little loop. This can be combined with others, making the following forms. (Illus. 257.) Little rosettes can be made by adding a center. Do not let the children make crumbs or pieces. Instruct them continually to keep their clay together and see that it is in perfect condition. It must be quite soft for very little fingers, and still not soft enough to stick. Make no attempt to do anything with the clay when it is sticky. Disgust is sure to follow if it is handled in that state.

Many simple rosette forms can be made. Make a form about the size of a small marble and then press it till it is nearly flat. Make a little disk or center. Combinations of these can be made. Make the

same form a little pointed at one end. A large series of rosettes can be made with the addition of a little ball or boss for a center. Bend the leaves up, make them cup-shape. Make some with points. With some thought an endless variety of these forms can be devised which will give a great deal of pleasure to the child and variety to the lesson. Be careful not to let the children tire of any of the forms. A teacher of course can make one of these forms in a half-minute, but for very young children two or three of the forms are quite sufficient for one lesson.

A number of natural forms can be made. Roll out a piece of clay into a ball, about the size of a marble. Press it till it is nearly flat, make a little stem by rolling out another piece, and we have a very good imitation of a mushroom. Bend the top over the stem a little and stick it on the board in a standing position. Make several sizes, forming a group. Easy fruit forms can be made by rolling out pieces till they form a ball about the size of a marble, then putting long stems to them, making bunches of two and three like cherries. Plums can be made with the small stems.

**Animal Forms.**—An interesting series can be made from various animal forms. Of course these must be reproduced from memory. It is wonderful how quickly the children grasp the idea of form after a few lessons in making these elementary shapes and how soon they get an amount of detail. But do not expect them at the first few lessons to master detail, since they begin to apprehend this only after they have taken notice of things, through the desire to make them in clay. Do not mind how poor the forms are the first few days.

Let us begin with a chicken. Take a piece of clay about the size of a small hen's egg. This will form the body. Now take another piece of clay and roll it in the palms till it is about the size of a small marble. Place this on the large piece for the head. Next add a little piece of clay for the bill, two dots or two little balls for eyes, and a few marks on the side for wings. If desired, a very short tail can be pinched out at the end. This can be made with a few touches to look like a very small chicken.

Next we can attempt a little duck form. This is more complex than the chicken, and can be made about the same size. Make the neck longer and give it a nice curve, make the bill a little longer and thicker. The tail can be made longer, and the wings marked a little more carefully.

A somewhat similar form can be made to represent the swan. It has

a body of the same shape as the duck, rather a little larger, with a long curving neck, which needs to be made separately and fastened on the body. See that there is a double curve in the neck and that it bends back over the body. Give it a nice swan's neck curve. Two wings can be made by

Illustration 258



Elementary Forms in Clay

All of these forms are suitable for very young children, and are first attempts made by beginners.

flattening out some clay, and they can be pressed onto the sides of the body so that they stand out. The result looks much more elaborate, but it is quite as simple to make as the chicken or the duck.

Understand the object of these lessons. It does not matter how grotesque these forms are at the start. The early art work of all races of people is grotesque and their products are often examples of how children should or do draw in the beginning. Very many adults, as well as children, cannot recall the shape of a duck in the beginning, but no one can endeavor to make it from memory without memorizing the next time they see a duck, a swan or a chicken, some part that they had never noticed before.



A specially valuable part of the lesson is the fact that it compels one to memorize form. If I am modeling a frog from memory, and do not know the number of toes, I may make three, four or five, but the next time I see a real frog I will satisfy myself on that point and fix that knowledge so firmly in my mind that I am not likely to forget it.

Usually I do not tell my children details of this kind. I prefer that they should learn the truth by investigation. Some people do not know how many toes a dog has, or a chicken, or a canary. If they are compelled to draw or model the form from memory, they discover their ignorance, and by observation of the real form they learn to grasp the detail. So it is with little children. At first the forms will be very crude, but when they begin to make things that they have investigated, it is wonderful what an amount of detail they will embody. Remember, these are simply generalized forms. Imagination is the result of a series of impressions. It is only when we have received a sufficient number of impressions through the different sense channels that we begin to be able to represent the essential facts of form. This work I sometimes call compulsory memory work.

Children should be encouraged to make clay figures of any kind they desire, clay horses or sheep or men and women, like the Mexican toys which imitate these figures. They should be allowed to give expression to their feelings and imagination with the pencil in making horses, buffalo, Indians, etc., ships, war vessels, etc. They will often be found to draw them with the same character and simplicity that the Indians do. They grasp essentials and ignore details—the first thing desired in good work.

***Other Animal Forms.***—A starfish is a good form to model. Make the five tapering members first, about the same size, by rolling out to a point, and then join them in the center. Bend the form till it assumes a natural position and make the detail with the tool. Make several sizes of this form. Do not make them so large that they cannot be modeled with the fingers.

A snake about six or seven inches long is very good practice. Roll it out first in the hands and then on the board. Let it taper to a fine point, make the head a little thick, the neck a little thin, flatten the head, make the features, mouth and eyes with the tool, and then bend in a natural position. A good plan is to coil it with the head standing erect as though it

were going to strike. Another good position is to curve it, as though it were moving along the ground. A snake makes a series of beautiful curves in moving, and very nice forms can be made by modeling. Make

Illustration 259



Modeling the Snake

two or three. In the beginning, of course, only the most elementary kind of forms can be made to suggest a snake, but as the lessons progress with practice the body can be thickened a little in the middle, tapering to the tail, scales can be modeled, a forked tongue can be placed in the mouth, and so on.

Children are fascinated by these small living forms, and after a few attempts grasp many unnoticed details.

The fish form is one of the best of all shapes to make. Roll out a piece of clay about the size of an egg till it is a little pointed at each end, flatten slightly between the two hands, then add the pointed tail, making it quite sharp and thin on the edge. (Illus. 261). Let the body be thick in the middle and taper to the tail. Make the two dorsal fins thick near the body and tapering to a thin edge. Do the same with the pectoral fin on the side, and with the anal fin underneath. The gills can be marked with the tool and the eye can be pressed in with its point, or a little ball can be made to represent the eye, stuck on and then modeled. The mouth can also be made with the tool.

There is an endless variety of beautiful fish forms. In making this elementary fish form, however, a very simple shape can be selected, a generalized fish, or a typical fish form if you wish. A very realistic effect can be made by putting the rays and spines on the fins and tail with the tool. The scales can also be marked, and if the fish is curved a little it will look quite realistic. Numerous pictures of modeled fish occur in this work.

A small frog can be made. Take a small piece of clay, roughly shape it with the fingers about the size of the body of a medium-sized frog. The mouth can be made with the tool, two little balls can be stuck on for eyes,

the rough places on the back can be modeled with the tool, then the two hind legs can be made. Make the legs bent in the position of a frog sitting down. Then make the two little fore-feet with smaller pieces of clay, adding the toes last.

Next make a small turtle. Do not mind if some of the children have not even seen a turtle or cannot recall the number of feet it has. Make the body about the size of an egg, flatten, cut the division between the two shells with the tool, make the cavities for the four legs, a cavity for the head and another for the tail. Make a pointed tail, make a head something like a snake's head, partly flattened, and then the four flippers. Of course the teacher should be able to make each one of these forms quickly as a suggestion to the class, giving some idea of the size, and as much detail as possible. The pupils, however, are not to copy this model. They can look at it and recall the mental image, as far as they have gained one, of the turtle or tortoise.

A lizard makes a good form to model. Roll out the body just as we

Illustration 260



Modeling Various Natural Objects

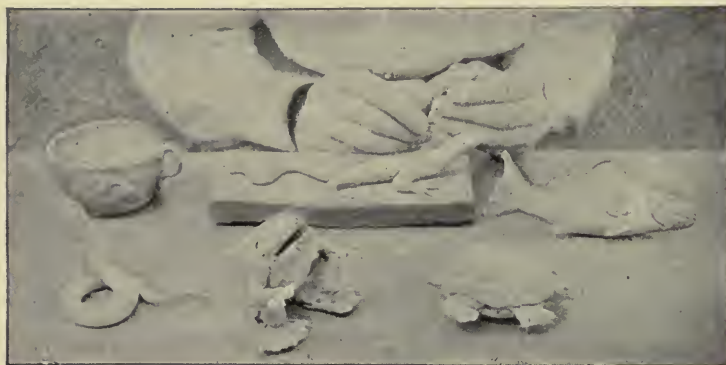
form the body of a snake, make the tail taper to a point, make the neck a little thin, flatten the head, form the mouth, eyes, etc., with the tool. Then the legs can be formed by smaller pieces of clay bent and added onto the sides.



A little mouse can be made. Model the body, then add the long tail, the two ears, make the detail with the tool. If desired the feet can show peeping out from beneath the body.

These small life forms are suggested because children are especially fond of them, and although the product will be very crude at first, impressions are being made that cause the children to become very attentive to the forms when they meet with them again. Their ideas unconsciously become clearer and more vivid. Remarkable instances of observation of detail will constantly be made by pupils from particular forms that interest them.

Illustration 261



Elementary Modeling of Animal Forms

*Vessel Forms.* —A good exercise is to make a little vessel form. Take a piece of clay about the size of a small egg, press it in the center till you form a cavity, bending up the edge all around at the same time with the fingers, till it forms a hollow, cup-shaped form. (Illus. 261.) Do not let it become flat like a saucer. Make the base by pressing it on the board, and, by rotating it a little between the four fingers and thumb, it can gradually be made small and cup-like. Do not let it be thick and thin in places. Smooth away the little hills and hollows, and resist the tendency of the cup to spread out. Let it be about 1 inch or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches in height and perhaps 2 inches in diameter and about  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch thick. This is a splendid exercise for manipulation. Work with it till the rim or top is a good circle. Let the

base form a true circle. This requires a little more manual dexterity than one would think to make it good in shape. Endeavor to make the inside smooth and the rim a nice flat edge all around. Make different sizes. With a little practice small vessels for various purposes can be made,—little basins, bowls, vase forms and so on. If these forms are allowed to dry, they can be fired and glazed in any pottery for a few cents each. Beautiful little vessel forms suitable for pin trays, flower receptacles, salt cellars, match safes, etc., can be made.

Next take a piece of clay a size larger than that used for making the cup, and make a small shoe. The pupil can imitate a wooden shoe, or slipper or boot. Press in the cavity for the foot with the thumb and fingers. The point can be made to turn up, in the usual manner of a wooden shoe or Turkish slipper, or any other shape can be made as desired. Draw the attention of the children to the fact that the foot is wider in front than at the heel, and so on. It is wonderful what a variety of shapes the children can make after a few lessons. They will put rosettes of different kinds or buckles on the front, and sometimes make the shoe to button or lace. It requires the merest kind of suggestion to make the children observe in a very little while all kinds of shoe shapes, and to reproduce them. That is the object of the lesson,—to compel observation. A very good plan, if the children are making realistic shoes, is to draw attention to their own. Let them look at the foot and the shoe. Let them see how narrow it is at the toe or the instep. Let them look at the shape of the heel. This form also makes a nice little receptacle for pins or flowers, if fired. Allow the pupils to keep it when it is satisfactory and is not too rough.

The next form may be a bird's nest. Take a piece of clay, roughly shape it by making the cavity with the thumbs and fingers, working it around in the hands until it assumes a cup-like form. Now place it in the middle of the desk or modeling board, and with the tool make the ragged edge. Try to imitate the texture of the sticks and grass, and then bend the edge over till it is about the size of a nest. Do not let it be too regular, make the form irregular. Allow some pieces to stick out in an accidental fashion. Three, four or five eggs can now be made and placed in the nest. Be sure they are of the same size. (See Illus. 260.)

Take a piece of clay and make a rough tree stump. Pull up the edges to form the ragged stem of the tree. Let it be hollow and cup-shaped. Let

the edge be very irregular. Pull out a few roots, or model one or two more pieces of clay and add them for roots. Be sure they stick on, and that the clay is incorporated with the main mass. Do not simply press the piece on, but incorporate it with the tool so that when it is dry they will not fall apart. Do not make the roots or rootlets look like legs. Let them be irregular, one on one side and two or three on the other. Make the texture of the bark with the tool by a series of short, irregular marks. This also forms a very nice little receptacle for flowers, pins or matches.

A small basket may be made. Take a piece of clay, press in the center, making it hollow, and raise the edge; let this be about as thick as the cup form that we made. The basket can be made square, oblong, or elliptical, as desired. Roll out a piece of clay, bend it over, make a strong handle. Do not make these handles too thin. In modeling never make anything thinner than the handle of a small teacup,—a fine China teacup.

Illustration 262



A Modeled Tile

The pupil has completed the design in clay and is now trimming the uneven edges from the tile.

Anything smaller than this is sure to break with handling. The texture of the basket can be imitated with the tool. This makes a nice receptacle for various purposes. All of these forms can be placed on tiles, slabs or plinths.

In making a tile (Illus. 262) take a piece of clay, press it in the center of the modeling board, then take another piece and add to it, incorporating one with the other. Do this continually, turning the piece of clay and pressing it flat till it is about the desired size. Do not allow the clay to stick to the board, fingers or tool. When you have a rough piece made about the size or a little larger than the size you desire, take the knife and flatten it. Keep turning the tile continually and give it plane surfaces by pressing it against the board with the knife. When it is flat enough and of even thickness, draw with the point of the knife on the top the size of tile you desire. It can then be cut with the end of the knife blade. Do not cut with the entire blade of the knife; use the end of the knife and let it pass



through the clay so that there is little friction. (Illus. 262.) When the children have a little more skill and desire to keep the forms they make, it is a good plan to mount them on tiles,—the animal forms, the fruit forms, rosettes, etc.

Illustration 263



The Real Bird

Directions for modeling birds from the real, or other animal forms, are given in Chapter VI of this section. Work of this kind is much more advanced than the elementary exercises in this chapter.

In making these elementary forms simplicity of work is one of the things to consider. Remember, the entire work is chiefly to compel the children to think of and to memorize form. Children instinctively endeavor to give expression to thought in all directions. The mind is worked upon and developed through the senses by externals, and it is to compel this union of thought and action that we make these seemingly trifling exercises.\*



The Clay Model

#### Modeling in Clay from Birds

The panel below has been modeled, from the real bird shown at the left, by a pupil of the grammar grade. It is quite a good tile for such a young pupil. Perfection must not be expected from the children, especially when they have had but little experience. But the eagerness with which the children strive to faithfully imitate nature, and their enthusiasm over this contact with the real thing, are by no means the least valuable characteristics developed in the young by the natural education.

\* *Ideas* are, on the efferent or motor side, nascent movements—that is, intuitions of such movements as have been performed; on the afferent or sensory side, they are images of the sensory impressions which have been experienced, the revival of such sensory impressions on the occasion of a suitable external stimulus being *perception*.—[Maudsley, *Physiology of Mind*, page 443.]

Many adult minds are paralyzed or wanting in certain directions at maturity. Never having been required to perceive accurately, they do not remember correctly, and so they cannot judge soundly or imagine truly. As I have repeatedly quoted, "accurate perception and exact memory are the fundamental bases of sound reasoning and imagination." Do not be troubled if the results are not artistic. They are sure to be pleasing to the children, for children are like savages in some of their stages of development.

Many people speak of the necessity of art atmosphere in the school room, and in some places or cities fragments of the antique,—statues like the Elgin marbles, the frieze from the Parthenon, the Venus of Milo, etc.,—are placed in the school room.

I find, however, that these forms do not impress the children. I would rather see the same money spent on natural forms—real butterflies, birds, fish, shells, good specimens of minerals, etc. We must make the children love nature at first hand. We must inoculate them with the desire for beauty through the real living forms in nature. Then, later, we can expect some result when they come in contact with the great art works,—the thought of great minds expressed in concrete forms. But it is useless to put before their eyes the perfection of Greek art unless we first give them the hunger and thirst, the vital love for beauty as it is exhibited in every natural flower, leaf, and shell, and in the various living forms that attract and fascinate the young.



Various Leaf Forms, Models



Clay Modeling  
Modeling original designs on a curved surface. Grammar grade children.

## CHAPTER III

### Modeling Fruit and Vegetable Forms

---

**F**RUIT FORMS MAKE A GOOD SERIES OF OBJECTS to work from. Endeavor to have the real fruit if possible. We can start with an apple. Let the children take up the apple in their hands first and observe its shape. Draw their attention to the stem end, how deep it is; to the blossom end, how shallow it is. Let them continually handle the form, during the lesson. It is good to study the colors of fruit forms. Draw their attention to the beautiful shades and hues of green or red or



yellow, as the case may be, on the apple. Make them aware of the facts before them by speech as often as possible. Take a piece of dry clay and roughly shape it in the fingers. Do not let be too large,—make an average-sized apple. Some of the apples will be large and some small, but it is best to choose one of medium size. Do not let the children make any of the forms in miniature. It is very absurd to see a lot of apples modeled by a class, as small as cherries, to see grapes modeled as small as peas or currants, and pears as small as strawberries. In every case let the children make the forms about the average size of real fruit.

Use the tool now to make the form smooth, working it all over the apple without scraping the clay. Mold it. Do not allow clay to stick to the tool or to the fingers. Be very particular about this. It is a sign of error if the children have clay on the wrong side of the fingers or sticking to their hands anywhere; or if it is sticking to the board, the tool or the knife. The clay must be made compact, by often caressing it with the tool. It is somewhat difficult at first to prevent the tool from scraping the clay, but with a little practice it can be done. Do not mind if the form is a little rough or shows the tool marks, in the beginning. Remember, this is simply to get dexterity with the hands and the tool. We do not care for the product of the first efforts.

Make the cavities at each end with the tool and endeavor to keep the convex curve like the model. One or two little touches with the tool will give the appearance of the blossom end, and then a little piece of clay rolled out and inserted will form the stem. Let it stick to the side of the apple so that it will not break off when dry. There is a great deal of character in the stem of an apple. It is usually short and thick, therefore do not make the stems too long, as is frequently done. It is absurd to see apples with stems almost as long as cherries. Do not let the children use the stem of the real apple in the clay apple, as they are frequently taught. This is simply trickery. Any child able to make an apple will take pride and pleasure in making a good stem to it. The only people I have found who complain of certain of these exercises being too difficult for the children, are the teachers who could not make the forms themselves.

Continually draw the attention of the children to the minor facts of form visible on the apple, and by degrees they will perceive, apprehend and reproduce these forms. Do not, except in special cases, perform the work

for the pupils, but make them consider the form for themselves. It is the idea of an apple that you wish them to assimilate. The clay form or product is not of much consequence. Think of this continually. It is the concept of apple firmly locked into the mind in all its various aspects

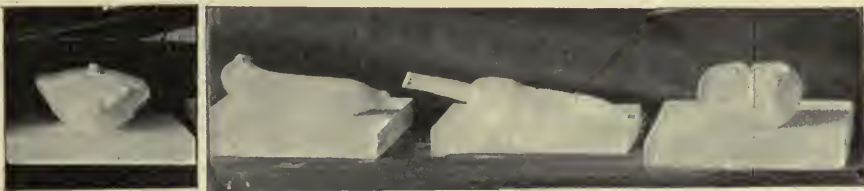
Illustration 267



Plaster Casts for Modeling  
When the real fruits or vegetables are not available.

through the senses that you desire to produce. It is a very good plan at the end of the lesson to let the pupils, if the lesson has been satisfactory, actually assimilate the apple and test its gustable qualities. This adds to the permanent impression, remember, and is a very good lesson, and one that is usually enjoyed. It will do no harm to speak of the structure and the texture, the color and the taste of the apple at this stage.

Illustration 268



Vegetable and Fruit Forms for Modeling

Another point to speak of before we leave the apple is, not to allow the children to make freak forms. Usually in a large number of apples there are one or two that are very much distorted. Draw attention to the typical apples. It is not necessary in the beginning for the child to make

all the accidental kinks, creases or curves that are on the apple. It will be sufficient if they make a good generalized form in the beginning.

*The Pear*—Is more complex than the apple and requires a little more thought and care. See that the pupils have good models, nicely shaped pears. It is better to have a few good ones for the class, even if they cost more, than to give out a lot of poor shapes that are perhaps cheap. Take a piece of clay, roughly shape it like the pear, depressing it at one end. Use the tool to smooth the surface, as described in making the apple, always getting the main form of the pear first with the hands. Do not make the forms too large. It is the tendency with all beginners to exaggerate the size.

Do not hesitate to take the tool in the left hand continually. It feels very awkward in the beginning, but in all modeling the tool has to be used sometimes with one hand, sometimes with the other. Later on, in large forms, the tool is held a great deal with both hands. Notice that the blossom end is not so deep as in the apple, that the stem end has a distinct character, and that the stem is usually a little longer than the apple stem. Of course there may be exceptions. Notice also the difference in color of the pears and in the texture of the skin, some pears being quite rough in texture, others smooth.

With a little practice texture can be imitated very successfully. The smooth chubbiness of a tomato can be rendered; also the texture of cloth, velvet, fur, and so on. Of course at first the children can not try for any of these qualities. I simply mention them to show the possibilities in clay, it being the most plastic medium of which we have any knowledge, and one which, for that very reason, has been used by sculptors from the beginning of history.

*Hints to Teachers.*—Make the children handle the model, let them look continually at it and compare it with the one in their hands. Invite them to observe other pear shapes, show them the typical ones from the number that you are using. By this time you will find that the children are unconsciously using either hand and that they are actively busy with the touch, the vision, the muscular sense, in the work of assimilating impressions. In doing this work, also notice that they are overcoming awkwardness, for at first, when the tool is used in the left hand, it will feel and look very awkward. That, however, is soon overcome.





Some of the Baye Casts

The modeling is bold and broad. They are beautiful models for children to work from in clay and also for drawing in pencil and charcoal.

(213)

These forms are used in all my various classes.

It is habit only that compels the arbitrary use of the right hand in many operations; and the habit of using both can be just as easily taught.\* Parents begin the wrong way by compelling children to "take the spoon in the other hand, dear;" to hold the pencil or fork a certain way; to change the scissors if they happen to pick them up with the left hand. Surely it is good to be able to cut with one hand as well as with the other. I have never yet found a doctor, dentist or scientist, or skilled user of instruments, who does not agree with this. In fact, they say that to be able to use both hands is a very valuable capacity.

**The Banana.**—Take a piece of clay, roll it out, make it four or five inches long. Some bananas are very large, but the large sizes are difficult for the children to handle. As we have learned by experience, the medium sizes are the best for practice. Try to make the planes by drawing the tool or the finger from one end of the banana to the other. Sometimes they are four, five and six-sided. Try to grasp the character, to apprehend the main forms. The shape is a little difficult to make at first. Draw the attention of the class to the color and other characters. Other forms that can be made are the peach, the lemon, the plum, the grape, and in fact any available fruit.

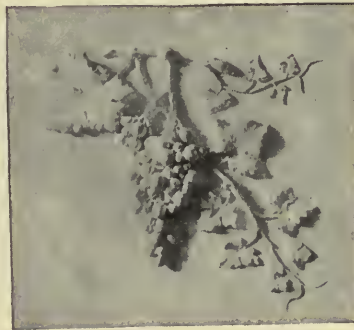
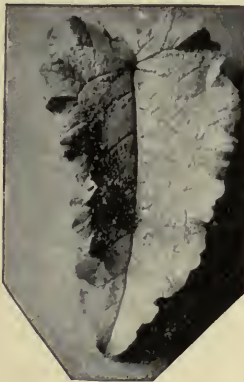
**Fruit Tile.**—A good lesson and a very simple one is to model a tile with a branch of fruit forms on it, making the twig, the fruit, the stems and the leaves. Make the tile about eight inches long and about four inches wide. Do not trim the tile till the fruit forms have been modeled. If you trim the tile in the beginning the edge will be scarred or marred before the form is finished, and then it has to be trimmed again. Leave that for the last thing to do. Take a piece of clay, roll it out about the size of a lead pencil, about three inches long. Shape the end of the branch, allowing it to be a little thick at the lower end and tapering to the top. Place this in position on the tile. Then add another piece about the same length and also tapering, and bend it to form the shape of a branch or twig. Continue this from one end of the tile to the other.

---

\* Habit—self-respect, self-help, application, industry, integrity, all are of the nature of habits, not beliefs. Principles, in fact, are but the names which we assign to habits, for the principles are words, but the habits are the things themselves—benefactors or tyrants, according as they are good or evil. It thus happens that as we grow older a portion of our free activity and individuality becomes suspended in habit—our actions become of the nature of fate, and we are bound by the chains which we have woven around ourselves.—[Smiles, Self-Help, page 404.]

Next make one or two branches. Make these branches fork out in a realistic fashion. Be sure the clay is thoroughly incorporated with the main branch. Use the tool to do this, also to incorporate the stem or branch on the tile. A few little digs with the sharp end of the tool will unite them and then the marks made can be removed by a little modeling. Imitate the bark of the cherry tree on the stems or branches and allow the branch to bend up in one or two places. Next make two or three cherries of the natural size. Place them in position to form a group. Then make the stems; let them be of the right length, 2 inches or  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches long from the cherry to the branch. The cherry stems of course must be made much thicker than they are in nature, about as thick as the handle of a very fine teacup. It is a little difficult to incorporate these thin stems to the main branch and to the cherry without breaking, but with a little practice it can

Illustrations 269-271



Casts of Leaf Forms

be done. Bunches of three cherries can be made, placing one on top of the other two, and the stem placed in the same way. Make one or two bunches of cherries, as desired.

Lastly, make leaves as described in "Elementary Modeling," and endeavor to get the fine points, the serrations, the midribs, and other features with the fingers before placing the leaves in position. Bend each leaf so that it will look as natural as possible. Allow the edge to curve up in one



or two places. Make several leaves in this way. Cherry leaves are long and slender, two, three and four inches long and about one inch wide. Place the leaves in different positions to see the effect before incorporating them. This is quite important.

***Make a Composition.***—Four or five leaves will be enough for this small tile. Then take a tool and incorporate the leaves carefully with the branches and with the background of the tile. See that they are well supported underneath. If necessary, block them up with clay so that they have a solid backing connecting them, though invisibly, with the background. Allow the edges of the leaf to be quite thin, but let the body of the leaf be thick and strong. A leaf can be made to look as thin as paper by making the edge sharp though it really may be half an inch thick. Allow the leaves to curve naturally, and do not place them at regular intervals. It is a little difficult at first to prevent their looking like pieces of tin. This is a very good exercise for young people, because even though it is roughly done, the product usually pleases them.

An apple with a branch and several leaves on a tile is a very good exercise (Illus. 272). Make the tile first, then the apple, as described in our first exercise; place the apple in a natural position on the tile. Then incorporate it so it will not drop off when the clay dries. To do this, press part of the apple firmly into the tile, and then remodel with the tool the parts marred. Next make the piece of branch of the apple tree about three inches long and place it in a natural position near the apple, making the stem reach the apple.

Next model a few broad simple leaf forms and attach them in a group to the branch. Take care to make the leaves look as natural as possible. Let them be thick in places, and where the edges show, allow them to be sharp to suggest thinness. To give strength make all the parts solid that cannot be seen. Never attempt to make things too thin in clay, like leaves or stems or twigs. It is better to make them solid down to the slab, rather than to have them so thin that with a touch or two in handling they break. Try to show the curved surface of the leaf and the serrations with the tool. It is a very good practice in composition to arrange these little groups.

Two peaches, with branch and leaves, also make a very good exercise. Make the peaches on the tile first, side by side. Next make the

branch and then the leaves. Try to grasp the character of the leaf forms and the arrangement.

These exercises are very good in learning to fit form on a surface, and also for giving the children a great deal of pleasure. For these forms, of

Illustration 272



Modeling Fruit from Nature

This picture illustrates another child modeling an apple on a branch, with leaves, from the real form out in the open air. The table is a box with a board upon it; two modeling tools and a knife only being used. First the tile is made, about seven inches square, then the apple is modeled in the hand. As soon as it is the right size and with a certain amount of finish, it is incorporated on the tile in the usual fashion; then the stem is made, and lastly the leaves. It is very good practice making the character of the branches; they are quite rugged and have distinct textures. The same is true of the leaves; the apple leaf is a broad one and finely marked. In making a tile like this, the leaves can be made solid, then the edges can be slightly raised and undercut.

course, models may be used. If you cannot secure the real fruit, stems and leaves, casts can be purchased at a very low price. The teacher should have models of this kind that she has made from real forms herself to show the pupils.

***Vegetable Forms.***—Let us begin with the potato. A potato has a rough, irregular shape, but still it has its own essential character. Have the

children make a typical one; take away the unreal shapes. Make the eyes of the potato with the tool. Let them study the model in their hands, and draw their attention continually to facts. Do not let them miss any of the characteristic features of the potato. The form will stick in their minds when they reproduce it with the tool. I cannot resist the tendency myself when I am talking to my class to interject a stream of facts and fancies about the forms we handle. Splendid ideas can be grasped if the teacher is awake. It need not be a lesson in modeling only, but in many other things. The surface texture of a potato is quite different from that of fruit. Make the children apprehend this. But because potatoes are familiar forms and easy to get, do not tire the children with them. Lead them to appreciate the tints or coloring of the potato.

The carrot is a little more complex. Do not let the carrot look like a parsnip, or a radish. Let the form be of a handy, medium size, and make the texture marks with the tool. See that the children apprehend the texture. Do not let them make simple cuts or jag marks. Give them a little time to grasp the detail. Have them handle the model as much as possible, since much information is conveyed to the mind through the touch. Do not try to model the top or the leaf part of the carrot. Let it be cut off, just showing the stem. This can be modeled with the carrot or added on.

*The Tomato.*—Take one that shows the typical form. Some are very much distorted and some do not have the features clearly marked. Make the divisions with the tool. The stem end will be found a little difficult. Have the children make the leaflets separate and add them on. It is difficult in making the ridges to prevent the form from looking like a little cantaloupe. Do not place the ridges too regularly. Use the tool as much as possible in making the texture. It is very smooth and gives good practice.

These vegetable forms may seem trifling in their value as a mode of compelling thought, but very few adults realize the shape of even the most ordinary vegetables, simply because they have never consciously assimilated through the different sense channels all the facts about them. Their imagination is not vivid because their impressions have not been distinct or clear. The slight percepts that they have fade away, and it is surprising to find how many pupils there are even in adult classes who show that they have not the beginning of an idea as to the shape of an egg or a grape, if



they are requested to shape it without the model. We can create talent and capacity in the dullest people by teaching them observation in this way. There are plenty of people with good eyesight who go through the world

Illustration 273



A. More Complex Form for Modeling in Clay

It is wonderful with what fidelity the children may reproduce even a whole branch in clay, with all its fruit and leaves. One work of this kind will impress the pupil with many of the fascinating lessons Nature offers so bountifully. When an important composition has been well modeled, it should be fired, and may also be multiplied by plaster casts.

without seeing anything, and there are many with very poor eyesight who, aided by observation, notice many things. Modeling compels observation, perception, reflection and conception.

*The Turnip.*—Make a medium-sized one, pinching out the root and modeling on the opposite end a part of the leaves. The variety of form we have among root crops is wonderful, and it is by receiving these vivid impressions, through making them, that we are fully impressed. The texture, structure, color and form of the commonest, simplest vegetables are valuable as lessons, if we can organically and permanently register them without wasting the time and energy of the pupils. Some turnips have

beautiful tints of color and shading; some are a little rough in texture, and others, like the Swedish turnip, are quite smooth.

Hitch on to your lesson as many facts as possible. Do not let the work become drudgery. Many other vegetable forms can be given, but do not let the pupils tire of any one. Give them variety. We all need it to keep our faculties and our interest in trim. It is a natural craving that we have for new fields to conquer. It is not right to teach only a few set forms continually instead of the variety that Providence provides for our special study and delight. The children cannot readily eat the raw vegetables, so that you must make up to them for it by giving them more food for thought, taking extra pains to make the accompanying talk both interesting and instructive.



Plaster Model of Shield



Models of Plaster Capitals

## CHAPTER IV

### Modeling Geometric Forms

---

**T**HE SIMPLER GEOMETRIC FORMS can be readily modeled into shape. They are not very pleasing or interesting, but they yield useful and necessary lessons, and in teaching little children this is the only palatable way in which these uninteresting exercises can be served. The child's awakening mind can grasp only what it sees,—an absolute thing, and here we give it the opportunity to grasp geometric form itself directly, not through a needless definition.

It is wrong to tire the children with these abstract shapes. The geometric forms are essential and necessary at certain stages of education, but to present them continually all through the various grades creates intense dislike. Except for modeling a few times, they should not be used in the early stages. I have known children to be completely spoiled for art work by having these unmeaning forms presented to them so often.

Experience teaches that there is a feasible size for these geometric forms. In some schools they are made very large, and in others much too



small. The best way will be to make the forms of a size that can be readily grasped by little children and made without the use of tools by the two hands alone. Many of the geometric forms can be seen in the pictures in Chapters I and II of this section, also on page 231. They are shown about the proper size they ought to be made.

*The Sphere.*—Take a piece of clay and roll it in the hands till it forms a ball about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches in diameter. It is quite difficult to make this a true

Illustrations 278-280



Models of Pilaster Panels, Italian Renaissance

sphere, but by manipulation with the thumbs and forefinger, rubbing away the hills and making the rough places plain, and then rolling it between the palms again, a good sphere can be produced (Illus. 252). In making this series of forms it is advisable to have the pupils place the forms as finished along the top of their modeling board or desk.

*The Cube.*—Next make another sphere similar to the first and of the same size. This can only be done by comparing the two. Place them side by side and take away or add clay till they are equal. Now take the second sphere, and tap it on the board till a plane about one inch in diameter is made. Next turn it over on the opposite side, parallel to the first plane, and make another plane in the same manner. Be very particular to have the pupils endeavor to get these planes really parallel through observation. Let them continually look at the form in their fingers.

Next tap two more planes opposite to each other, and then two others, making the six-sided cube. It is a very good exercise now to make these planes merge together by tapping on the flat board until the form is a true cube, with sharp, clean corners and each plane equal. To do this with any accuracy requires constant attention. Make the children pay attention. This is an excellent form for teaching a number of very desirable qualities. Resist the tendency, especially if there is a large class, to tap the cube carelessly on the board. Be sure that it is grasped correctly, and that the children continually look at the form. Pay strict attention to position. See that the pupils sit constantly erect, keep their heads level and take inspiration.

If they have to look at the cube in their hand, let them hold it up. Do not let them tip and turn the head to look under it. If you wish to see

Illustration 281



Reducing Acanthus Leaf Forms

Antique model. The work is placed upright on an easel, for convenience.

things straight, you must look at them with the head level. Do not expect little children to make very sharp corners or very correct cubes in the beginning. With practice a perfect cube can be made if the clay is in right condition, with sharp edges and fine corners. Any teacher can perceive

that to get these six planes equal in size with the hand and eye alone is good training. To do it a few times is also pleasing, but it is not wise to tire the children by giving them the geometric forms continually, as is so foolishly done in many schools and even in the kindergarten.

In this work of modeling, we are using the master sense of touch, aided by all the others working in unison. This form of representation produces a healthy activity of the perceptive faculties that is valuable. Here we are dealing with form itself, actually making it. We are getting all around our subject and are in this way made conscious of all its peculiarities. We are getting accurate perception, which precedes exact memory, by performing deeds. It is this quality in sculpture which raises it above painting and drawing and places it at the head of the creative arts. It is for this reason that sculptors' drawings often possess those characteristics of strength, boldness of line, truth, which can come only from a thorough knowledge of the subject, gained during many years of contact with form, not simply by looking at it, but by actually making the forms.

We never really know form until we have attempted to reproduce it a number of times in the solid. One of the chief objects of these lessons is to impress this fact on the pupil while studying and trying to make these objects; even though the object is not well made, you are really gaining mental development, you are making these things a part of you to the extent that you gain just perception of the thing modeled. You are assimilating concrete knowledge through several sense channels and must become richer in mind for it.\*

*The Cylinder.*—Take a piece of clay and roll it out between the palms until it is about one inch in diameter. Gently tap each end on the modeling board. Let the cylinder be about two inches in height. It is quite difficult to get the ends smooth and flat in the beginning. If it is rolled too much, a hole will form in the end. Use the tip of the finger or the thumb and fill the hole, and gently pat again until you have a true circle at each end. Resist the tendency to make it too long. If it is too long, pat down until it is short and roll again. Place the cylinder next to the cube.

---

\*"The human brain is an organized register of infinitely numerous experiences received during the evolution of life, or rather, during the evolution of that series of organisms through which the human organism has been reached."—[Spencer.



*The Square Prism.*—The next operation is to repeat the same cylinder. It is a little more difficult to make this one match the other. Then take the second one, and by tapping on opposite sides, as in forming the cube, make four planes, converting the cylinder into a square prism. Do not make it too long, but let it match the cylinder in size. The chief difficulty will be that it tends to become too long. Keep tapping it, and continually observe each plane, till it becomes a good square prism, then place it by the side of the cylinder. If you have a large class, notice that

Illustration 282



Modeling a Head

This picture shows one position of the hands in modeling a head. The thumbs are "feeling" the form near each eye. Sculptors frequently model portions of the figure with the fingers alone.

there is a tendency to rap the forms on the board without looking at the result. Make the children look to see what they are doing. Do this continually.

*The Cone.*—Take a piece of clay, roll it out in the hand so that it becomes of a cone-shaped form, and pat it on the end, to form the base. Make

the form in the hands roughly first, and then use the flat board. It must be rolled till it makes a perfect circle on the base. This form is difficult and compels the use of a good deal of manual dexterity. Do not make the cone too high. The tendency with all beginners is to make spear points or little steeples. A great many of the cones used as models have this fault of form.

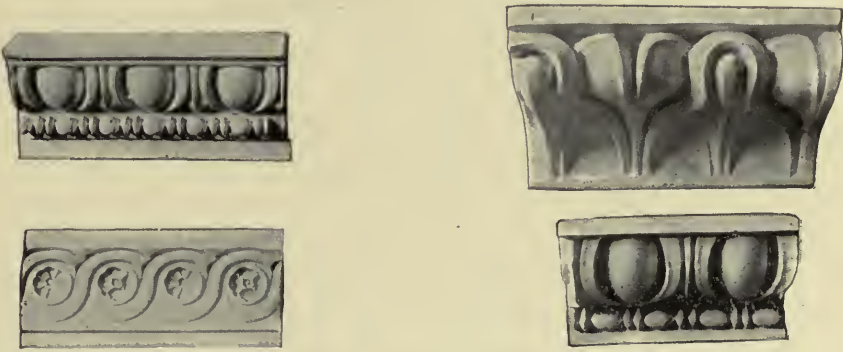
Let the cone be the same height as the cylinder and square prism. As soon as it is finished to your satisfaction, place this product beside the square prism. Then start another cone and make it of the same size as the first one. Notice in making these forms that we have made a pair and turned the second one each time into something else. It is very good practice for gaining size and proportion, to make one like the other. The second cone we will turn into a square pyramid by tapping the planes on the board. This is still more difficult to keep in shape than the square prism or the cube. The base must be a good square, and the four sides must taper to a point and the pyramid must be of the same height as the cone.

Many other geometric forms can be made. The series given, however, will be sufficient to illustrate the process. The forms suggested are the result of many years of experience with numbers of children and teachers, and, if the operations are performed properly, must result in valuable training. Do not tire the children with these forms. Remember continually that they are abstract forms. In the higher grades, when the children are studying geometry, they will have plenty to do with them, but do not disgust them with abstractions, as is so frequently the result in those schools where geometric forms are reproduced year after year till even the sight of them is abhorrent.

Notice that I have made this series of models to present a series of transitional steps, each one a little more difficult, and that the forms can be made without the use of any instruments or tools. Children will take great pleasure in modeling these forms a few times, and that is the reason we give them in the beginning, just as we give blocks to play with. But the essential things are natural forms.

In teaching, never mind the abstractions, continually think of the impression that you desire to make on the mind through the eye and the hand. If the impression is clear and distinct, the form will be clear and distinct. If not, it will be cloudy and nebulous. In talking to teach-

ers, continually speak of the co-ordination of the mind and senses, the tactual, the muscular and the visual, and of the power of observation this work gives one, thus enforcing the acquisition of exact knowledge. Teachers must realize that they are not simply working in clay, modeling common forms in common clay, making "dirt pies," as some ignorant teachers say, but they are molding the human mind, they are shaping the "stuff" out of which immortal souls are made.



Models of Various Borders





A Collection of Pupils' Work, Modeling Room, Public School of Industrial Art, Philadelphia

All the forms have been made by grammar grade pupils. About eight hundred rotate into this room each term. All finished work is kept by pupils. The animal forms are modeled from casts. The casts are kept on high shelves around the room.



A Shell Form for Modeling

## CHAPTER V

### Modeling for Grammar Grades

---

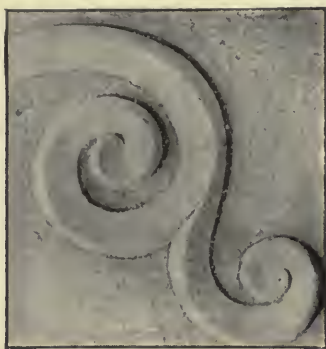
**I**N MODELING THIS SERIES OF FORMS the pupils will pay particular attention to making fine curves, and getting clean, sharp detail and perfect backgrounds,—that is, making the tile of even thickness, with sharp, true edges, and so on. These forms are also good for grammar-grade pupils, and have been tested for many years with thousands of children. The entire series is the result of much care in selecting forms that will do the most good in the shortest space of time. The forms are graded in accordance with their increasing difficulty, and include the elements of the best styles.

The single forms must be made thoroughly well by the children, and then they can be used in combination. It is not necessary for the pupils to make the whole series. As soon as they have grown expert with the scroll

and the leaf, combinations in the way of decorative tiles can be made, using both leaf and the scroll. As soon as the anthemion and scroll have been made, these can be similarly combined. As soon as one of the rosette forms has been mastered, it can be used in combination with other forms. The same may be done with shells, the Moresque unit, the Saracenic unit, etc.

*In Making the Scrolls* (Illus. 288), build up a good solid tile at least one inch thick and six or eight inches square. Do this with the hands alone,

Illustration 288



A Scroll in Clay  
With another scroll flowing out from it.

piece by piece, as described on Page 206. Do not allow it to stick to the board. When it is about the right size, make it plain and smooth by means of the knife, but do not trim the tile till the form is finished; let the rough edge remain to protect it. The last thing done should be to cut it square and true when the entire ornament has been modeled. Now take the end of the tool and draw on the tile a good scroll, similar to the one illustrated. Practice doing this many times. It can be rubbed out with a touch of the palette knife. The freehand drawing on the clay

surface is excellent practice, and with all my classes, adults and children, in the beginning I invariably have them sketch the form for five or ten minutes freehand, since at first it may be a little too large, then again it may be too small. Illus. 289 shows a child making the single scroll in clay.

Make the scroll so that it fits and fills the space. Let the ball come near the center of the tile. As soon as you have a satisfactory drawing, take a piece of clay, roll it out about two or three inches long and about as thick as the finger, and place it on the drawing. Then take another piece and place it in the same position, continuing until you have the scroll roughly formed with the clay. Next, take the tool and press it into the piece of slab and endeavor to get the curves. The raised edge in the middle of the modeled form is the first thing to get. That is called the "modeled line." Press away the surplus clay and try to swing the tool around the whole length of the curve from one side to the other. Make long, continuous touches. The clay must be exactly right in consistency. If it is too



PLATE SEVENTEEN



Forms Suitable for Elementary Schools

First a few fruit, vegetable and geometric forms, next a series of the various units of design, then a number of arrangements. Some of these patterns are quite elaborate and show fine modeling. The units of design are made and memorized before arrangements.

(231)

soft it will stick to the tool. It is better for it to be a little too stiff in the first place than too soft, especially for the tile itself, although of course the harder the clay the more difficult the form is to make in the beginning.

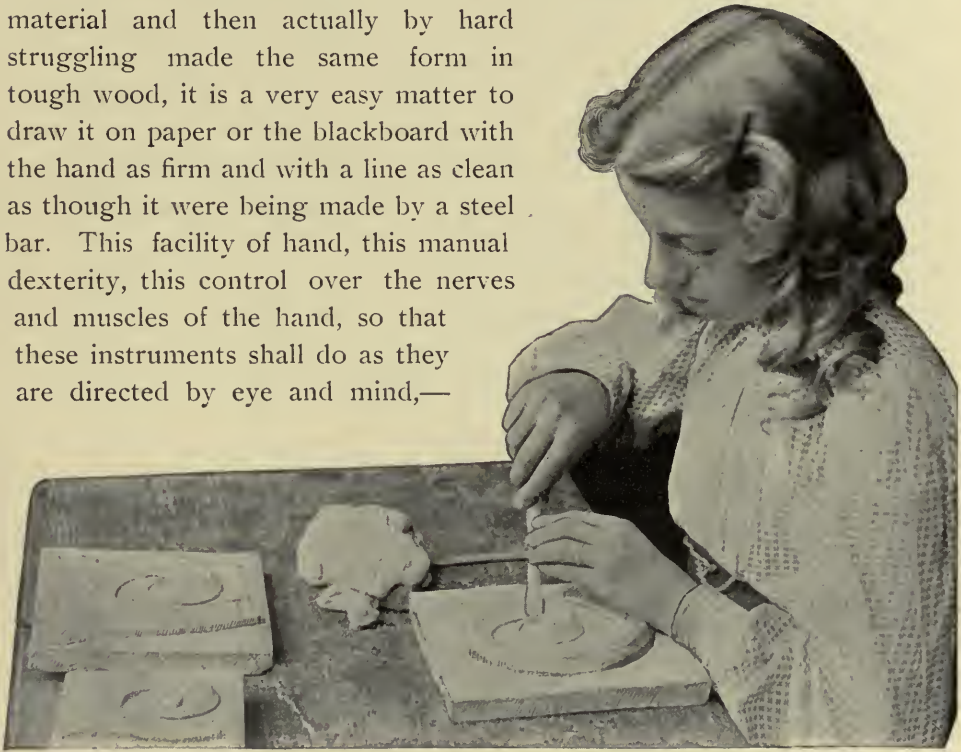
Grasp the tool in both hands as illustrated in most of the pictures showing pupils modeling. Of course the hands move about in different positions as the tool moves. At first it will be quite difficult to sweep the curved end of the tool from one side to the other, making half the circuit or even the whole circuit with a single sweep, but with very little practice manual dexterity will be acquired that will enable you to make a single touch continuing all around the scroll with ease, swinging the tool back and forth on the curve. Notice in doing this that you are actually drawing in material. Do not mind how rough the work is if you can get this swinging movement. Resist the tendency to scatter clay crumbs on the work, keep all pieces in the hand or in the main lump. The form or raised edge must be equal in height all over the tile; do not let it be thick in one place and thin in another. It is quite difficult to get this quality at first. As soon as the curved surface of the scroll has been made, then the form can be clearly cut out by vertical cuts on each edge of the scroll and the surplus clay removed, keeping the tile flat and smooth.

It is not easy to work in the center around the ball, to get into the corners, to keep the edges sharp, at first, but with practice this can be done. Do not mind the tool marks showing at first. We do not want the work finely finished or polished. Try to make the curves as true as possible. Eventually, the longer the swing of the tool, the truer and better the curve will be. Do not let the curved lines look as though they were bent.

This is excellent practice in getting the hands to swing curves, and it is by modeling and carving these forms that we enable our children to draw them with such boldness and facility that it surprises outsiders who do not know of the work they have been through. All our children make these forms. I cannot recall now, among the many thousands of pupils I have had, one who was unable to draw, model or carve these conventional forms if they learned how to do it in this way. Of course if pupils have been allowed only to draw, or to model, or to carve, I am sure many would be unable to draw the forms; but being required to do the three things in rotation, one after the other, they get a manual dexterity that makes the form

organic, and enables the hand in the end to make the form automatically—without conscious thought—as can be seen from the various illustrations showing forms modeled by pupils, where the scroll is shown in combination with other forms, sometimes ten and twenty times over. All the units of styles, and most of the drill form units, are modeled and carved as well. Any one can see what a great help this is in making forms organic. But when we have actually, through the sense of touch, made the form in soft material and then actually by hard struggling made the same form in tough wood, it is a very easy matter to draw it on paper or the blackboard with the hand as firm and with a line as clean as though it were being made by a steel bar. This facility of hand, this manual dexterity, this control over the nerves and muscles of the hand, so that these instruments shall do as they are directed by eye and mind,—

Illustration 289



One Position in Holding Modeling Tool, while Turning a Scroll

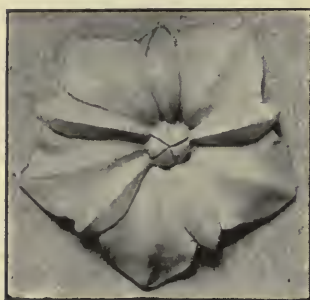
Both hands are used and work equally, the tool changing position constantly—sometimes the concave side being used, sometimes the convex. Endeavor to make free swinging touches as long as possible: do not allow the hands to rest on work. In the above picture, one hand rests to enable photograph to be taken.

are among the highly desirable objects of manual training that can never be attained by the limited exercises of mere shop practice. Wood carving is of wonderful value in accomplishing this hand training and character growth.



*The Rosette Form.*—The next form illustrated (page 235) is the rosette. Make a tile eight inches square, as described before. First draw the rosette with the tool freehand, making it to fit the tile. Make the center of the rosette in the middle of the tile and then the four leaf-like forms one after the other. Do this entirely freehand. Do not make construction lines. Rub out the drawing with the knife and practice the drawing of the rosette several times. Then start with the center boss. Let it be about one inch or one and one-half inches in diameter. Be sure that

Illustration 290



A Complex Rosette

the clay is incorporated in the tile by mixing the boss with the substance of the tile, so that it will not drop off when the form is dried, then model the surface with the tool till it is a true hemisphere. It is quite difficult at first to swing the tool over from one hand to the other in making this curved surface, but by persisting a little it can be done almost from the beginning.

Next we make the four leaf-like forms, shaping them roughly in the hand first. Let them be about one inch thick, sloping down to the center or boss, shaped almost like a large tongue. Make all the four forms before you place them in position and see that they are equal in size. When this is done they can be placed around the center boss. Squeeze the forms into position, being sure that the clay is roughly incorporated into the tile. If it is simply pressed on the tile, it will be sure to drop off when the tile dries. All these directions are not only essential to making a good tile, but such thoroughness helps mind and memory.

Remember this: The clay must always be incorporated, one piece of clay worked into the other, if you wish it to hold together. It is very exasperating to make a number of forms and then when they dry up to have them fall apart. This is usually the case unless care has been taken every time to incorporate the clay with the main mass. Each piece as it is put on should be made one with the parent piece.

Now the rosette must be tooled into form. It has been roughly shaped with the finger, and now we take the tool and make the cup-shaped



Various Positions of Tool in Modeling Rosette and Shell

The tool is sometimes grasped in the right, sometimes in the left hand. The hands must swing freely over work, care being taken not to make small patches or pieces.

(235)

hollow on each leaf with a single stroke if we can. Pass the tool over the surface of the leaf many times and then over each of the other leaves. Do not turn the tile.

The object in this exercise is to make the four leaves in four different directions while the pupil keeps the same position in relation to his work. See what a wonderful amount of muscular co-ordination is required to turn the hands, both hands guiding the tool, in such diverse positions. Perhaps we can make the leaf quite readily and easily on the right side, while it is very difficult to make it on the left side. Perhaps we find the lowest leaflet quite easy to make, then we find it quite difficult to make the upper ones, with the same movements reversed. We must, however, resist the tendency of the pupils to turn the tile around, thus making all the leaflets in the same way, and allowing the hands to make only those few movements which they find easy to acquire. Remember, this work is educational, and the object of this lesson is to enable the hands to make the physical co-ordinations all over the complex surface in the different directions. When your hands can move readily with ease all over these four leaflets without awkwardness, it indicates a great amount of manual dexterity.

Do not mind the form being rough in the beginning. Make the edges sharp and clean, let the tile be smooth and flat. Make a good broad edge on the leaf. Do not hesitate to make the touches all over the leaf many times. Do not expect it to be finely finished with a few touches. The touches must be repeated. Do not finish up one leaflet at a time, making it very fine and smooth all over. Roughly finish the whole series, and then go over them again. Avoid finicky, small, feeble touches. Avoid picking the clay and making small pieces. Model or mold it into shape with a few free touches. In modeling a form of this kind, if clay has to be removed from the tool, we do not pick it off and place it in the main lump every time, but add it rather to a piece which we keep in the hand. When we need to add more clay, or have to remove it from the model, it can be taken from or added to the lump in the hand. The last step is to trim and square the tile.

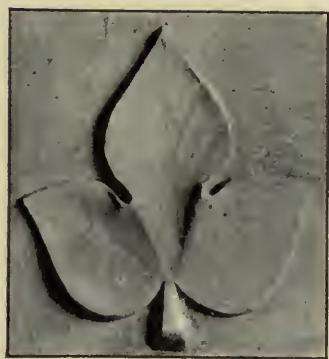
*Position of Tools.*—I have purposely made a number of pictures to show the different positions of holding the tool in modeling and carving. There is no one special hold. The tool is changing from one hand to the other constantly. Experience will give the natural hold. Of course it is



difficult to get the movement from the pictures and the print alone. Seeing it done by an expert is the best way. In teaching, the teacher should go from seat to seat illustrating movement on each tile or slab, if necessary making one leaflet or part of one leaflet occasionally, the pupil looking on and learning.

**The Leaf Units.**—For the three-pointed leaf form (Illus. 291), make a tile, on the tile draw the leaf with the point of the tool, making the ribs first and then the double curves forming the outline. Practice this a number of times. Make the leaf to fit the tile. Encourage children as much

Illustration 291



A Leaf Tile

as possible to make these quick drawings on the clay, for position, before beginning to model. Next take a piece of clay, and working with both hands, make the leaf form about three-eighths of an inch thick in relief. Make the stem also. Get the entire shape in the rough, with the fingers, in the beginning. Be sure that the clay for the leaf is thoroughly incorporated with the main mass, and that each piece you add is also incorporated with the adjoining surface. See to this in all cases, so that the model will not come apart in drying.

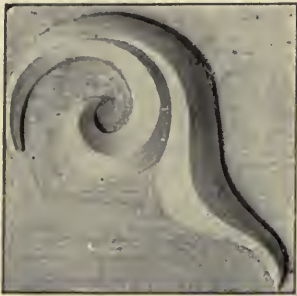
Properly worked together this way, the clay tiles and models should be durable, quite strong and lasting. Unless they are struck or allowed to drop, they can be kept any length of time. It is good to have shelves in the class room on which to place these forms. In most of my schools all the walls are completely covered with the work of the pupils. We do this so that they can get ideas from the work exhibited, and at intervals we allow them to take their productions home and place others in their stead.

Next take the tool and roughly make the depressions on the leaf, first for the midrib and then for the side ribs. Let these touches be bold and free. Then model from the center towards the edge, making the undulations on the leaf. Next make the double curves on each side, beginning with the middle leaflet. Do not finish one part,—work all over the leaf. In shaping the leaflet on one side, do not completely finish it, but make almost

every other touch on the opposite side. In this way you will find that you gradually model balance.

It will help a beginner to look at the pictures of some of the modeled leaves in this book, to see how the texture is produced and also how the carved leaves are made. Do not put in very fine detail in the beginning. In making the serrations on the leaf, model each leaflet separately, first on one side and then on the other. Hold the tool in both hands in doing most of this work. Very rarely is the tool held by one hand alone, it is nearly always guided by the other hand. The same is true of the chisel in carving. This form can be varied, a five-pointed leaf can be made in the same way and quite a number of other shapes can be based on it.

Illustration 292



The Moresque Unit

*The Moresque Form* is quite difficult, although it looks so simple in outline. In making this, first spend some time in drawing it. It is a little difficult to make this form fit the tile. Do not make it too small, let it be about the proportion of Illus. 292. Take a piece of clay, fill in the surface of the form piece by piece with the fingers until it is about three-eighths of an inch in height. Allow the form to be a little larger than the one you intend to make. Try to keep the double curve on the large blade showing clearly, letting it taper to a fine point. With very little practice you will find that you can get good forms with the fingers alone. With the fingers the clay can be thoroughly incorporated and made into a solid piece. Now take the tool, and, beginning with the stem, make a single plane from one end to the other with a sweeping touch. I want you to draw this double curve repeatedly on the soft clay, compressing and flattening it at the same time. Repetition will in time compel accuracy, until the hand is able to make these swinging lines quite automatically.

Next we will make the other plane, allowing the modeled line to show a beautiful double curve, the modeled line being the raised edge in the middle of the form. Swing over this curve a number of times, then try the curve on the inside or short blade, swinging around from one end to the other repeatedly. Next on the outside edge. As soon as these planes are satis-

factory, then with a single touch cut out the form, beginning with the large double curve, then making the other side of the blade, and lastly the short curve. This is one of the most difficult forms to get properly and still one of the most satisfactory to make when practice gives facility. The entire form should be made with a few strokes when dexterity has been acquired. Do not make finicky touches. Allow the tool to swing from one end of the unit to the other each time, holding it in both hands and pushing away the surplus clay or adding on, as is needed, from a piece in the hand. Feel the form with the tool and draw it out. Next clean up the background and see that the stem is narrow. Much attention must be given to the raised edge, the modeled line; for although when the model is flat on the table this does not show very plainly, it is the most important line on the model, and when it is in position standing up, it shows more distinctly than any other.

*The Scroll and Crocket.* —Make the drawing of the complete scroll first (Illus. 293), allow it to fill the tile, and then add the crockets, one to each corner. Make this form repeatedly till it fits the tile. At first it will be a little too small and seem a little crowded. Give five or ten minutes to the drawing. Then take a piece of clay, roll it out about the size of the little finger and place on the drawing, incorporating the clay piece by piece till the entire scroll is covered about three-eighths of an inch thick. Make the form a little thicker than it is intended to be. Now add on the crockets, forming the curve and the tip with the fingers. Let every member of the class block in the entire form with the fingers before using the tool. Then take the tool and place the plane or curves on the surface from the tip of the crocket, gradually merging them with the curves of the scroll. Notice that finally the concave curve of the crocket must meet the convex outer curve of the scroll; and the convex curve of the crocket, the concave line of the scroll. Pass the tool repeatedly up and down till a nice curve is made all around the scroll, curving out each tip at the right place, pushing away the surplus clay with the tool, and adding it

Illustration 293



Scroll and Crocket



to the main lump in the hand. The curve around the center boss is difficult to produce in the beginning, but with practice it can be done with a few touches. Then make the curve inside the scroll. This can be very much curved or almost flat. At first it would be better to make it a little flat. Try to swing this from one end to the other with as few touches and with a movement as continuous as possible.

Next cut out the form down to the tile with the tip of the tool, drawing the shape of the form repeatedly and removing the surplus clay. The pupil must be very attentive in doing this work, otherwise the scroll can be spoiled very quickly. The crockets make the form much harder to model, owing to the curve being interrupted, but with a little practice crockets can

Illustrations 294-296



Plaster Models for Drawing, Modeling and Carving

be thrown out in any direction without any trouble. Later on the double-curving crocket and other forms can be introduced on the scroll in the same way.

***Combination of Scrolls and Leaflets.*** —To make two scrolls in clay flowing one from the other, is good practice. A leaf tip can be modeled coming out of the center. To make this form fit the tile, and to curve the scrolls gradually, one from the other, with single sweeps of the tool, is capital manual training. Combinations of different forms can then be attempted, and balanced designs made for various purposes.

*The Anthemion* is perhaps the most difficult of all the elementary forms and takes the most time in the beginning. (Illus. 298.) Make a full-sized tile. Make the drawing a number of times first, endeavoring to get the form to fit it. Roll out the lobes in the hand, beginning with the center lobe. Numerous lobes can be made as illustrated in Book Two, Chapter IV. Be sure that they taper to a fine point, and as they grow slim towards the base let them also grow less high in relief. Bend the side lobes so that they curve and balance nicely. Make the lobes match. This is a little difficult at first. Try to get a good curve to each one; show the gradation in the form. Try to feel with the fingers the magnitude of each lobe.

Begin tooling with the center lobe, push away the surplus clay, and make it taper to a fine point. It is difficult to prevent the stems or pipes of the lobes from running into one another. Beginners cannot help this at first. To keep all these stems gradually curving in to the center and to get them to diminish gradually requires a great deal of skill. Do not expect fine results in the beginning. Hold the tool firmly with both hands

Illustrations 297-298



Scroll and Leaflet



Anthemion in Clay

and model each lobe from side to side. The widest part of the lobe will be the thickest. The form must be blocked out roughly in the beginning with a few large touches to get the approximate bulk, and then it must be modeled over again several times, each time getting a finer finish.

Do not expect good results the first time.\* Any one making this form can realize what excellent discipline it gives in attaining dexterity and physical co-ordinations. Do not allow the children to turn the tile, keep it in one position throughout the entire lesson. Of course if I were to move it from one side to the other and to keep my hands in the same position all the time in making each lobe, it would be much easier to model. But remember, the object of the lesson is to get the skill that is given to the hands when they become able to move with facility all over the complex form. Pay particular attention to the stems, clean the spaces between the lobes, cut the tile true. This form is much used in carving, modeling, and drawing, and it is one of the best of all the units of design for its union of beauty, balance, proportion, grace, etc.

Illustrations 299-301



Various Arrangements of the Anthemion

*The Curved Leaf.*—(Illus. 302.) First, make this fit the tile. Make the drawing a number of times. Do not make it too small; allow it to fill the tile. Block in the form with the fingers, as described in making the other forms; be sure to keep the effect of the double curves. Allow the leaf to be nearly half an inch thick in the thickest part, while the back of the leaf tapers down to the tile. Model a large double curve on the back of the leaf first with the tool. Try to make the surface undulate. Keep the double curves of each leaflet true and try to make them with a single touch

---

\*"The repetition of good action generates the habit of doing well, function developing construction, and the habit of doing well generates a moral feeling in regard to said action, which it becomes at last a pain to go against."



of the tool. The spaces between the leaflets should also be made with a single touch of the tool. Get the texture on the surface of the leaflet representing the small ribs, then finish with a narrow stem. To make this leaf with graceful curves, so that it appears to swing nicely, requires practice. Try to prevent a thick and clumsy appearance of the leaf. The tool marks will give very good texture to leaf form. This can be made much more complex, showing more leaflets.

***Simple Shell Forms.***—The real scalloped shell (page 235) can be conventionalized as desired. Make the drawing, get about the proportion and size, and then add on the clay, making the shell curve up, being sure that it is incorporated on the tile. Repeatedly speak of this to your pupils. It is very uncomfortable to find a shell form like this, for instance, come off the tile, when it dries, especially if a lot of careful work has been placed upon it. Try to get the halves of the shell to balance with the thumbs and forefingers, working at both sides at once. The thumbs are very useful in this work. With a little practice one can make an entire shell form with the fingers and thumbs alone; of course, roughly.

Practice this movement continually. Feel the balance of things. Then you will be able to draw balance. Sculptors often find the thumbs their best tools. We must use the fingers as much as possible, but do not expect to make the sharp edges, the fine detail expected in woodwork, metal work, stone work, and so on, with the thumbs alone. The tool must be used for this. As a person becomes more skilled he will find the fingers more useful, and in making the human figure sometimes the thumbs and parts of the fingers are the main tools used. (See Plate Eighteen, page 235.) Use the tool to make the ribs on the shell.

It is very difficult to make these taper. The shell is a wonderful piece of architecture. There are no finer lines or curves in nature than may be found on a good-shaped shell. Try to make the lines all converge and taper gradually. Model on each side. Do not finish one side first and then the other. It is much easier to model both sides, to make all the ribs

Illustration 302



The Curved Leaf

Illustrations 303-304



Real Shells for Models

All kinds of shells are suitable to be reproduced in clay. They are cheaply purchased if not otherwise available, and offer endless variety in form, proportion, etc. The accompanying text describes the shell work illustrated on page 235, not the making of these shells in Illustration 303.

and serrations first, in the rough, and then to shape them up and make them still finer. The lines of growth as well as the lines of texture show on a real shell. If you are copying from a real shell endeavor to get these. In some conventional shells and models of shells the lines of growth are left out. The suggestion of a spiral in most shell forms where the lines meet together is very beautiful. Try to make a true spiral instead of a bent line. The last part to model will be the serrations on the edge of the shell. Cut these out with a few simple touches.

It must be constantly remembered that, at best, word descriptions of how to model are inadequate, compared to the actual doing. The reader who will try modeling, who begins with the elementary work and follows

along into the more difficult forms, will quickly realize the merit of each point advanced in these pages. Experience is the best teacher.

The student will find many suitable forms for modeling suggested in the drawings in Book Two, and the carvings in Book Four. Many of the plaster casts contain also suitable forms.. After making a few of the simple units, designs should be made, consisting of some of the units combined in different ways, as illustrated in the picture of tiles on page 231, and on page 189 in first part of book.



Gothic Rosettes Models



## PLATE NINETEEN



### Modeling a Lion

This pupil is modeling Lion and Snake, by Barye, from a cast. It is enlarged one-third. The clay model will be fired at a pottery and turns out a fine color. A good terra cotta model of one of the Barye animals is a fine work of art. The clay is fired very hard and is partly vitrified, making a very durable piece of work, showing every tool mark.

(246)



Advanced Clay Modeling

These boys are making large original designs and animal forms in clay for architectural purposes. Advanced class, R. C. High School.

## CHAPTER VI

### Modeling Animal Forms

---

**A**NIMAL FORMS.—After the children have modeled several comparatively elaborate tiles and can produce simple forms with good balance, proportion and fitness, they should be allowed to model some of the various animal forms illustrated. Small heads are suitable to begin with. Allow them to make their choice of the sheep, dog, tiger, horse, lion, or other animal. The teacher will find by experience that pupils work with a great deal more energy if they are allowed to work on some form that pleases them. The series of head forms illustrated in 306 has been made for this express purpose. Some of them are quite difficult and some comparatively simple, but if a boy like a horse's head better than a dog's head, although it is much harder to model than the dog's head, he will succeed better with it. So it is with girls. The girls will sometimes select the tiger's head, in preference to the sheep's or the dog's head, although it is much more difficult.

Do not, however, let them attempt the very complex forms till they have made several of these heads. Let each pupil have a separate model, and never allow two or three pupils to copy from one model, if they are seated at tables. The pupils must be able to handle the form all over, whenever desired, or to put it in any position desired, to compare it with their own work. This cannot be done if two or more are working from the same model. Build up the form in the rough first, being sure that the clay is thoroughly incorporated, that it is a solid, well-wedged piece. Do not allow cavities

Illustration 306



Casts of Animal Forms

This set was specially modeled for school purposes, and then duplicated by making plaster casts therefrom. There are about twelve heads in the set; some are pictured on page 181. They form a fine series of models for various classes. For further remarks on these and other plaster models of various forms, see pages 180-184.

to form in the clay. If there are many air spaces in the lump, it is apt to crack in firing, or even in the drying when it is put on the shelf before firing.

I earnestly desire every one reading this book who wishes to get suggestions on the work of modeling, to examine carefully the pictures given of the class rooms. Notice the variety of models around the walls and on



the shelves. All of these pieces of work, except the very white ones, which are plaster casts, have been modeled by the pupils. By studying these plates carefully, ideas can be received as to the best way to work.

Do not allow the pupils to make details in the beginning. Blocking out means to be able to get the large shape roughly first without any detail. This is one of the most difficult things for beginners to do. Nearly always they will begin to make the features before the size of the head is gained. Also try to prevent exaggeration of size. Beginners, especially in making heads, will almost invariably enlarge the size. It takes time to overcome this disposition. If the illustrations accompanying this chapter are carefully studied, you will find by looking at some of the pupils working, that they have produced first the general form in the clay, and on this the careful working for detail is done.

Very little can be said in print on this subject. The model is the best teacher. Till the form is like the model, the pupil can go on working, changing and altering. Allow the pupils to measure if it helps them in the beginning. Rough dimensions can be formed by means of the tool. Usually the plaster models are much smoother than the forms from which they are produced. The plaster casts have been made by pouring the liquid plaster into molds. This, of course, leaves the smooth surface usually seen on plaster casts. The pupils very soon notice the texture of different substances, the texture of wood when it is carved, the texture of metal, the texture of original models in clay. They soon find that it is not always necessary to make the smooth surface of the plaster cast. The required surface varies with the different forms. There is no one kind of modeled surface. On the head forms the tool marks can show, as they do in some of the illustrations. It is far better to show the tool marks all over than to make the form so smooth that it looks like a piece of jelly or pudding. Any good modeler or sculptor will give advice about his work at any time to a student who is unable to work in a school.

For variety, after one or two heads have been made, the pupils can attempt the Barye casts (page 213). These are used in all my schools. They are perhaps the most perfect examples of beautifully modeled animal forms that can be procured. There is a great variety, and all of them seem to interest the children, many pupils being able to duplicate even the most elaborate of them.

Illustration 307



The Real Bird

*The Animal Forms.*—The pedestal or plinth is usually made first, and then a rough form about the size of the body is put in the required position by a very solid prop under the abdomen. Let this prop be thick and substantial. It does not matter if it fills the whole space under the body, in the beginning. The first day the form can only be very roughly built up, making a kind of core. After the second day, this clay will be found to be much more solid. It shrinks and hardens so that about the second or third day it is quite substantial,

## Modeling from Birds

The panel below is a model in clay from the real bird shown at the left. The panel was made by a pupil of the grammar grade, who had had more training than the pupil that modeled the bird illustrated on page 207, and we therefore have here a better product. This panel is about 16 inches long. The pupil has had only two hours a week in the Public Industrial Art School for drawing, modeling and carving. It must be constantly remembered that these three branches of work are taken in rotation by all pupils. Excellent as is the training afforded by modeling in clay, this training is still better when combined with appropriate exercises in drawing, designing, carving and wood construction.



The Model in Clay

and clay can readily be modeled onto this core, making the form the required size and putting the legs in the required position. Every day the clay will shrink. If a model is to be made of the same size as the original from which it is copied, it must be started a little larger. The shrinkage is about one inch in eight. Remember, the clay shrinks while the form is being made till it is quite dry, and then it shrinks again when it is fired at the pottery and turned into stone. See Plate Thirteen. on page 186.

Do not let the core dry too much. It must be only a little harder than the clay that is added to it. If it is too hard, the clay will shrink unevenly and cracks will result. If the core, or the form in the rough, is moistened too much when it is put away, it is apt to fall down. Nothing but experience will teach the proper manipulation. Of the two states, it is better to keep the clay a little too hard than too soft. As the model approaches completion, it should be allowed to become harder, and the props or supports under the body can be gradually cut away. It is a little difficult to get a large model to shrink evenly all over, but after two or three attempts on forms that are not too difficult, like the animals that are sitting on their hind quarters, it will be found quite easy to model the more complex forms that have a number of supports. If the props are cut away too soon, and before the clay is stiff enough to support its weight, disaster will

Illustrations 308-309



Modeled by Grammar Grade Pupils

result. The remedy, if the forms fall down, is to build them up again with new props, being sure that the broken surfaces have been made wet, so that they will stick together. This frequently happens even to good workers.



For all of the small forms illustrated in our ordinary class work, it is better that the pupils should make their models without any interior supports, that is, without pieces of wood, or of lead pipe, or of iron and wire. We prefer to omit these so that the clay models can be fired at the pottery and the child can keep his original work,—his model when fired showing every tool mark and being very durable and strong. This is much better than to have a cast of the model made, which is done in a great many schools. In our art school over 900 pupils model each winter, and it would be very expensive to cast all their models. The children get a great deal more skill in being able to build up their forms with such solidity. It requires more skill to keep the clay of a regular consistency, so that it will shrink evenly without falling down. Of course, if a plaster cast only is desired, supports can be used inside, or lead pipe can be bent into the required shape. This makes it more easy to model the forms. A plaster cast, however, breaks very readily, chips easily, and, if handled very often, looks quite dirty in a short time. I recommend for school purposes keeping and firing the original models.

Many choice forms suitable for modeling can be found in the pictures of the carving department. All the conventional forms of the different styles make suitable subjects for modeling.

Before dolphins, griffins, grotesques and other complex forms are carved, they should be modeled.

*Modeling Natural Forms.*—It is only possible in a book of this character to give suggestions for work on a few subjects. As many natural forms as possible should be studied. When I speak fully and at length about shells or fish, it must not be understood that I mean only those forms. Birds, crabs, and animals of various kinds should be studied in the same way. My idea is simply to suggest suitable forms and ways.

Each year we find it feasible to try new subjects before thought not attainable in the school rooms. Shells and fish, butterflies and birds, have been seldom used by large numbers, as they are now used for some of our classes. I find them durable and lasting to a remarkable degree. Stuffed birds in the studio, that have been roughly handled for 18 years by private pupils, are still fit for use. The colors especially seem to be quite permanent.

The fish forms illustrated in Book Two, beginning on page 143, are all used for models in the art schools, with many others. They are mounted on

panels of wood and are very durable. They are used in the modeling room as much as in the drawing room.

Modeling the fish in clay seems to make a very enduring impression upon the mind. The children are really fascinated, for the time being, with

Illustration 310



Modeling Fish Forms

Real mounted fish are used as models. Birds, fish, butterflies, shells, etc., are also kept for general use in the drawing, modeling and carving rooms, as well as casts of various art and nature forms. Conventional forms are also made, embodying fish forms, such as dolphins, grotesques, etc.

the strange and sometimes beautiful forms and colors. The *inspiration* is in the natural forms, as it should be, and the mere contemplation of the forms seems to influence the pupils to action. It is inspiring to the true teacher to

realize the moving force and power of nature. Bring something into the class room like a new bird form, or fish form, and all of the children follow it with their eyes, which seem to almost stick out; there is no lack of attention here, the magnetic influence is at work, the divine energy is flowing. We should flow with it instead of trying to thwart it, as is too often done. This magnetic and energizing power of nature has a splendid influence on the physical, mental and moral development of the young. It also fills the children with interest, imbues them with vigor, inspires them to think and work, while at the same time giving them an appreciation of beauty that adds vastly to the ability of the young to enjoy life.\* These are certainly most desirable attributes to develop in youth, for whatever one's vocation may be, the individual should be the better for this training. It is thus distinctly practical, and commends itself to the most materially inclined, as well as satisfying the more ethical aspirations of our nature. "The emotion accompanying every generous act adds an atom to the fabric of the ideal man." By working direct from beautiful natural forms we unite the emotion with the action, and thus still more thoroughly educate.

The tile is first made, as in Illus. 310, and then the fish is built up piece by piece, taking care to keep about the general proportion. Then the tool is used to get the surface and fine curves. When the bulk of the body is about right in proportion, then the spines, fins, eyes, etc., can be added and the details made upon them, the scales usually being the last thing represented. Fish can be readily cast in plaster, and are very easy forms to begin

---

\*"Beauty is not a luxury, as some seem to believe. It is not the exclusive privilege of the few but the common heritage of the many. The rich cannot monopolize it, and persons of taste cannot appropriate it to themselves. There is in every human breast a sense of responsiveness to the beauty of the external world, and the difference is only in the degree to which that sense is developed and cultivated. It is confined to no class, to no age, to no stage of civilization. It is an universal hunger, and its cravings demand satisfaction as urgently in the cabin as on the throne.

"And yet this sense of beauty is too often repressed and crushed instead of being nourished and educated as it deserves. Much happiness is thus lost out of life, for the sense of beauty, wisely administered to, is a wellspring of pleasure. It is even more than this. It is a fountain of life itself. It adds to its fullness and energy, its refinement and delicacy, its sweetness and purity. The life from which it is ungraciously pushed out grows inevitably harder and rougher, coarser and colder, and its influence over other minds deteriorates in the same way.

"How shall this sense of beauty be saved and educated, for rich and poor, for old and young? One way is by contact with its presence. Another and still surer means of cultivating the sense of beauty among us is to accustom ourselves to create it in daily life. This is a part of education and of self-culture that is sadly neglected.

"Then there is the beauty of truth and of character. Perhaps we dwell too much upon the dry and stern aspect of duty and forget to exhibit or to admire the beauty of goodness. But as fast as duty, instead of a sacrifice, becomes a desire, and the love of righteousness becomes the ruling motive, does the character become noble, admirable and beautiful. So all beauty is bound together and leads up from the smallest things of life to the greatest; from the most material to the most spiritual; from the simplest and humblest to the most exalted."—[Anonymous.



upon in doing plaster casting. The forms are comparatively simple and can be removed from the mold without difficulty.

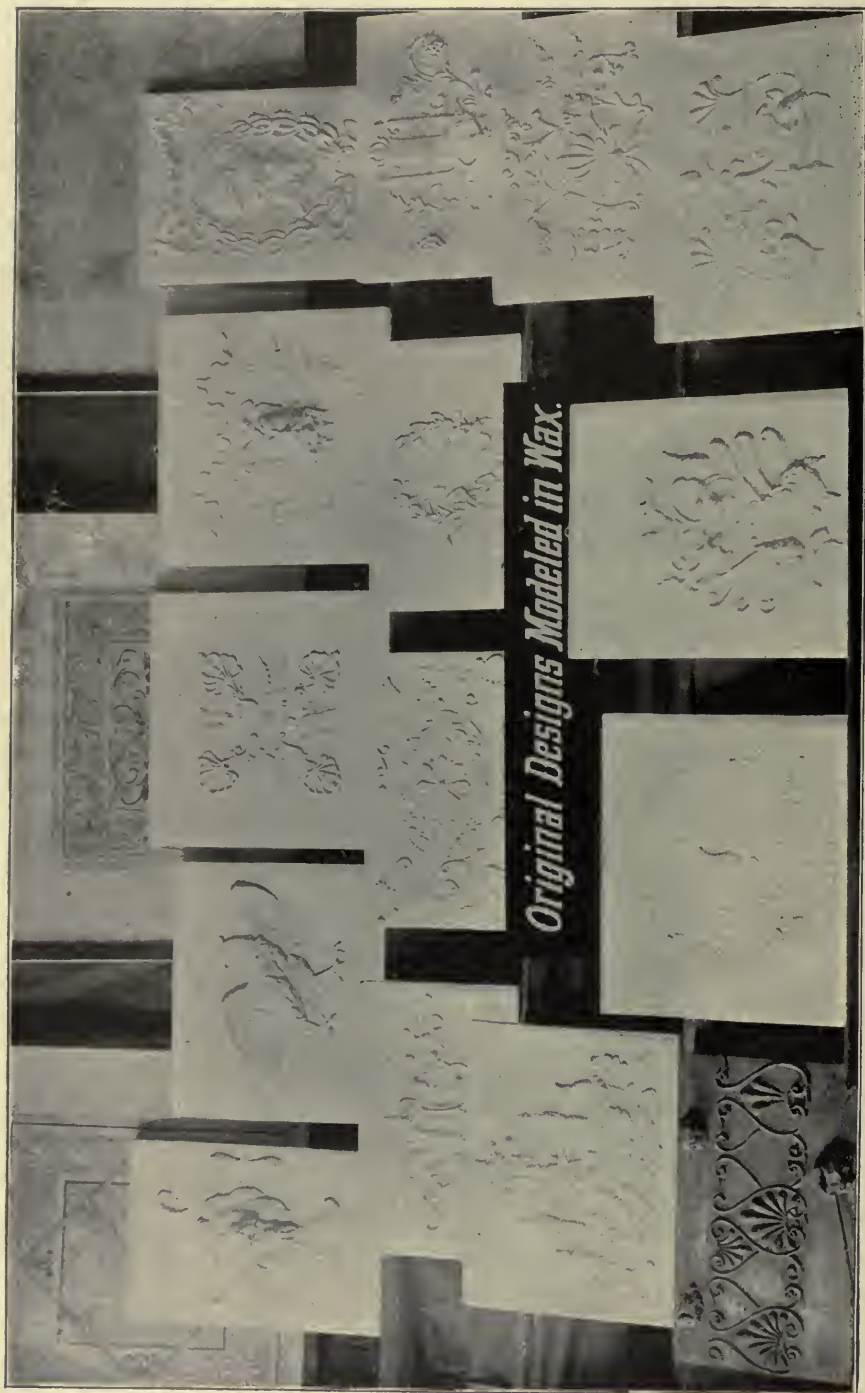
This work of modeling looks simple, and it is easy when you know how. That is to be learned by actually modeling, rather than by reading about it. The suggestions given in these pages will help, but you must do the work to realize its educational power. The more you model, the more facility and accuracy you will obtain, and the more you will be fascinated with this mode of thought expression.



Griffin, Original Design

Modeled by a R. C. high school boy, for architectural use.

PLATE TWENTY



These designs have been cast in plaster from models made in wax by the pupils of the Public School of Industrial Art (grammar grade). The panel on the left, darker in color than the rest, represents a wax model partly finished.



Original Design Modeled in Wax  
The design is afterwards cast in plaster and the wax used again.

## CHAPTER VII

### Wax Modeling

---

**T**HE DESIGNS SHOWN IN THE PLATE on the opposite page are modeled in wax, and were made by grammar grade pupils.

They are either their original patterns or heads, antique forms and bird forms which they have copied. For convenience, boards 8x14 inches are used to model on, as illustrated above. The pupil first makes a drawing or sketch in chalk on the board. When this is satisfactory it is then lined in with the pencil.

The wax is much stiffer than ordinary clay. It is sometimes also quite sticky and not so pleasant to use as clay. We use it simply because it can be kept an indefinite time, and very fine complex pieces of work requiring a long period of time can be kept from month to month on shelves without their having to be moistened, as is the case with clay. Unless the clay models are wet at frequent intervals they dry up and crack and are of course spoiled. With the wax a piece of work can be labored upon for months if necessary. Real modeling wax is worth about \$1 a pound, the best kind. There are several very good substitutes, however, on the market under several names, which are quite as good for general use. Composition clay is used frequently, costing about 30 cents a pound. The



same tools are used as in clay modeling, and if the wax is a little sticky it is advisable to have a cup of water to moisten the tools and fingers occasionally.

Wood of a little roughness in texture is the best to model upon. Wax must be rubbed into the surface so that it will stick firmly. On this sur-

Illustration 313



Original Panel in Wax

The form is modeled in an upright position by being clamped to a board. The same form with different lighting is shown opposite. By viewing the model with the light and shade changed it can be improved. It is important to get good light and shade.

face the form can be built up into the desired shape, planing off with the tool and forming it as described in the clay modeling. Wax is used for modeling very fine forms to be cast in metal and other materials. Medals and coins are usually modeled in wax. Very fine and beautiful work can be made with small tools. A common slate with a wooden rim is a useful surface to model upon.

It is advisable to allow some of the advanced pupils in each class at intervals to work in wax. For general purposes, however, it is not so good as clay. Do not

allow pupils to make very fine work all the time. Let them occasionally make a large, bold piece for contrast. Wax can be purchased in a number of colors,—bronze-green, brown, red, gray. For general purposes gray is best. Bronze-green is very suitable for figure work, having somewhat the appearance of a bronze when finished.

Wax or composition clay is also more portable than common clay and has been used with success in several of my summer schools. Models of animals, figures, designs, can be boxed and carried with safety when modeled in wax, when a clay model would be broken. The clay when dry is very brittle, and any sudden jar or shock will break large and heavy work unless

it is fired. For this reason wax is a good substitute. When the wax has been used many times and becomes discolored or dirty, it may be cleaned by melting it.

The plate or designs made by grammar grade children, page 256, has been taken from casts made from the wax models and then the wax is used

Illustration 314



Modeling a Dolphin in Wax

The form can be rapidly changed and improved when viewed in a different light. Use the fingers and thumb as a tool, as illustrated in the above picture, as much as possible. Fine curves and swinging lines can be made this way.

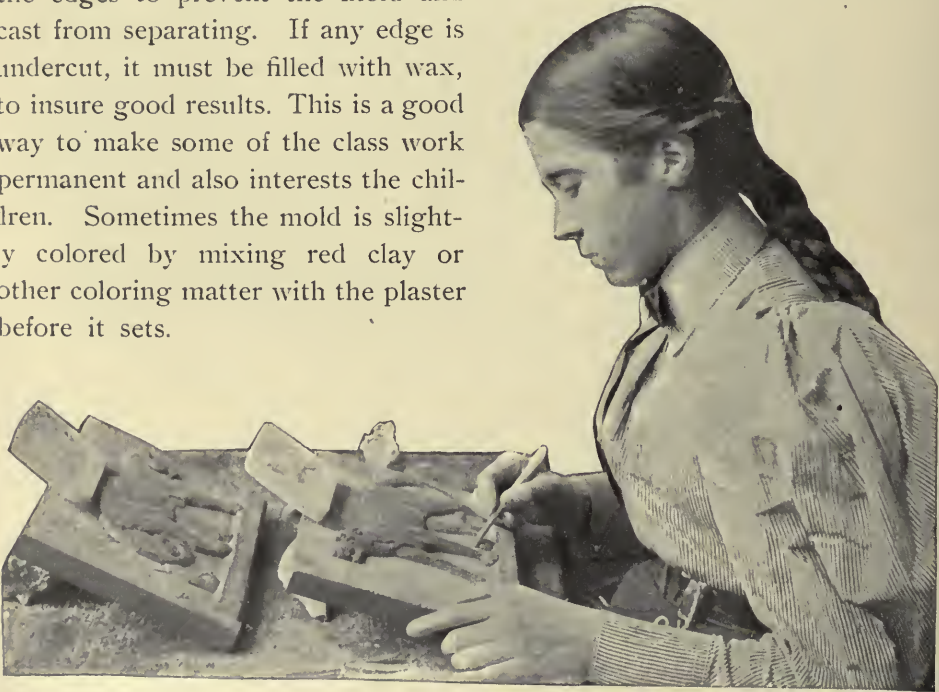
over again many times. Simple designs of this character can be readily cast by the pupils or teacher in the following manner :

When the wax pattern is finished, build a wall of clay around the edge of the design about one inch high. This wall, or fence, of clay, must entirely inclose the design with desired margin. Next take a tin vessel and put in enough water to more than fill the inclosed space. In this water sprinkle the dry plaster with a large iron spoon, stirring it slowly until about the consistency of thin cream. When in this state, pour over the wax model, taking

care to see that the liquid fills all the pattern and space without any large bubbles; this will soon set and harden, and should be about one inch thick. The clay rim can then be removed, the plaster tile lifted from the board, and it will be found to retain the form of the wax model. When the plaster mold is hard, the wax can be pulled out, leaving the exact shape of the model reversed in the plaster. This is the mold.

From this mold another cast may be made that will repeat the form of the wax model. To do this, a clay wall must be built around the mold, and the surface and all parts of the impression upon it must be brushed with sweet oil; this prevents the new plaster, when poured in, from sticking to the mold. The liquid plaster can now be poured in. When it is hard the cast can be separated from the mold by tapping it gently or inserting a blunt knife as a lever. If successfully done, the cast should be a complete copy of the wax model.

Of course this can only be done with flat forms that do not project on the edges to prevent the mold and cast from separating. If any edge is undercut, it must be filled with wax, to insure good results. This is a good way to make some of the class work permanent and also interests the children. Sometimes the mold is slightly colored by mixing red clay or other coloring matter with the plaster before it sets.



Enlarging Animal Forms

These low relief forms are modeled in wax from small casts.



# BOOK FOUR

## Wood Carving



"The hand, destined to become the instrument for perfecting the other senses, and for developing the endowments of the mind itself, is, in the infant, absolutely powerless."—"The Hand," Sir Charles Bell, K. G. H., F. R. S.

---

"Awkwardness of limb and inability to use the fingers deftly, continually entail small disasters and occasionally great ones; while expertness frequently comes in aid of welfare, either of self or others. One who has been well practiced in the use of his senses and his muscles, is less likely than the unpracticed to meet with accidents; and when accidents occur, is sure to be more efficient in rectifying mischiefs. Were it not that the obvious truth is ignored, it would be absurd to point out that, since limbs and senses exist to the end of adjusting the actions to surrounding objects and movements, it is the business of everyone to gain skill in the performance of such actions,"—[Spencer, Principles of Ethics, page 515.]





Partial View of Wood Carving Room, Public School of Industrial Art, Philadelphia

The pupils, whether of the grammar grades or teachers' classes, rotate into this room from their work in drawing, designing and modeling. By this means, one comparatively small room suffices for 800 pupils in rotation at different hours, 40 working at a time. This picture also emphasizes the simplicity and cheapness of equipment.



Designed and Carved by High School Pupil

## CHAPTER I

### Tools for Wood Carving Design in Wood\*

---

**W**OOD CARVING is one of the most beautiful of arts. It requires a real knowledge of form, therefore its educational value lies in enabling pupils to receive fixed or permanent impressions. Just as pupils acquire dexterity and skill in drawing on blackboard or paper, and just as they gain similar dexterity and skill in soft clay, so I wish them also to obtain dexterity in tough wood.

The tools required in carving are very simple. A few gouges and chisels and a mallet, with clamps to hold the work on the table or bench, will be enough. In wood carving, as in carving in marble or other stone, few tools are needed; the fewer the tools used, the better the workman. A

---

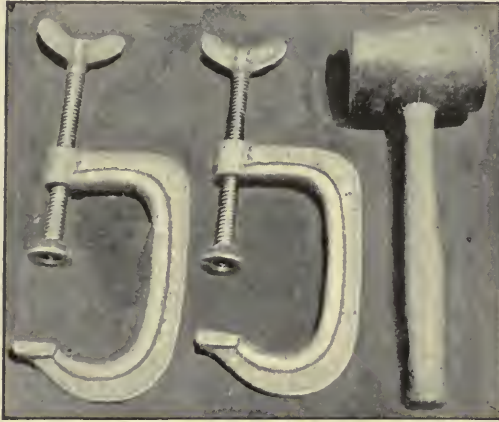
\*The carvings and similar work illustrated in this chapter are all done by the children of the various grades.



mallet and a few chisels are the only tools used in sculptured work, and as far back as we can trace in history the tools appear to have been similar in shape. On the back of the Venus of Milo rough tool marks may be seen that indicate to us the kind of edge and size of chisel used in that period of the greatest Greek art.

*The Tools.*—In carving, the simpler the chisels and the fewer in num-

Illustration 316



Clamps and Mallet for Wood Carving

ber that are used the better the result. Some carvers have rows of 50, 60 or 70 different chisels, but these are usually not very good carvers. Again some of the finest carvers will do all their work in wood, even the most intricate and most elaborate sculpture work, with perhaps no more than half a dozen. My sets for ordinary school purposes usually consist of about 10 tools. It is far better to become thoroughly familiar with all the

capacities of a few tools than to handle a great variety.

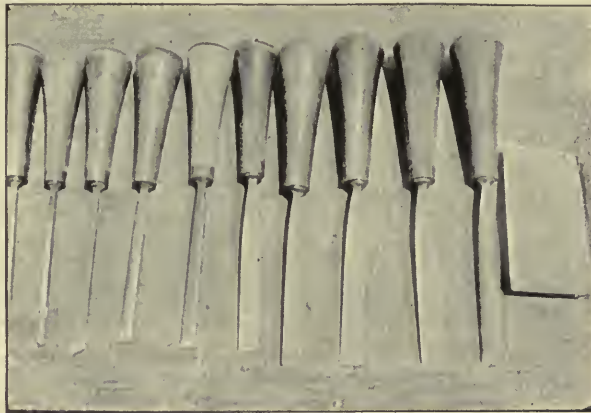
*Age at Which to Learn.*—As soon as children are big enough to swing their elbows freely above the table or bench, they are ready for carving. Carving is work; not hard work, but work that compels the exercise of a certain amount of energy. Some women are deterred from carving because they think it is hard, and requires the exercise of main strength continually. This is not so. Like marble carving, wood carving is re-enforced by the use of the mallet. If the chisel or gouge cannot be readily pushed through the wood, the mallet is used, and any one who has strength enough to drive a tack can cut the hardest wood. Children of eight or nine, therefore, unless they are constitutionally defective or very weak, are quite large enough and strong enough to carve, and usually enter into it with a great deal of energy and joy. It is fun to them to see the chips fly, and they find it especially attractive when they discover that from the beginning they can make fit and beautiful forms,—rather than the amateurish

things used in some schools, where the children spend their energies on feeble imitative constructions in wood.

Just as our children from the beginning are fit to draw forms of the best style, embodying beauty and grace; and just as in modeling they can make fine forms of the best periods, so in wood we find it to be of advantage that they should from the beginning do the best class of work possible, and become familiar with the forms best suited for this material. It does not follow that because a mind is young, it is less bright and clear in perceiving beautiful and true things. It is just as wrong to give children feeble, aimless forms to model and carve because they are young, as it is to utter baby talk to them when we wish them to speak clearly and to enunciate properly.

*The Wood to Use.*—Do not let the pupils use soft wood at first,—such as pine or poplar. This advice, it is true, is opposed to the

Illustration 317



Set of Carving Tools

Including small sharpening stone. With this simple and inexpensive set of tools all ordinary carving can be done.

usual practice in schools. Usually the pupils are allowed to chip blocks of soft pine or poplar. This is a mistake. From the very beginning our pupils, as can be seen by the illustrations, make in hard wood panels fit to be utilized. My reason for using hard wood is that the children from the first

may get accustomed to the texture in ordinary use; most carving being done in oak and mahogany, cherry and walnut, while only occasionally are soft woods employed. The best and the cheapest wood for school purposes is oak. It is a little tough in texture, and offers just enough resistance to prevent it splintering and cutting too freely. If you give a beginner a piece of very soft wood, it splinters so readily that when attacked without skill, the forms are soon spoiled. With a piece of hard wood, on the contrary, a great deal of cutting can be done without splintering the work. Of course it requires more labor, but the product is better,—and there is not so much disappointment. The grain being of firm consistency, it does not give way in unexpected places, as it so often does in the soft wood.

*Designing the Form to Carve.*—The pupils should from the start make a design that will be of use and value. The first panel can embody the forms that have been given in the modeling. It is not necessary to carve a series of panels, each of which has a separate unit on it. The units may be combined from the beginning, and a panel that will have some value and that can be used for some purpose is the result. In every article printed about carving heretofore, pupils are recommended to practice cutting on soft blocks of wood first, apparently just to get exercise. They are advised to use tracing paper to transfer drawings to the wood; sometimes carbon paper is recommended; at other times tracing cloth, or they are taught to use a pattern wheel,—this is a wheel with little spurs on it that prick the outlines through the pattern into the wood. Some even advise the making of stencils, the forms being cut out in stiff paper in order that the pupil may draw around the edges, and so produce the designs. These are very erroneous bits of advice, and such methods must be avoided by the carver who does not wish to be a feeble amateur.

Let the pupil take a piece of chalk and draw freehand a simple pattern,—say the scroll doubled. Reserve a simple band around the edge of the panel about half or three-quarters of an inch in width. Practice making this drawing till the scrolls balance and fit the space. It is a little difficult to draw freely on rough wood, but with practice it can be done readily. Add a few crockets if desired, each added form making the carving a little more complex. As soon as the form is satisfactorily placed, then with a soft lead pencil—one with a thick lead preferred—make the outline permanent, drawing the line heavily, so that it will not rub off. Any good teacher will



see the absurdity of advising children to trace or to paste on the wood or to produce by artificial means a pattern that ought to be produced automatically by the hand of the pupil. It is because from the very beginning we compel our pupils, on all various surfaces and in the different mediums,

Illustration 318



Positions of Hands in Carving

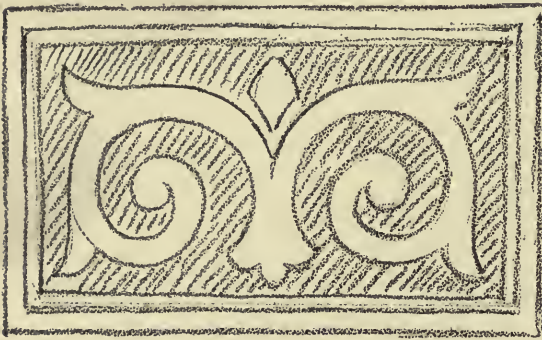
This picture represents four hands gripping tools in various positions. In cutting from right to left the left hand will usually be guiding the tool and also resting on the work to prevent the tone from going too far.

dexterity with originality of product. I have in one school alone 900 pupils carving, and have never had two patterns made exactly alike since the to make the work freehand, that we get the results we do—uniting hand school started. This drawing on the wood, in the beginning with the

chalk and then with the lead pencil, gives very good practice. It requires only a few minutes to do it, and makes the children feel in the beginning that the work is their own. It is very wrong to allow pupils to cheat; and it is really a sort of deception when they are allowed to claim as their own work that which has been copied or traced.

The background can now be scored with the pencil all over. (Illus. 319.) This prevents the pupil from cutting out the ornament instead of the back-

Illustration 319



Background Marked Over for Cutting Out

ground,—a mistake which will frequently occur unless proper precaution is taken. It is only by repeated experience that pupils begin to grasp the idea of form on flat surface. Very few can see a background all over and distinguish it readily from a pattern on the background, unless they have had practice in making these forms. Even adults will frequently cut out part of a background by mis-

take, and do this several times before they get accustomed to distinguish the difference. It saves trouble, therefore, to score the background in every case with beginners. Then very little work is spoiled.

*As to Graded Work.*—Illustrations are given herewith of graded panels showing the different elements of design separately cut and exhibiting the different stages. These are made simply to illustrate the steps in carving,—a first, a second, and a third stage. They must be carefully studied in advance, and then it will be easier to make the first attempt. In our schools the children see all these operations going on at once, on the different panels. They soon take in the idea, and we find in consequence that it is not essential for each one to make the different units separately, but they can begin on panels.

A number of pictures of panels with graded exercises have also been prepared for those who like to “systematize things.” These forms, however, are mainly useful for pupils who have never had any practice in draw-

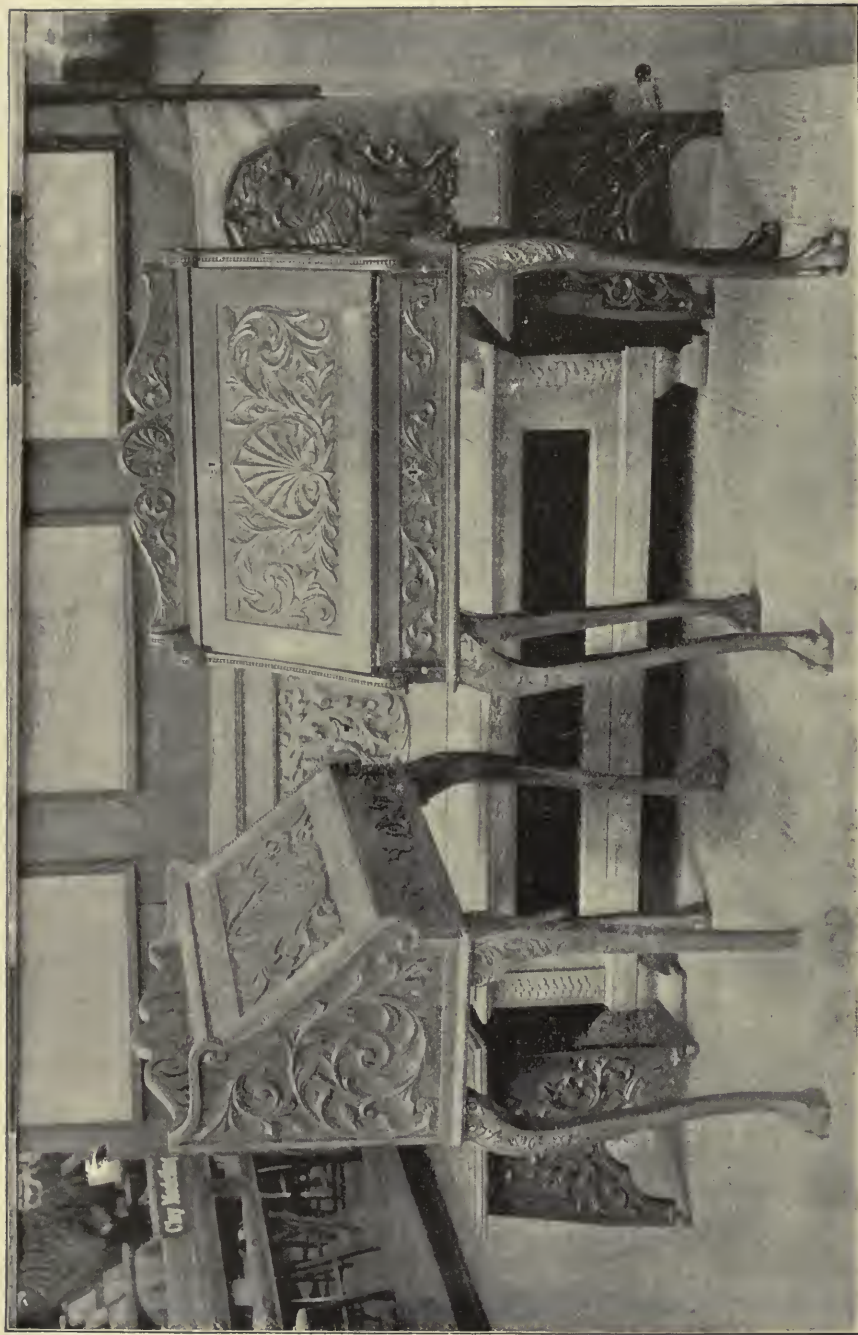
ing and modeling. All the pupils in my schools receive the drawing and the modeling from the beginning, in rotation with wood carving, this rendering it unnecessary for them to make the elementary forms. Usually a pupil who can draw a good scroll, and who has modeled the same, can begin to produce it with the chisel in the first lesson.

Illustration 320



A Picture Frame Designed and Carved by Grammar Grade Pupil





### Examples of Wood Carving

This illustration is from work exhibited at the Philadelphia Bourse, 1897. The two desks have been carved by grammar grade pupils. The settee and chairs are carved by public school teachers, pupils of the Public School of Industrial Art.



Carved by Grammar Grade Pupils

## CHAPTER II

### Instructions for Elementary Carving

---

**H**OW TO CARVE.—Take a gouge, and without removing the lead-pencil marks from the panel, gouge a channel around the design.

Grasp the tool firmly in both hands. There is no one position for holding the chisel (see Illus. Nos 322 to 326), but in doing this work, the chisel should change from one hand to the other, as we work from right to left or the reverse, sometimes one hand guiding the chisel and sometimes the other, but most of the time both hands grasping it tightly and helping to guide it.

Cutting tough oak is splendid discipline. Unless the tool is held firmly, it is likely to slip and cut the wrong place. The wood being easy to cut with the grain and hard to cut against the grain, it is difficult at first to make the chisel sweep around a curve, because some part of it will be hard and resist, while the parts of it that go with the grain will be soft. A very few attempts will enable a pupil to find out this characteristic. It is one of the things that we can properly learn only by experience. All the speech in the world and all the talk of a dozen teachers will not enable one to feel these things. If the tool is not very sharp, or if the wood is a little too hard to be cut with a simple pressure of the hands, one hand can hold the chisel and the other drive it, like a mallet, or the mallet even may be used.

It is better, however, in the beginning, to practice as much as possible by pushing the chisel through the wood, so that both hands can get the power to grip the tool tightly, and at the same time to guide it. Do not be too anxious to remove the wood quickly. Endeavor to make free curves from the beginning. It is perhaps better to make slight grooves at first

Illustration 322



Wood Carving

This picture shows method of clamping work to the bench, position of tools and method of grasping tools with both hands. Various pieces of work carved by the boys are in the background.

and then gradually increase them in depth as one's power increases. It will be found very soon that while one hand guides the tool the other will hold it back as much as possible. These movements must be practiced continually till the wood is entirely removed around the whole pattern. The gouge can then be used to remove roughly the rest of the background,



working the chisel as freely as possible and taking care not to cut too deeply into the wood. About one-quarter or three-eighths of an inch is quite enough. Do not attempt to smooth up the background in the beginning.

Other tools can now be taken and the forms can be cut sharp and clean around the edge. This is done by taking a curve that will fit the edge, and cutting it down vertically with a few taps of the mallet. Endeavor to make a continuous clean cut with the tool, fitting successive tools to the altering curve of the outline. Do not let it show irregular marks. Do not try to make a wide curve with a narrow-curved tool. From four to six curves will fit almost any part of a scroll. Where the curve is acute, a chisel of quite an acute curve must be used; where the curve is almost flat, a flatly curved tool is required.

In using the mallet, the pupil from the beginning must get accustomed to holding it in both right and left hand. Do not let the pupils become right-handed, that is, so that they can use the mallet with one hand only. A good carver should be able to work both ways, changing the mallet from hand to hand just as the tool is changed from hand to hand, according to direction. Sometimes the entire background can be cut out this way, using the tool and mallet. It is a matter of choice to the individual. An expert carver will not consider the line or the drawing, but from the beginning will sweep out with a large, deep gouge as much of the background as possible, afterward shaping the different parts of the design. As soon as the whole design stands up clean and well drawn, and as soon as all the background has been removed from every part, the pupil must begin to model the raised part.

*Carving the Raised Surface.*—This is the most difficult part of the carving, and to be done skillfully requires that the pupils should feel form in the wood with the chisel, just as we feel it in the clay. Select the gouge according to the curve required on the scroll. Next carefully draw a line on the design representing the modeled edge, or the edge that stands up. Then take the gouge and scoop out the inside curve around each scroll to this line. Do a little at a time, gradually letting the chip grow smaller as we come to the end of the sweep. Usually we carve this out about half the depth of the wood, just as we have in the past modeled the form. Practice swinging the chisel in both bands around the curve, making clean, sharp cuts, the pressure being put on the chisel with one hand, while being

guided and held by the other. Most of the time in doing this work one wrist will rest firmly on the work. This support gives a kind of center and leverage that enables one to cut around the curves without much difficulty,

Illustration 323



Wood Carving

Two other positions of holding tools. Variety of carved panels in the background. These boys are carving portions of a very handsome piece of furniture.

each hand helping, one holding back and the other pushing. Curve out as carefully as possible the inside of each scroll.

Then take a chisel that is almost flat and bevel off the outer edge. This is a little more difficult and great care must be taken not to chip or break the modeled edge. The inside curve of each crocket must be scooped out and the outer edge beveled with a nearly flat chisel. Take care of the tips of the crockets. Do not under-cut them so that they chip off. It will not matter if some of the crockets are broken in the beginning. They can be

made smaller, and, if they break again, cut still smaller, or if necessary the design can be rendered without them. Because one crocket is spoiled, do not cut off all the other crockets. Practice on those also. It is very foolish to see some pupils, because they have spoiled or cut off by mistake one crocket, cut off all the others. Practice making each crocket, trying to keep it sharp and to get the curved edge and the bevel edge with facility.

*Power in the Hand.* —Two or three panels must be carved before one becomes familiar with the grain of the wood. In cutting around a single scroll, the direction of the chisel must usually be changed four times on account of the grain. This seems a little troublesome at the start and puzzles a beginner, but by the time we have cut half a dozen scrolls, the work begins to grow automatic. We no longer have to think about it, and attention can be confined to the shape which we are carving, the hands almost unconsciously having become aware of the texture of the wood in the different positions. This is the power that we wish to get, and pupils must be made to struggle with the wood till they reach this stage. It is an uncomfortable experience to pass through, and the first scroll may take perhaps one, two, or three hours to cut, when later, after facility is gained, it can be done in perhaps fifteen minutes.

*Encourage the Pupil.* —Remember, the wood is tough and unyielding. The pupils must be encouraged. They must be told what to expect. Unless a pupil can see an expert cut the wood, the experience they receive in the beginning of lack of power is very depressing. But the wood will answer to every touch like plastic wax when once the capacity to carve is acquired. Therefore, again I say, encourage the pupils at this stage. Because occasionally a panel is spoiled, that is no reason why a pupil should be spoiled. The first stages of a carved panel are also very depressing to look at. It is the last few touches, the smoothing touches and the stamping of the background that make the essential difference. Scores of times in my experience I have found that the pupils who are most stupid in the beginning, the ones who make the most awkward attempts, who seem to be all thumbs and despair, are the ones who develop into skilled workers.

Do not, then, because the wood is hard and brittle and notched, and because struggling and strength and reliance are required, let the pupils fail to use these qualities. I consider that our children have learned a most valuable lesson when they become able to make a piece of tough wood



assume the desired beautiful shape. In reaching this stage they have had to exercise their patience, they have had to struggle with both hands and arms; they have had to compel their hands to obey their minds; and to do

Illustration 324



Wood Carving—Position in Malleting •

Work of pupils should be displayed around the class rooms, as illustrated.

this, they have had to bring into application a knowledge of form and a care and precision that make them embody these qualities. They must not do all this once or a few times only, but they must form the habit till it becomes automatic.

*The Value of Carving.*—I regard carving as one of the best means, with modeling, to impress permanently and quickly fundamental forms, fixed concepts of form, in the minds of the children. It is comparatively easy to swing forms of grace and beauty on a blackboard or on a piece of paper. There is very little resistance offered to the hand. But is is a

different matter to swing these things in a tough piece of wood. I want the pupils to be able to look at a flat panel or a rough block of wood and to see its possibilities and potentialities. I want them to be able mentally to see the design in the wood, and with the fewest touches to form this pattern, not by picking it out, as too many often model and carve, bit by bit and chip by chip, but by freely drawing with the tools in the wood. This capacity can be acquired, and all good carvers have it, their work looking very different from that of amateurs.

*Use of Finished Work.*—It is important for children to see finished pieces of work. In all my class rooms, even in the night schools, we

Illustration 325



Wood Carving

Position when using the hand as a mallet. The hands should swing as freely as possible over the carving.

put all the finished work around the rooms a certain length of time, as may be observed in the illustrations. The pupils thus get ideas. They can see the application of the work, and can follow it in its different stages.

Another plan that I have pursued, is always to allow the children to own their work. It must not be kept by the school altogether, to be used for exhibition purposes, but should always belong to the child. I invariably let them take their pieces home for parents and friends to see; then if necessary they can be brought back and hung up a certain length of time, usually till after the spring exhibition, when all work is carried home by the pupils. Those who are the most discouraged in carving, who find that it is almost impossible to work out the backgrounds and to struggle with the tough wood in the hard places and in the corners, where it is so difficult to remove, are the very ones who need the work the most.

For educational purposes, experience has taught me that a certain proportion of children will dislike drawing on a surface, a certain proportion will dislike clay work, and a certain proportion will dislike carving in wood. Frequently these are the very pupils who do exceptionally well in the other departments. Do not let them for this reason work only in those departments. It is in cases like this that we need the value of the work as discipline. I have never known a pupil, because he liked modeling and disliked carving, to stop work altogether because he was made to carve. He does the carving because it is part of the course, and the modeling because he likes it, or the reverse. After a while all the pupils are intelligent enough to realize the value of each department as training, and are willing to pursue it irrespective of their likes and dislikes.

*As a Training.*—The bitter must be taken with the sweet. Never allow pupils to elect the branch in which they should work, unless in case of constitutional defect, when exceptions can be made; for instance, when the pupil is a cripple or is physically weak. There is a great disposition among parents, and even among teachers, to let children "do as they will, rather than to make them do as they ought. Moral habits must be formed in children long before you can teach moral principles. In the end the teacher is always justified in the mind of the child when he comes to realize the value of the habit, and later of the principle."\* Carving compels attention mentally and visually, in combination with a certain amount of

---

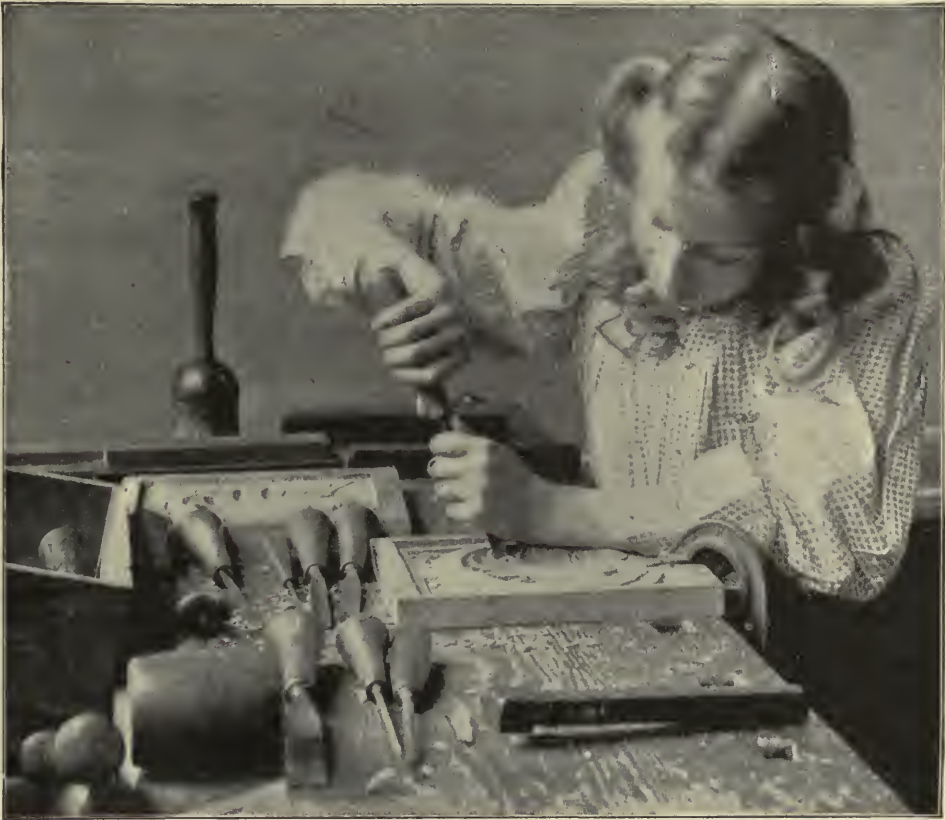
\*Dr. Phillip S. Moxom.



muscular energy that must be exerted, a certain amount of disposition to tug and pull the tough, resisting wood into shape.

Persistent activity that requires the use of a close grip with both hands, and that requires all the muscles of the arm and the thorax to be actively

Illustration 326



One Position of Hand in Gouging

Usually the tools are kept turned in one direction on the bench, with sharpening stone and mallet near to hand.

engaged, is good for the growing children. They are compelled to exert themselves in the very parts of their being that are but little used and are allowed to be torpid most of the time in schools. The chest muscles, the

breathing muscles, the muscles of the arm and the upper part of the body, are all actively exercised in carving. This is doubly valuable to children, because their school work gives them a disposition to lack energy, making them torpid in a measure. I have seen children who are actually too tired through the training they have had, to be willing to grip the handle tight for a continuous period. This is a very bad condition for the pupil to be in, and carving in nearly every case removes it. If a carver has any capacity at all, it will be generally found that he has splendid grip, caused by clutching handles for a certain purpose. We want this capacity in our children, and I believe there is a very firm connection between mental grip and physical grip.

Carving also is unlike sawing and planing, and a good many other operations that merely require the use of strength without much mental effort, since every touch of the chisel in carving must be guided by intelligence. There is no mechanical work about it. The pupil cannot use instruments of precision or other mechanical aid. There is no method by which original carving can be done without the use of the mind.\* To prevent cutting too far he must exercise continuously the eye, the hand, and the intelligence, and the hands must continually follow certain forms or lines and those only. That is the reason carving, in combination with drawing and modeling, takes a so much higher rank than all the mechanical methods or the mere teaching of a trade, or those amateur systems of knife-work, where a few feeble constructions are made that have been thought out by the teacher,—repetitions of other people's ideas, and where amateur tools are used.

*Finishing the Carving.*—When the carving has been modeled so far as the pupil can do it, the background can be finished by stamping or left exposed, showing the chisel marks. The former is done by going all over the surface with the point of a stamp, of course using the mallet to apply force. A stamp may be made of a big nail filed on the end to the desired shape. Rough or fine backgrounds can be made as desired. This throws out the design and makes the background even.

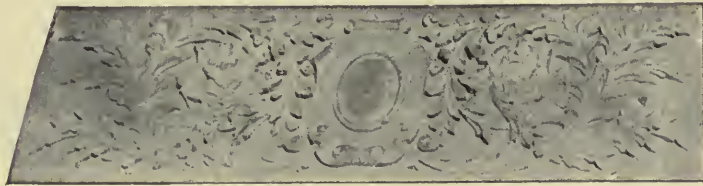
Carving and modeling are much superior means of compelling obser-

---

\* Machines are now constructed that can copy carving very exactly. But the original piece must first be carved or modeled by the hand and mind.

vation than simple drawing; on account of the forms having been made, they become fixed in the mind permanently, when in drawing or in looking, alone, this is not always the case. After modeling or carving, usually the first time, all the pupils remark the fact that they notice shapes that they have never seen before on the most familiar objects—fences, gratings, buildings, and so on.

It is a fact that not one person in a hundred knows the shape of some of the most familiar forms till they have actually made them. By knowing, I mean, to be able to reconstruct in any way the actual form. They usually have only a partial concept, and the universal peculiarity that is remarked among modelers and carvers is the new way they have come to look at things. They perceive things that they had never noticed before in their environment, and they cannot help but speak of them continually. This is simply nothing more or less than that they are beginning to observe to some purpose for the first time in their lives, and are also beginning to put their powers of observation into practice. They assimilate the differences and resemblances of things that they see and embody them in a work of their own hands and minds. In other words, "they have added another weapon to their arsenal of power."



Carved Panel.





Vestment Case, Carved by Pupils of the R. C. High School



Carved by High School Boy

## CHAPTER III

### Carving the Elementary Units of Design

---

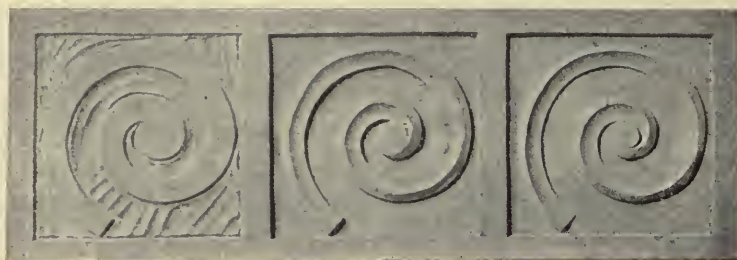
**I**N THIS CHAPTER are given instructions in carving some of the units of design and simple forms used for elementary work in drawing and modeling. In most of my carving classes all the pupils are engaged in making these forms in combination, in designs on panels, etc., to be used for various purposes. For convenience in describing methods, however, the units have been carved to show three stages or steps in the work—(1) the form grooved out, (2) the form nearly finished, (3) quite finished. If these cuts are studied attentively, the work of carving can be readily performed.

*The Scroll.*—The form is first carefully drawn in chalk until it fits the desired space, then in soft lead pencil to make it show plainly. Then a line is gouged around the form as shown in Illus. 329, being careful not to cut the pattern and to get clean, clear curves. Then the background is partly gouged out. The second step is to cut down around the form to the required depth and then to smooth the background. The raised part can then

be modeled, with a curved surface on the inside of the scroll and a slope on the outside, being careful not to cut more than half-way down to the background.

One can readily see what valuable training is given to the hand and the

Illustration 329



Carving the Scroll

The first part shows the beginning of the work, the form being grooved out; the second partly completed; the third is the finished carving of this simple scroll.

eye, when the pupils can swing these curves freehand in the tough, unyielding wood. What a valuable training it is, in enabling the hand to swing accurate and true forms on paper or surface of any kind.

Illustration 330



Carving the Leaf—Three Stages

*The Simple Leaf.*—The leaf in this example (Illus. 330) is made about the same in proportion as the leaf used in drill work and for modeling. When the leaf has been carved the form is more vividly remembered and the



magnitude grasped better than through merely drawing and modeling it. To know this simple form accurately is a help in making all other forms.

The form is first drawn in chalk; when the proportions suit, with soft lead pencil. Then gouge the outline and remove background, as illustrated in the first stage. Now sink the background and partly form the surface of the leaf. Third, finish curves and ribs. Every touch with tool will help the student to embody the shape and draw it better.

*The Spiral with Crockets.*—This form (Illus. 331) is more elaborate and is made in the same way as the spiral. The crockets make it harder to carve, because they interrupt the curves, but with a little practice the forms can be made to flow out with fine tangential curvature. It is difficult, at first, to make the corners free and clean; they will chip off, but a little care will prevent it. The raised edge, or modeled line, is hard to make fine and

Illustration 331



Carving Spiral Crockets—The Three Steps

clean the first few times; it is difficult to prevent it being angular,—gradual transition from curve to curve is necessary. Right here the pupil receives experience in persistence, application, patience, combined with co-operation of hand, eye and mind. All this has an important influence in forming habits of industry and a love for work, as well as its influence manually and mentally.

*The Anthemion.* (Illus. 332.)—Let this be drawn in chalk, then in pencil. Then (1) remove background, (2) next deepen the background and partly model the various lobes, and (3) then finish the panel. To keep the long narrow parts of the lobes clean and slender is hard, but with practice

all the forms can be nicely modeled with the tools. Use a nearly flat curve for this finishing work, and "feel" the curves with the hand continually. The tool should cut convex curves all over the lobes.

All the various units of form should be carved repeatedly in various designs suitable for use as panels or enrichments for furniture, etc. All the models in the various parts of this work are suitable for carving.

*Rosettes* are forms frequently required in carving, and to cut some of them in wood gives a wonderful accuracy and fitness. The calipers are used to strike the circle (Illus. 333), and the little boss in the center of the circle. The wood can then be scooped out with the gouge. On this curved surface the leaflets can then be drawn. With a curved chisel cut down the edges, and with a parting tool make the ribs down the center of each leaflet. Remember, the tips stand up and the background curves in quite deep, the entire rosette being below the surface of the piece of wood. The stages can be seen at 333, first a part lead-penciled, then the midrib partly cut, and the leaflets at the back. These forms are simply intended for suggestions, and the actual forms should be studied from examples that can readily be seen in many places. A second form is suggested at *c* in Illus. 333, partly finished and then completely finished. Pursue the same plan in making this form and its variations.

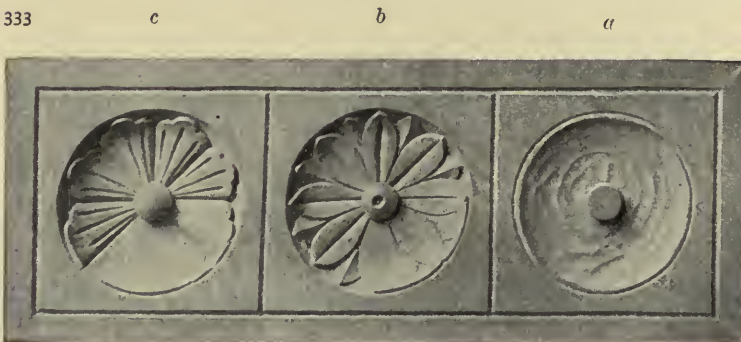
*Square Rosettes* can also be made (Illus. 334). Mark out the form with ruler, put on the diagonals of the square, make the little circle to represent the boss in the middle of the rosette, and draw the inner square. Next cut around the edge of the leaves with the chisel and sink the middle part of the leaf, then trim out with a nearly flat chisel the points between the leaves; next, sink the background still deeper, and put the finishing touches on with the gouge, as illustrated. In all this work requiring the repetition of similar forms, we allow the use of the ruler and the compass, simply to save time. The actual form is cut with the hand many times, even when the lead-pencil marks have been cut away, so that it is freehand carving, and it is simply for convenience that we space off with the calipers. Of course the spacing also might be done with the aid of the eye alone, but it would never look quite as well. It is only in patterns of this kind, like frets, rosettes and moldings, where there is constant repetition, that we ever use the ruler or the compass. In all other work and designs of different kinds, the eye alone is used.

Illustration 332



Carving the Anthemion

Illustration 333



Carving Round Rosettes

Illustration 334

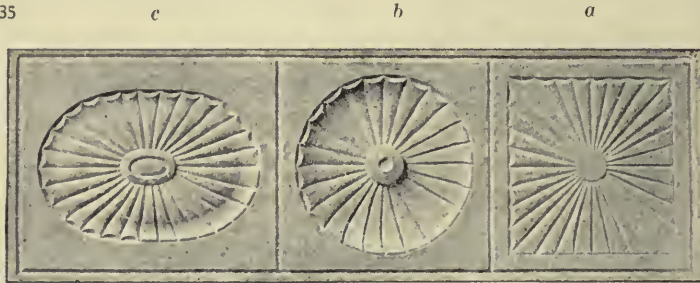


Carving Square Rosettes



The next rosette form in the square is a little more difficult, *b*. (Illus. 334.) Place diagonals of the square, as before, make the center boss and then mark out the darts and the scalloped leaf behind the darts. Then with a chisel cut down the outline of the form and remove the background. In making the center of the darts, cut the middle line first quite deep, and then slope down to it with a nearly flat chisel. The curved edges of the form

Illustration 335



Carving Fluted Forms

can then be made and the ribs gouged out. Pupils should be encouraged to make varieties of these rosette forms.

The next rosette is still more complex, and represents a conventional leaf running out to the four corners, *c*, Illus. 334. Draw the form with a soft pencil first, then cut down with a partly curved chisel, remove the background, gouge out the sides of the leaves, as shown in illustration, and round over with a nearly flat tool. The balls can next be modeled and the veins on the leaves gouged out. The background is then finished by stamping.

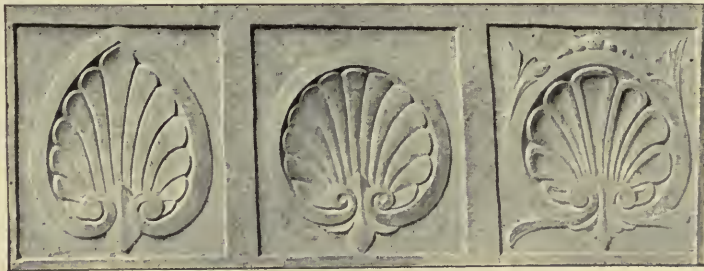
**Fluted Forms** are also used for a variety of purposes in carving. (See Illus. 335.) Mark out the surface to be fluted, then the center, then with a parting tool make a set of lines ray out from the center, and curve over with the chisel, lastly making the curved surface at the end of each ray, as in *a*.

The fluted form in a circle (*b*) is more difficult. It is sunk in the wood below the surface, and a concave form must first be made, leaving the center boss standing up. Then make the rays around the circle with the parting tool and curve over. Lastly finish the edges with sharp, clean cuts. The next is a still harder rendering of the same form and the ellipse, with the fluting

making a double curve, as at *c*, Illus. 335. The general form must first be hollowed in the surface, then the form may be drawn with the pencil and made as before. It is excellent discipline to make each one of these curve and diminish gradually. An exceeding amount of patience is required, which is valuable discipline for any one. A steady hand and a true eye are demanded, and if these are properly employed there is a sure return, and a product that is valuable, useful, and beautiful.

***Conventionalized Forms for Carving.***—The next illustration consists of conventionalized shell forms, 336. These are made the same way as the forms just described. The shape is to be drawn with the pencil, the surface sunk to the desired depth, and then the flutings or lobes are to be carved. Shell forms are among the most beautiful forms that can be made in wood. They seem especially appropriate, and endless is the variety of beautiful results that can be obtained by simply changing the depth and the

Illustration 336



Carvings of Conventionalized Shell Forms

relief of the carving. Sometimes they look very beautiful when scooped in quite deeply, at other times when they are raised up in high relief.

After a few simple forms have been made, like those illustrated, many others are sure to be observed, and fine carved work of different kinds, and the pupil will soon have a desire to make them, and the carving of simple forms will readily enable one to grasp the more complex forms when they are seen. Carving, actually making these shapes in the tough wood, is the best means that I know of for making permanent records of form. This

is the reason that carving is one of the essential branches in this method of training. Many elaborate pieces of carved furniture have been made by the members of the teachers' classes at the art school. They work very faithfully and it is valuable as an offset to their sedentary work at the schools.



Carved by Teacher of the Public Schools





Carving on a Curved Surface

This piece of work, a heavy frame, is clamped in the bench and shows position of hands in carving on the curved surface. The carving is to extend all around the frame.

## CHAPTER IV

### Carving on Furniture and Other Advanced Work

**C**ARVING IN RELIEF ON CURVED SURFACES.—Pupils must get skill in carving in relief and on curved surfaces, as well as in flat carving. They should make several panels in the flat, however, before attempting work in relief. The borders illustrated herewith (339 to 344 are simple and can be used for a variety of

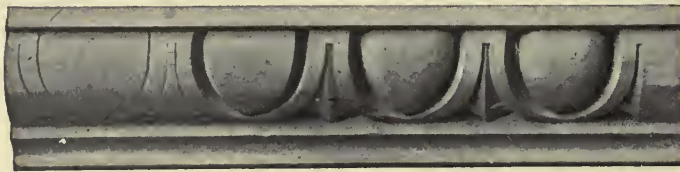
purposes in the enrichment of furniture, as can be seen by the various illustrations. In making the first strip, which consists of a series of beads of different proportions (Illus. 339), it is necessary to use the calipers,—a pair with a screw preferred. The calipers must be sharply pointed, and by fixing it to the size required, being careful to screw it tightly, the length

Illustration 339



Beaded Surface Border

Illustration 340



Tongue and Dart Molding

of each bead can be accurately marked with the point. As soon as this is done, take a flat chisel and make a slight indentation between each two beads. Enlarge this till it is of the size illustrated, and then with several flat tools, of small size, model each ball or curve. It is quite hard to make them even and equal. If one is cut too small, by accident, do not make the rest so. Go on with the work, making them the proper sizes.

A spoiled one can be cut off and a piece of wood glued on again to be carved. Almost all forms carved in wood can be repaired in this way. It is almost impossible for skilled carvers not to break off occasional pieces. These can be glued on again, or, if lost, another piece of wood can be glued on and then cut to the desired shape. It is very stupid to see a pupil cut off all the elevations or points or crockets, as the case may be, simply because one or two are broken or spoiled in cutting.

*The Next Piece of Molding* is the tongue and dart, or egg-dart molding, (Illus. 340.) It is seen frequently in wood and stone, and is considered to be one of the best of all moldings. All of these pieces of wood have been shaped by machinery first, and can be purchased, with the desired curve, at almost any mill. It is not necessary for the student to do this preliminary work; it would simply be a waste of time. This design is also to be marked out with the calipers in the beginning, being sure to get the ovals or tongues equal in size, and to make them of such size that the required number will fill the space. This must be done by marking or measuring off the entire surface first. As soon as it is spaced out with the calipers, take a soft pencil and draw the outline of the raised edges. Next take a parting tool and form the outline of the tongue and the darts. (See cut.) The next step is to deepen this, as illustrated, then to make the curve on the tongue and to form the two slopes, making the dart. The background can next be cleaned out and the further depression made on the dart. This work requires considerable care and accurate cutting to make the darts look even, and is very good discipline. It is best not quite to finish several forms,—simply to block them out and then go over them again when the hand is more accustomed to the form.

The next molding is made on a single curved piece, and contains the dart and double curves, producing a more elaborate form. (Illus. 341.)

Illustration 341



Plain Curved Molding

This must be marked out with the calipers, picking out all the points and distances, after which the forms should be drawn with a soft pencil. The midrib can next be marked out with the parting tool and the double curve made with a small gouge. A larger gouge can then be used and the form modeled over to the groove with a nearly flat chisel. Next work out the



dart, keeping a sharp edge down the center and making the corners sharp and clean.

*Another Easy Molding* requiring great care, however, can be made on the same curve, as illustrated in No. 342. This is to be spaced off with the calipers, after which the form can be drawn with the soft pencil. Use a small gouge to start the outline of the curved forms, and the straight chisel or a parting tool to start the darts. The form can then be fin-

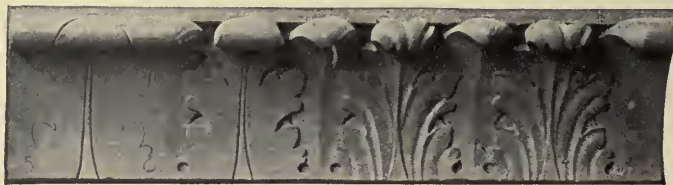
Illustration 342



Plain Curved Molding

ished as illustrated. The next two forms (343 and 344) are complex, making use of the acanthus leaf curling over at the top. This yields a very beautiful series of forms for elaborate work. Mark out carefully with the calipers the size or space to be occupied by each leaf, then draw each leaf carefully with a soft pencil, as illustrated in the first stage. The form can

Illustration 343



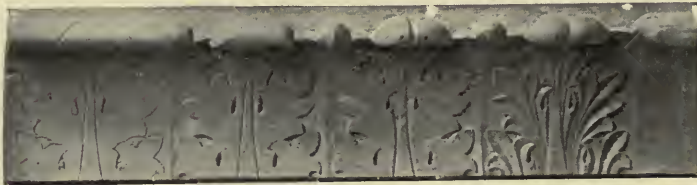
Acanthus Leaf Molding

then be cut in with a curved chisel, using the parting tool to make the rib up the center of each leaf. Next, lower the surface between each two leaves, the rib of the partly seen leaf to remain raised. Then the pipes and undulations on the leaflets can be modeled with different-sized gouges

and flat curves. The top of the leaf can also be cut down and modeled over, allowing the molding to show behind each leaf. It will be found quite difficult to get the edge to run straight. The spaces between the leaves at the top must be made rather deep. The four stages are well shown in the accompanying cut (344).

Another style, on the same kind of molding, is shown in the next illustration. Some find this a little harder and some find it easier to make than the other one. It is to be done in the same way, marking out with the calipers, as before, the space to be occupied by each leaflet, then cutting down with the curved chisel the edge of the leaflet, as shown in the illustration, then sinking the part around the leaf, allowing the partly seen leaf to stand up in the middle. The surface is modeled by making the ridges and forming two sloping surfaces running to the end of each leaflet. It is a little difficult to make all these pipes equal in the beginning. All of

Illustration 344



Acanthus Leaf Molding

this work should be cut in oak at first. This wood is a little tough and is not so liable to chip as walnut, cherry or mahogany. Disaster is sure to happen in a few places at first, but when the leaflet has been carved a number of times, it can be done with ease.

*The Next Piece of Carving* illustrated is elaborate, and should not be attempted unless the pupil has modeled the form in clay a number of times. The shell form is one that is frequently used in carving, and, with the leaf, forms a nice shape to be used for many purposes, for instance, on a cornice, on a chair back or part of a settee, on picture frames, and so on.

It is best not to copy these very elaborate forms from the illustrations. This would prove a little too difficult. They are simply placed here as

examples of carving. Students will see carving of all kinds when their eyes become opened through the work, and good examples may be seen in wood, stone and metal on different buildings, which can be reproduced. It is only by frequent observation that pupils become aware of form and ac-

Illustration 345



Partly Carved Piece, Suitable for Chair Back

tually notice shape. Every time a different piece of work is carved, the student will have increased ability to perceive various forms.

***Forms Suitable for Carving.***—Illustrations 346 and 347 show a variety of frames that can be made of different sizes for many different purposes. Made with narrow borders they are very suitable for water colors

Illustrations 346-347



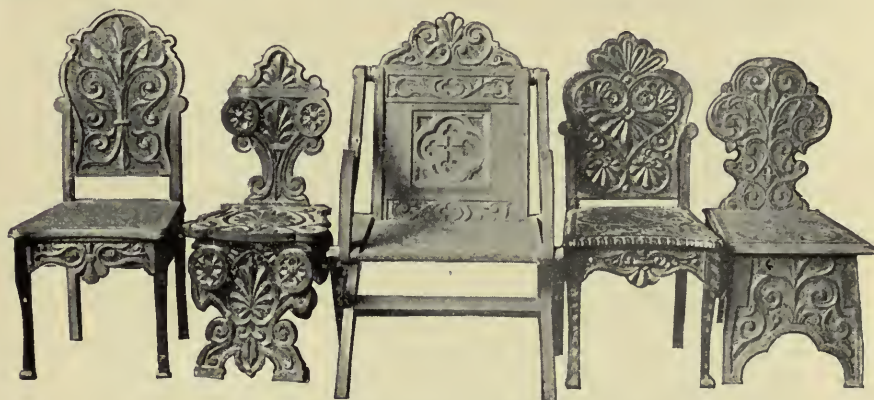
Frames Carved by Night School Pupils

and engravings; made much heavier and of thicker wood they are suitable for oil colors and mirrors; made still larger, and with metal hat pins, they are suitable for hat racks, and are convenient pieces of furniture to have in different parts of the house.



The series of chairs illustrated show a variety of shapes. (Illus. 348.) Some of them may appear to be overloaded with carving. This is simply a matter of economy, and though I know the forms in some cases will be better if they were not carved so much, it is simply to provide surfaces for work that they were made originally. Some of these chairs consist of five pieces, each piece of which is heavily carved, thus affording the pupils several hours of work on each. The blanks for the chairs vary in price, some \$3 to \$5, according to the amount of labor expended upon them. The chairs are usually delivered in the white and doweled together, so that they

Illustration 348



Chairs Designed and Carved by Public School Pupils

can be taken apart with a few taps of the mallet and carved. Two or three chairs will thus furnish occupation for a whole class for a number of periods.

The designs are in no two cases alike. This will be found true with regard to every pattern in any material made by any of our classes, each child according to its capacity creating the forms most suited for use. I do not pretend to defend all the patterns. In some cases they are crude and could be made much better, but being the work that the child sometimes started before the teachers could modify or criticise, it has been finished and must stand on its merits. It is very easy for a good teacher to give good lessons in designing and construction, using as examples the good patterns or the bad ones made by the class. Examples of poor work therefore teach by

Illustrations 349-350



Male



Female

Italian Renaissance Carving by Farari, in the Studio of the Author

contrast. No class of people perceive errors and faults in designing and construction quicker than children. Usually they will be found to select the best. There is an endless variety of forms that afford practice for work in wood. Chests of various sizes can be made with six, eight, ten or twelve panels. Settees also give opportunity for large pieces of work and can be carved liberally all over. A variety of small work can be made, like book-racks, mirror-backs, screens, cabinets, closets, hanging shelves. Clock cases, half size and full length, are in demand and usually find a ready sale. Carving is work especially appropriate for children, for the reason that they are embodying value in the material upon which they work. This

they realize from the beginning. They are also learning the value of persistent hard work, and they get a certain amount of knowledge of art forms and real drawing that cannot be acquired in any other way. Their taste and appreciation of common things around them is enlarged, and the works of their hands usually enter into a great many places where taste and appreciation are lacking, and thus act as missionaries. This is especially true of the night schools.

I am much surprised to notice the small number of schools among all the art institutions of the country where carving is thoroughly taught. It

Illustration 351-354



1—The Plain Block



2—The Form Begun



3—Carving More Advanced



4—The Finished Work

Carving a Cupid's Head

is taught in some, but in the larger number it is entirely neglected. Making form in tough, resisting material is one of the truest and best methods of



gaining permanent and organic ideas of form. Surely this is especially important to the art workers in the higher fields of art. It certainly was a part of the education of some of the greatest of the old masters, who frequently carved in stone and other materials. The energy and diligence begotten by carving, where it is properly taught, are also of the utmost value in counteracting the disinclination to manual effort that occurs so often in children whose school hours are largely occupied with book studies. This fostering of an energetic disposition, along with true ideas of elementary art, is by no means the least important benefit of wood carving and real manual training. Most of us have got to work for a living, and education should give us energy for work instead of a disinclination for it. Not only this, but carving compels accuracy, attention to details, the doing of things well, in contradistinction to the carelessness in the work of one's hands which is sometimes begotten in children who learn from books alone. The carver, whether self-taught or learning from an instructor, will quickly see that slovenly work will show, that the carving will reflect something of his own character. The pupil will also recognize the difference between the result when he tries to do his best, or when he is careless. The wood will tell the truth, always an important lesson.

*Carving in the Round.* —In this part only a suggestion of what can be done is possible. In another volume I shall give detailed instruction in all kinds of wood carving, with many examples of all the styles. Very beautiful examples of wood carving still exist, made by artists of different periods. Wood of different kinds, especially the Italian chestnut, is suitable for sculptor's work, and very elaborate work may be seen in Italy of groups of figures, etc. Examples of fine modern Italian carving are given in Illus. 349 and 350, made by Farari.

The series of four cuts on the previous page show the successive stages in blocking out a Cupid's head with wings: 1, the plain block made of several pieces of wood glued together; 2, the same partly carved with form in the rough; 3, the head and wings showing distinctly, but still unfinished; 4, the work as it appears finished.

Two examples are given of winged griffins suitable for the arms of settees (Illus. 355-356). The first is shown partly carved, with the form only just beginning to show the intention. The block of wood is three inches thick and is a piece of mahogany. It is clamped on the benches, as shown

in some of the other pictures of pupils working, and is being made by one of the advanced pupils of studio classes. The second form shows a similar piece of work of different design entirely finished. The body consists of one block of wood, the wing being an addition after the other part has been carved. Work of this character cannot be done unless the pupils have a vivid memory of form and have had good manual training.

Dolphins are frequently carved in wood, and the following example (Illus. 357) is frequently cut by some of the pupils. The form is changed and modified to suit any purpose, and is comparatively easy to cut. Both sides are carved, and it makes a suitable arm for chair or hall bench.

A great variety of forms, such as iron and brass castings, or gas fixtures, grills and other ornamental objects, are first carved in wood and then used as patterns for making the castings. Several examples are given of forms of this kind, also architectural detail for interior work, such as caps, pilasters, panels, rosettes, etc.

Illustration 355



Arm for Settee

This illustrates the block of wood partly carved, with the head wings, etc., in the rough. The form is carved on both sides.

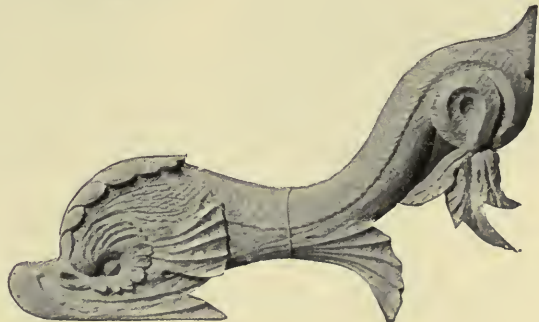
Illustration 356



Another Arm for Settee

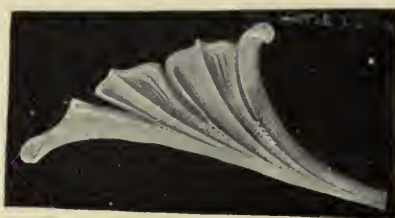
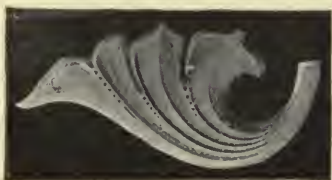
This is another form of similar character completely finished.

Illustration 357



Dolphin Arm for Chair

Illustrations 358-365



Carved Patterns for Metal

These designs are carved in wood for various purposes, to be cast in metal. Many patterns for brass work, gas and electric light fixtures, etc., are carved in wood first.

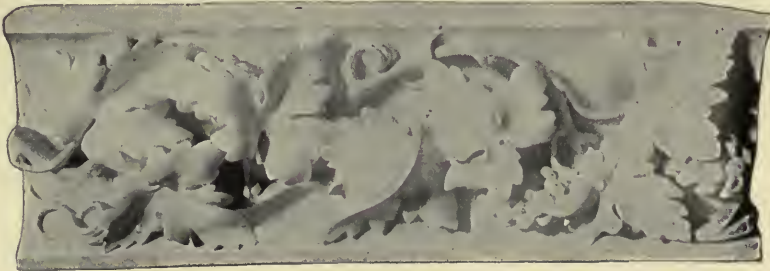


# BOOK FIVE

Various Applications of Art  
Methods, Real Manual  
Training and Nature Study



1. CONSTRUCTION—Mechanical Drawing and Wood-Working
2. CORRELATION of Art, Real Manual Training and Nature Study with Other Instruction
3. SPECIAL SCHOOLS—(a) Night Schools, (b) Vacation Schools, (c) Normal Schools, (d) Summer Schools
4. OTHER APPLICATIONS—(a) Decorating School Rooms, (b) Backward Pupils, (c) Insane and Feeble Minded, (d) Truant Schools, (e) Reformatory Institutions, (f) Miscellaneous
5. THE FINE ARTS—Some Suggestions for Art Students





### Mechanical Drawing

This is part of the senior class in instrumental drawing, R. C. High School. All of these boys have had training in drawing, modeling, and carving. They rotate with other classes into the wood-working room each week. A fine set of architectural forms are exhibited for study in this room, being placed all around the room.

## CHAPTER I

### Construction in Woodwork and Mechanical Drawing

---



Pattern Making

Various patterns made by the boys, to be cast in metal.

EXPERIENCE leads me to believe that constructive work as taught in many schools, similar to joinery or cabinet-making, and mechanical draughting, are of little value educationally, except to the specialist, without previous training in the art work and real manual training I have been advocating in the preceding chapters. When pupils have acquired a certain dexterity of hand and accuracy of eye and are able to draw, model and carve reasonably

well, then it is of advantage for them to attempt constructive work and mechanical drawing. They should then be about 14 years of age, or ready for the high school, and should have acquired complete control of their hands in manual dexterity, and be able to draw fairly well and observe accurately. Then, and not until then, are they ready for tools and tool-processes and instruments of precision.

The fallacy of teaching boys carpenter work or mechanical draught-



ing without this elementary experience in real manual training is illustrated in nearly all the pupils issuing from the so-called manual-training schools; beyond the limited trade processes in which they have been trained, they

Illustration 367



Wood Working

A lesson in sawing. All forms are made from rough timber, the boys cutting it from planks as required.

do not have manual dexterity. Any ordinary test will show this. Few of such graduates can do even the elementary art work illustrated in this book. They lack the ability to make the hand obey eye or mind in doing work outside of the few processes in which it is trained, and are of course almost wholly deficient on the art side.

*A Radical Feature* of our manual-training method is the absence of machinery, steam power, turning lathes, etc. Machine-shop methods have never yet produced and will never produce craftsmen who are mechanically and artistically equal to those of the best periods of history. Of course this

is an industrial age, and our material progress so far has depended largely on the harnessed power of steam, electricity, etc., but in a measure this has been at the expense of the individual. No system of education or progress can afford to miss the lessons of the great periods in craftsmanship, when the individual workers put their soul, feelings and emotions into the work of

Illustration 368



Making Joints

A rough freehand drawing of the joint under discussion is shown on the blackboard. The teacher is testing its fitness.

their hands in stone, metal and wood. We are far from equaling the buildings and masonry of the past, and our mechanics and common people scarcely realize what artistic excellence means in metal, stone and wood.

PLATE TWENTY-FIVE



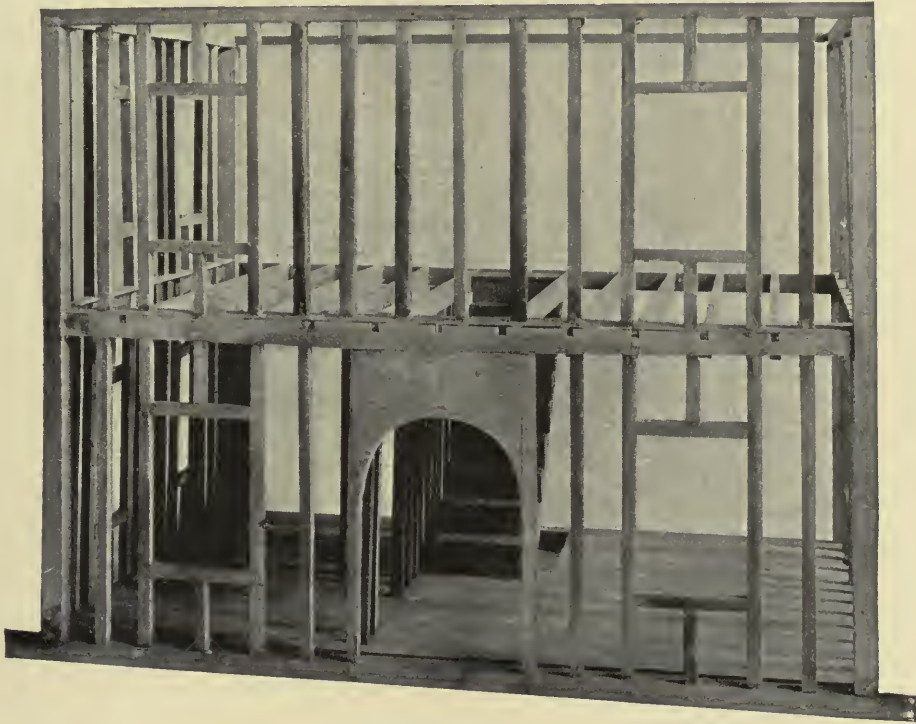
Part of Wood-Working Room

Twenty boys rotate each period into this department from the mechanical drawing room. They have had the elementary drawing, modeling and carving for two years. Courses are here given in cabinet work, pattern making and building. The work is all done by hand, no machinery being employed.



The idea is too common that a manual-training school should be a machine shop. This was one of the many forms of so-called manual training that the author early tried and found wanting. The deficiencies of machine-shop practice for the purposes of educating hand and eye, as well as brain, are now generally recognized among progressive educators, but

Illustration 369



Building Construction

Unfinished model of simple frame building, showing detail construction. Work of this kind is of the greatest practical value to the boys, and gives excellent opportunity to correlate mechanical drawing.

these deficiencies are all the more pronounced when boys are put into machine-shop practice without the elementary training already advocated.

It is not denied that using machines gives some skill, and that they are in their proper place in the trade school, but there are many operations for handwork in constructions of various kinds that produce more skill and

facility, and therefore these are more educational. The time of the young during the nascent period is too precious to be wasted in teaching them how to use machines; it should be devoted to the development of their own organism, to the training of eye and hand as well as of mind.

The whole tendency of modern industry is to make machines of us soon enough, and how pitiful the narrowness of life, the one-sided development, of the millions whose capacity is measured only by their ability to operate an ingenious machine. The fact that many occupations and trades do thus confine both mind and body within a stultifying range, is all the more reason for so developing the mind and body that, while doing to perfection even the routine work one may have to do, he or she may be so trained as to rise above the otherwise narrowing effects of constant attendance upon machines or mechanical processes and be able to appreciate and enjoy the beautiful and good in nature and in the common things of everyday life. It is a great thing to be so trained as to be happy, joyous and enthusiastic—to be so educated as to know how to enjoy life and how to make the most of it in whatever station our lot may be cast.

*Machine-Shop Practice Has Its Place.* —Since long and costly experience has demonstrated the greater educational power of hand operations, the time has come to relegate machine-shop practice to its proper place. In the technical school or trade school, it serves a remarkably useful purpose. That purpose is to impart to the youth who expects to be a mechanic or an engineer the expert training and practical knowledge of machines and processes employed in his trade or profession. Hence there is even more necessity for trade schools, engineering schools, textile schools and similar technical institutes than there is for colleges of medicine and surgery, divinity or law. But just as there are better means of giving elementary and high-school instruction mentally than that of introducing the studies that specially qualify the doctor, lawyer or minister for their professions, so there are better exercises for imparting real manual training to the youth than the trade processes and machine methods so important to the specialist in mechanics, steam or electricity.

In technical schools for special pupils, machinery of various kinds and the use of power (electricity or steam) may be employed with reason, but I must be understood here to protest only against the misuse of these things during the early stages of many boys' lives. Before boys are 15 or 16 years

PLATE TWENTY-SIX



Illustrating Roof Construction

1—King Post Roof Truss    2—Truss for Curb Roof

(311)



of age, if they have had real manual training any good teacher can pick out the ones suited to be engineers and mechanical workers. Their capacity in these directions will then have shown itself. These, of course, can enter

Illustration 370



Wood Working

The first boy is cutting a dovetail, and the second boy is sharpening a chisel; correct positions are shown.

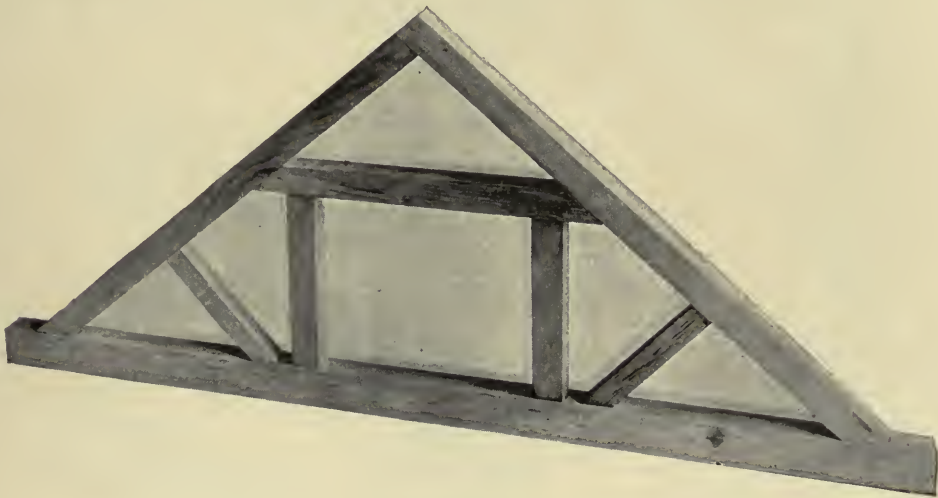
the special or trade schools, but to give machinery and machine work to large classes of young boys irrespective of their capacity and dispositions, before they have had real manual training and a certain amount of art work, is as foolish educationally as to make them all carpenters only.

**Large Economy.**—This point cannot be too strongly emphasized in order to correct a prevailing false notion about manual training. It also shows that a costly equipment of machinery is not necessary for an ad-

vanced manual-training school, and this demonstrates the feasibility of a far more general application of manual-training methods than has heretofore been thought possible. We see too that the introduction of rational methods of manual training in cities now provided with machinery in their manual-training departments, will pave the way for utilizing such equipments of machinery for trade schools or technical institutes, thus accomplishing another good object at a minimum of expense.

This inexpensiveness of equipment for the mechanical department of our manual-training method is all the more important when attended, as it is, by better results. How cheaply this department can be fitted up, as contrasted with the expensive machine-shop plan, may be inferred from the list of tools for a room large enough to accommodate twenty benches, given

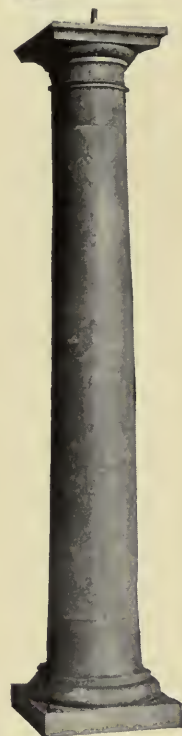
Illustration 371



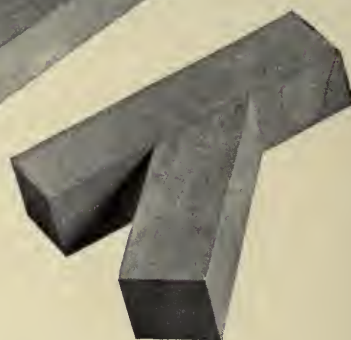
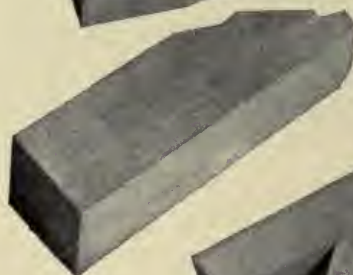
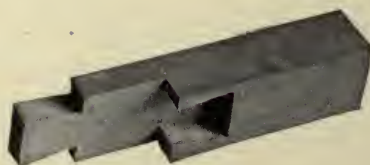
Queen Post Roof Truss

at the close of this chapter. Twenty pupils will form a suitable class for one instructor, and 300 pupils can receive one and a half hours' lesson in one week during sessions from 9 a. m. to 2 p. m. The list has been found by experience to suit classes of high-school boys, and to be reasonably complete.

Illustrations 372-376



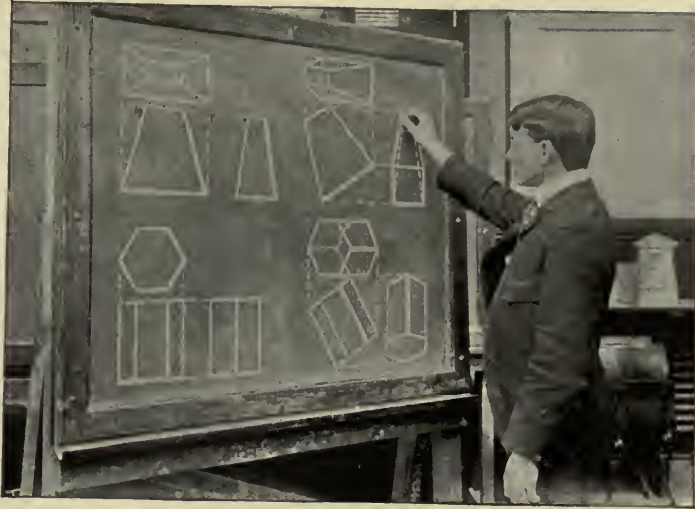
Model of Architectural Column  
Base and Entablature



- 1—Dovetail Scarf Joint
- 2—Scarf Joint
- 3—Complex Mortise Slip Joint
- 4—Simple Mortise Slip Joint



Illustration 377



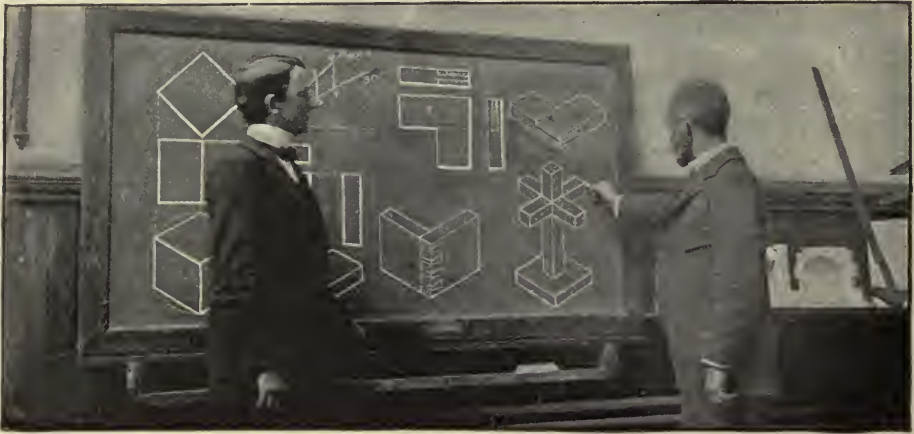
Pupil drawing projections free hand

*Use of Head Work.*—Believing that one who lacks practice in skill cannot become skillful, we do not substitute machines for skilled operations. Even round forms and their modifications are made by hand with hand tools, instead of being turned upon a lathe. This compels the development of a skill of hand and eye not possible to those who make similar forms only on machines. And this makes the hand more ready to work a machine skillfully when necessary. In short, we get a co-ordination of hand, eye, and mind by handicraft that no amount of machine work will compensate for. Along with mechanical precision we also get an artistic excellence of execution and encourage originality of conception not possible with mechanical repetitions, or repetitions of forms made mechanically.

*Rotation of Work.*—In this branch of manual training pupils rotate from mechanical drawing to work in wood during each lesson, just as in their previous training they rotated the branches of drawing, modeling and carving. Do not let them take separate courses of one or the other. The best plan is to correlate the two branches by making the pupils draw the forms in their various stages and then construct them, of course giving thorough instruction in use of tools and instruments first.

The abstruse ideas embodied in working drawings, plans, sections, etc., should become as familiar to the pupils as their previous studies have made them familiar with common forms. Pupils should become accustomed from the beginning to making and reading these drawings and ren-

Illustration 378



Isometric Drawing

A demonstration in isometric drawing, the cube and various points are being explained.

dering them in material. The planning should be part and parcel of the doing. Only in this way will the youth grasp the vital connection between the two and be able to make the most of it. A course in mechanical drafting dissociated from the execution of the work, is as deficient educationally as freehand drawing which is not correlated with other school work. It is as barren of results as to expect a love of nature or of the beautiful in art to be created by the drawing and contemplation of stupid wooden blocks and the type forms by unwilling pupils.

**Objects of Instruction.**—The object is to give a deep and comprehensive training, rather than a detailed and one-sided mechanical education. It is not possible to teach a part of all the many pursuits, but it is possible to teach processes which are the best for them all. Thus in wood working, we do not give a detailed view of every process and every tool, but we give a thorough training in the principles, and facility in using the most

important tools. A pupil ought to know that there are classes of tools, and should get a logical understanding of the use and possibilities of the principal tools in each class. If we give instruction in a great variety of tools, we defeat the purpose of this work. The tendency to teach tools instead of processes and skill, seems to be universal. We must adhere to fundamentals, we must teach the pupils to discern between the important and the trivial, the fundamental and the accidental.

Each pupil must learn that the tools in themselves are not the end, but only the means with which we shape ideas or concepts. Hence, we should acquire early such control over tools that our attention can be given to the work we have to do with them, instead of our thoughts being directed wholly to the method of using the tools. In other words, the movements with tools should be made automatic as soon as possible, just as in drawing we acquire unconscious control over the muscles and nerves that guide chalk, pencil or brush. It is only when we have obtained this automatic action that we can concentrate our entire energy to putting thought into work.

**Put Art First.**—In some systems, wood carving is taught in connection with joinery and cabinet making, and is taught in the same mechanical fashion. This is radically wrong. Wood carving is as distinct from woodwork as freehand drawing is from mechanical drawing. Wood carving should always precede cabinet making, and be taught in connection with clay modeling and freehand drawing. In the principal manual-training schools, the mechanical product is given chief prominence, and such work is generally good, but the artistic product is very poor, in many schools receiving no recognition at all. The art part, which is the vital part for the young, is neglected to develop mechanics. Introduce mechanical work only after a thorough elementary training in art and manual dexterity.

Illustration 379



Model of Door.

This is made in wood and is divided in the center to show construction. The sections are dowelled and fit together.



*A Good Teacher* is of more consequence than good tools. The teacher should be a master of the method and of all the exercises in which he assumes to instruct. Too frequently, committees and others think a

Illustration 380



House Building

A lesson on stairs. The house is the result of the combined efforts of four boys. All the joints in the background have been made by the pupils.

skilled mechanic is the only proper instructor in this branch of manual training. It would be difficult to make a greater mistake. I have never known a carpenter or mechanic able to teach this work in the right way. In many such classes the boys make plenty of joints and enjoy it thoroughly, but the educational value of the work is lost sight of and the mind and the hand are not intimately related to the things, facts and processes of life as they should be.

If a true teacher is taken, however, instead of a mechanic, even the subjects of glue, nails, etc., will be made an avenue for much fruitful discussion and instruction. Every point will be made of interest, and its connection with other phases of work and study will be comprehended by the pupil so that he can make actual use of his knowledge. Unless the exercises are correlated in this way with the other studies, bench work has no business in the schools.

*Our Course in Mechanical Drawing* includes the ordinary course in most schools, the study of mechanical perspective, and of the architectural

Illustration 381



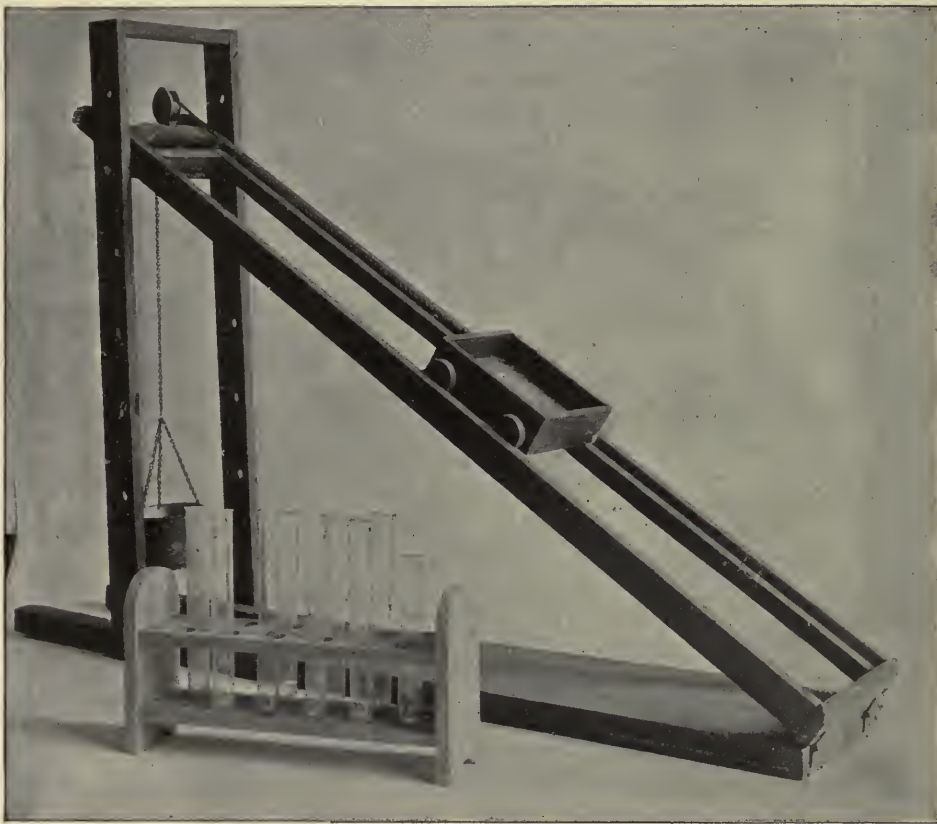
Wood Working

Pupil applying try square to a planed surface.

styles, and some designs and construction. In education, where we must consider the development of the esthetic principles, as well as the practical elements, such a course will be found more instructive than the usual one-

sided and totally mechanical course. The teacher should strive to give a thorough understanding of the principles of mechanical drawing, but should not enter into a lengthy and detailed discussion of machines.

Illustration 382



Apparatus for Various School Purposes

The boys design and manufacture considerable of the laboratory and other apparatus needed in the school. Such work is not allowed at the expense of the educational object of this training. This model is to illustrate the principle of the incline plane and the principle of friction in physics.

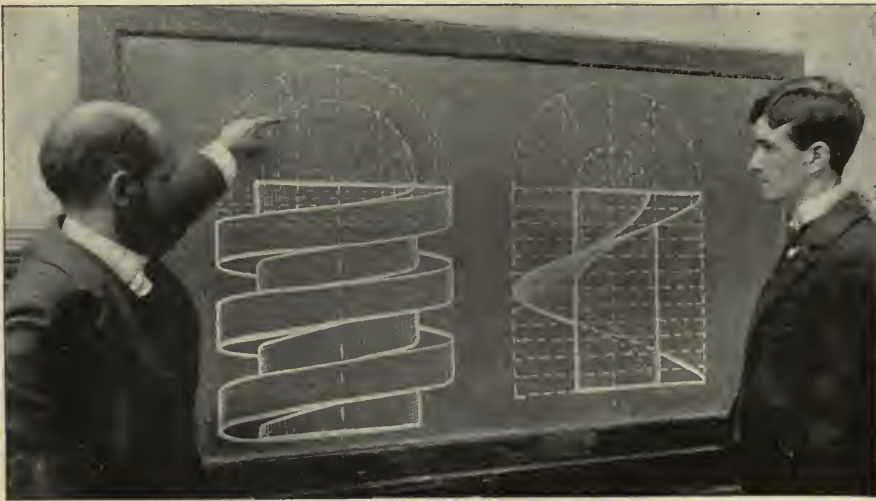
Parallel and angular perspective are dwelt upon at length, architectural styles are similarly treated, and architectural design and construction are discussed. Our object, at this stage, is not to make draftsmen or architects, but to open up the minds of the pupils to the immense possibilities and the



intrinsic beauty of the subject. This course will be as valuable to one desiring to devote his life to fine art, as to one who wishes to become a mechanical engineer, an architect, draftsman, farmer, etc., while at the same time it embraces real manual training.

Thus far, the chief attention has been given to the development of manual skill, co-ordinated with eye-training and mind-culture, and to the study of form, historical ornament, the use of water-colors, and charcoal, etc. Now, when the abstractions included in projections, sections, developments, shades and shadows, and angular perspective, are dealt with, it is surprising how quickly and vividly the pupils will comprehend these subjects, and what freedom and breadth they will exhibit in their renderings. To a pupil with-

Illustration 383



Mechanical Drawing

Demonstrating the principle of a screw and showing application of helix.

out this previous training, a mechanical drawing is a dead object; the execution of such a drawing will be devoid of all artistic beauty, and the condition of the mind of the pupil will, generally, be at a still lower stage; thus the soul and the imagination are confined and restrained, and the possibilities of which they are capable are not even opened to view.

The course begins with a discussion of the instruments. One of the best exercises, and one which brings into use all the tools, is the construction of some simple frets or geometric ornaments. This is much better than a simple exercise in drawing lines, or proceeding at once with some geometrical problem, or working drawing, and gives freedom, and a logical understanding of the instruments and their use.

Geometric problems are then taken. This will be an additional exercise with the instruments. Working drawings follow; first, of a very simple nature, neatness and accuracy being the essentials at this stage; later, more complex figures may be taken, such as joints, etc.

Throughout the entire course there is every opportunity to consider the individuality of the pupils. When the teacher is discussing any subject, the principle should be made prominent, and the pupils should make many notes and sketches. Those who exhibit more aptitude, should make more complex drawings. In this way, each pupil may make a different drawing,—all, however, showing the same principle. With proper management, this will not conflict with the necessary uniformity of class work.

Isometrical drawing, the simplest mechanical perspective, is taken next. This will be found useful in illustrating constructions, projections, and penetrations. Sections and developments follow in order. The choice of particular subjects should be left to the pupils as much as possible. The teacher, at all times, should exercise the greatest care and discretion in the selection of typical figures.

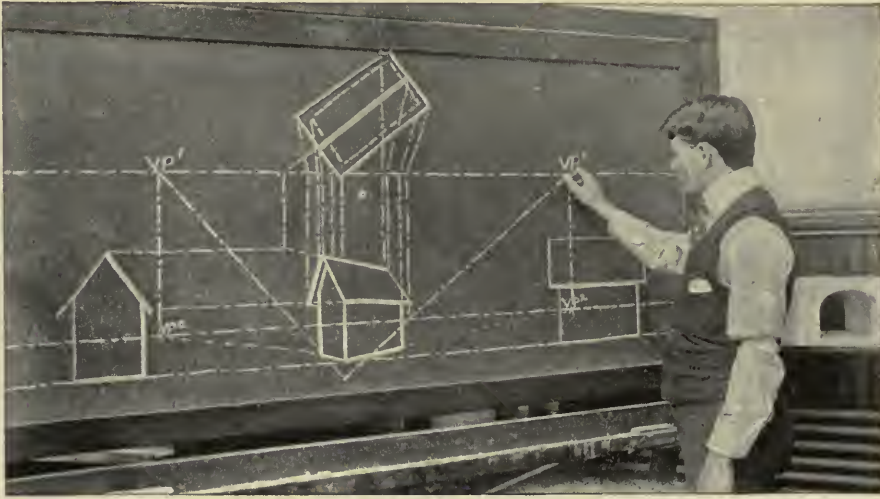
By this time the pupils will be found to work with considerable freedom and insight into the principles involved, and will be ready for the more advanced exercises. The mechanical units are now taken,—screws, nuts, propellers, cams, gears, etc. As all the pupils have had a previous experience in water-color and charcoal, they should, at various intervals, make shaded or colored drawings. Of course, too much time must not be consumed in this way. The class should, at times, get some practical experience. Visits to large machine shops and constructive establishments should be made; in many cities there are abundant opportunities to visit large industrial plants, locomotive and electrical machine factories, and shipyards, etc. These excursions can be made very interesting and will prove highly valuable to the students.

Tracing and blue-printing should be treated at the best opportunity.

Shades and shadows, parallel and angular perspective, should receive a great deal of attention, as they are valuable educational subjects.

*Architecture* is taken next, the chief aim being to give a good understanding of styles, and their characteristics. This is a most valuable study, for, at all times, the character of a period, or a nation is embodied in their

Illustration 384



Freehand Perspective

The boys are given frequent opportunity to make large drawings in perspective as above.

buildings. A good set of architectural models is almost indispensable for this work. The students should visit different typical buildings, and some time should be spent in instructive discussion. Some time should also be given to planning and construction. Pupils should not be allowed to make actual copies of architectural drawings, or plans of houses, but should make original plans of their own, involving individual ideas. No matter how crude in the beginning, this gives them concrete ideas and experience. The same is true of machine drawing; the pupils should not be always copying drawings of machines, often beyond their comprehension,—as is sometimes done,—but should work at principles, on simple forms which they fully understand, and that are typical. Much time is wasted in fancy lettering, and over unnecessary detail.



*Blackboard Work* should be carried on as much as possible. All the pupils in the constructive departments should work at intervals on the blackboard. All the ordinary geometric forms and simple constructions should be drawn full size and freehand, until memorized. Sketches should also be made of architectural details, plans and styles, and the forms should be repeated and modified many times.

The full benefits of such a course can be bestowed only upon pupils who have had the previous elementary art training. To them, the artistic

Illustration 385



A Model for Building  
Construction showing principles of "vaulting."

elements will appeal as much as the practical ones. They will leave school with their minds opened, with skilled and responsive hands and eyes, and with a developed love for the beautiful and the true.

The teacher is as yet comparatively rare who is capable of giving this

phase of rational manual training, just as the teachers are not yet numerous who have mastered drawing and modeling in connection with school work, but the sphere for such teachers is large and increasing. No branch of education offers so fine an opportunity for teachers, both for usefulness and for pecuniary reward. And the teacher who masters both the art side and the mechanical side of real manual training will have the still wider opportunity that awaits the real master in any profession.

*In Teaching the Mechanical Side* of manual training, thorough instruction on and discussion of all tools, materials, and forms made should be constant. Nothing should be taken for granted. I have frequently seen boys making a joint or piece of work without an intelligent idea of its name, use or purpose, and this is also true in regard to tools.

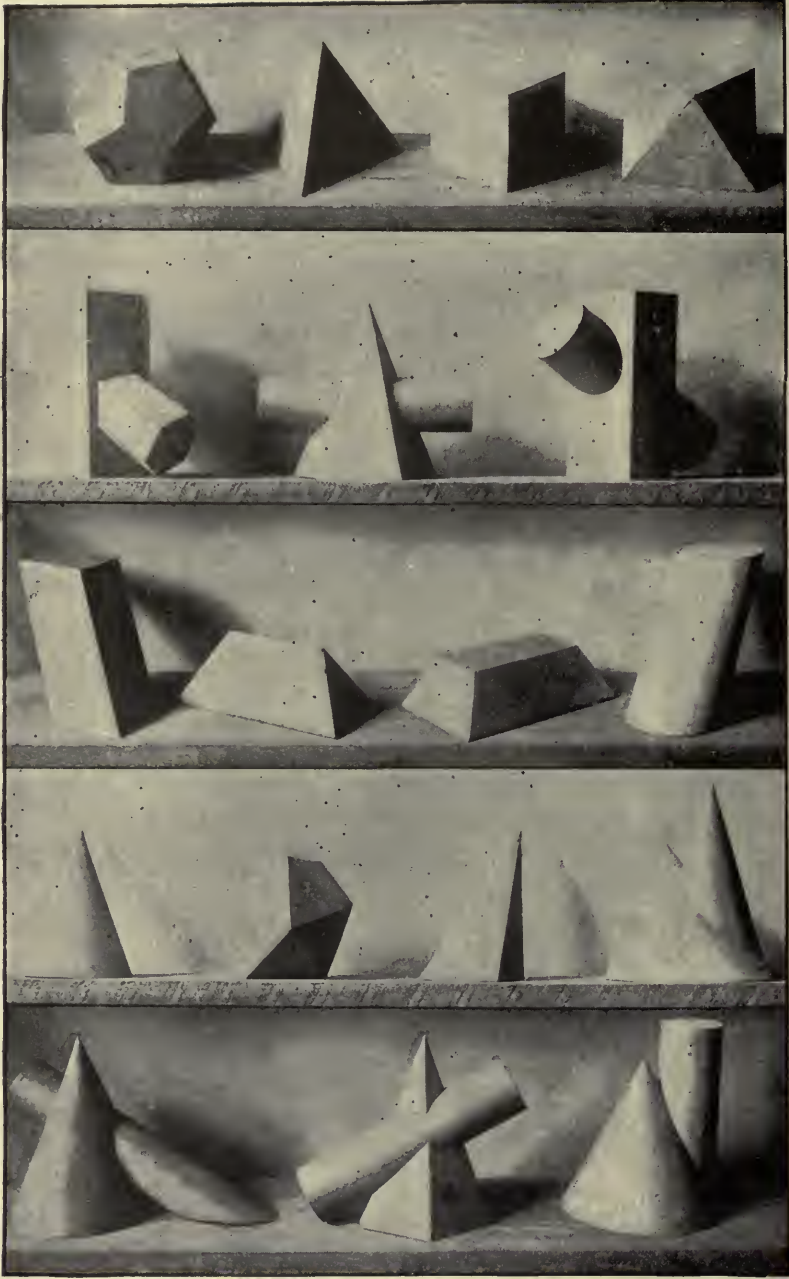
Every tool should be explained thoroughly and its use made manifest in as many directions as possible. Lessons should also be given on the various woods and materials used (glues, varnishes, nails, etc.), and upon the use and applications of the constructions made. Upon all these subjects, and other phases of the work, the true teacher will have become thoroughly informed by actual experience mainly, for no manual or text book exists or can be written that will take the place of the knowledge the teacher will acquire by actually doing all branches of the work.

It is of great importance that the course should contain exercises in making the principal typical forms. Don't attempt too many forms, or amateur or freak forms,—a weakness in other methods. This error is caused by an undue desire to show finished product and useful articles. While this is an important factor, it should not dominate the desire of obtaining the greatest amount of skill and training.

Each pupil should be provided with a note book and sketch book, in which he should write descriptions of the tools and their uses, and also make rough drawings and an isometrical view of each exercise.

*The Simpler Exercises.* —After learning the manipulation of the most important tools and appliances, the pupil is ready to construct the simpler forms of joints—first, the plain butt, miter, half and slip joints, later the varieties of these. These exercises are all very valuable and they are ideal forms at this stage. It is not necessary that each pupil should make a graded series or even one of each of these, but he should get a thorough understanding of them all. It will be sufficient if he makes

PLATE TWENTY-SEVEN



Simple and Complex Geometric Models

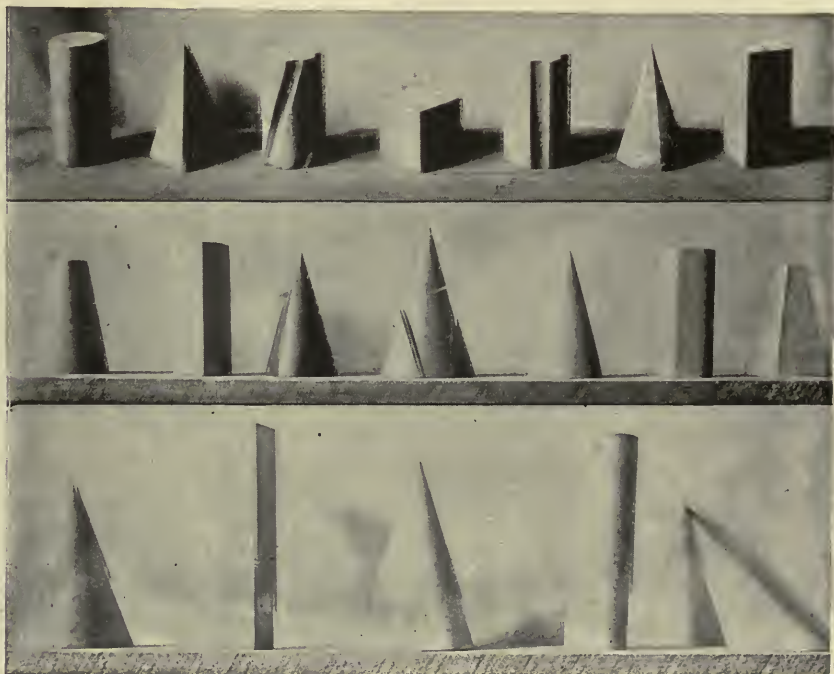
These are models which may be used to good advantage in geometry and drawing for light and shade, and in mechanical drawing, in teaching intersections, sections, surface development, etc. They may be reproduced in wood by hand work, as exercises in manual training.



three or four of the joints—in this way the class may easily be treated individually.

Another feature of value is the construction of geometric forms, such as cubes, prisms, cylinders, cones, etc. (Illus. 386.) The simplest of these

Illustration 386



Wood Working—Geometric Forms

These geometric forms have been made by hand by the boys without lathes. They are made to scale. The cone is made in several sections and fits together, showing the conic sections.

forms are taken—the cube, the various prisms, the cylinder and the frustums. These forms are especially valuable as exercises, because they require logical thinking and render necessary various consecutive steps in their construction, as well as yielding unusual manual skill. It is not necessary that the pupils should make all the geometric forms—a few of the type forms made to accurate scale will be sufficient.

After this pattern making may be taken up. Beginning with a thor-

ough discussion of the subject, the pupil is then ready to construct some simple pattern, such as wrench, crank, sledge hammer, head, brace, etc., a few samples of which are shown in the initial letter on page 305.

By this time each pupil is thoroughly acquainted with all the tools and

Illustration 387



A Lesson in Perspective

A series of frames are made and used in the class rooms for demonstrating perspective in various ways. The object, with ground plan picture plane on glass, vanishing lines, point of sight, etc., are shown in various positions. The teacher explaining parts.

processes, and has some general experience. At various stages of the course, attention should be given to sharpening tools. Pupils should master this work, without which the best tools soon become useless.

**Advanced Work.**—Pupils are now ready to take up the more advanced exercises, and very accurate and fine work may reasonably be ex-

pected. Next in order may be taken the various complex joints, such as the mortise, dovetail, brace joints, the scarfs, and varieties of these. Then advanced geometric forms may be taken—pyramids, cones, grooved cylinders, cone in sections, etc. (Page 326.) Advanced patterns come next, such as model for weight, cast-iron bracket, fly wheel, and parts of machinery (Illus. 388).

Illustration 388



Wood Working

These are forms and patterns in wood cut by hand tools entirely by high school boys. The cone shows the conic sections, and is doweled so that it comes apart.

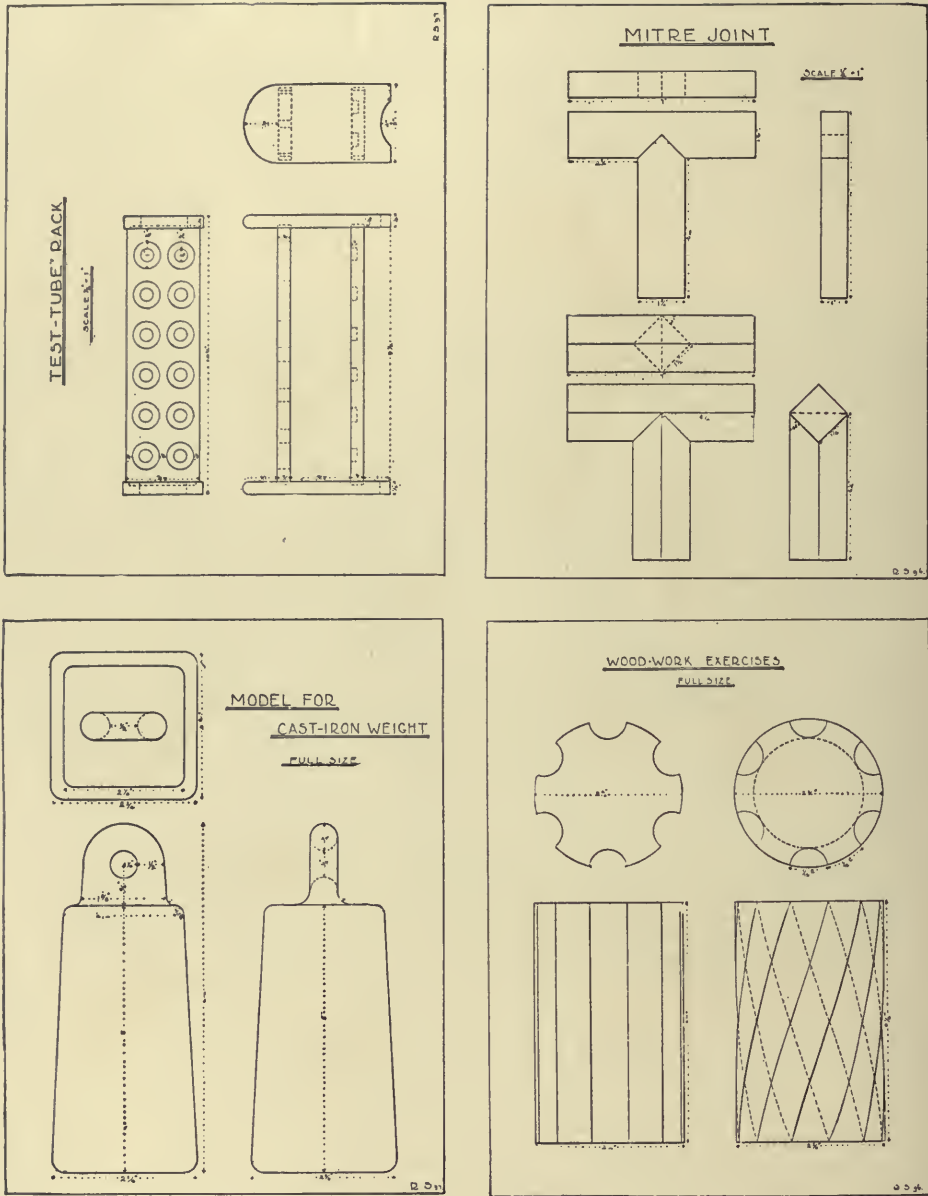
In these more advanced exercises the work may be carried on individually. Since some pupils will have acquired unusual skill, they ought to make elaborate exercises. Those who have not developed so readily should be given exercises best suited to their stage.

The greatest skill is typified in advanced construction. This embraces frames, cabinets, furniture, sashes, doors, roof trusses, etc. Sometimes it is well for an advanced class to combine in constructing some large project, such as a frame house (page 309), or a large piece of furniture, similar to a vestment case (page 282), or case of closets for museum, or bookcases, etc.,—anything suitable for school purposes.

It is not necessary that every piece or part of the work should be made by the boys. Duplicate parts can be cut out at the mill, turned work, if



PLATE TWENTY-EIGHT

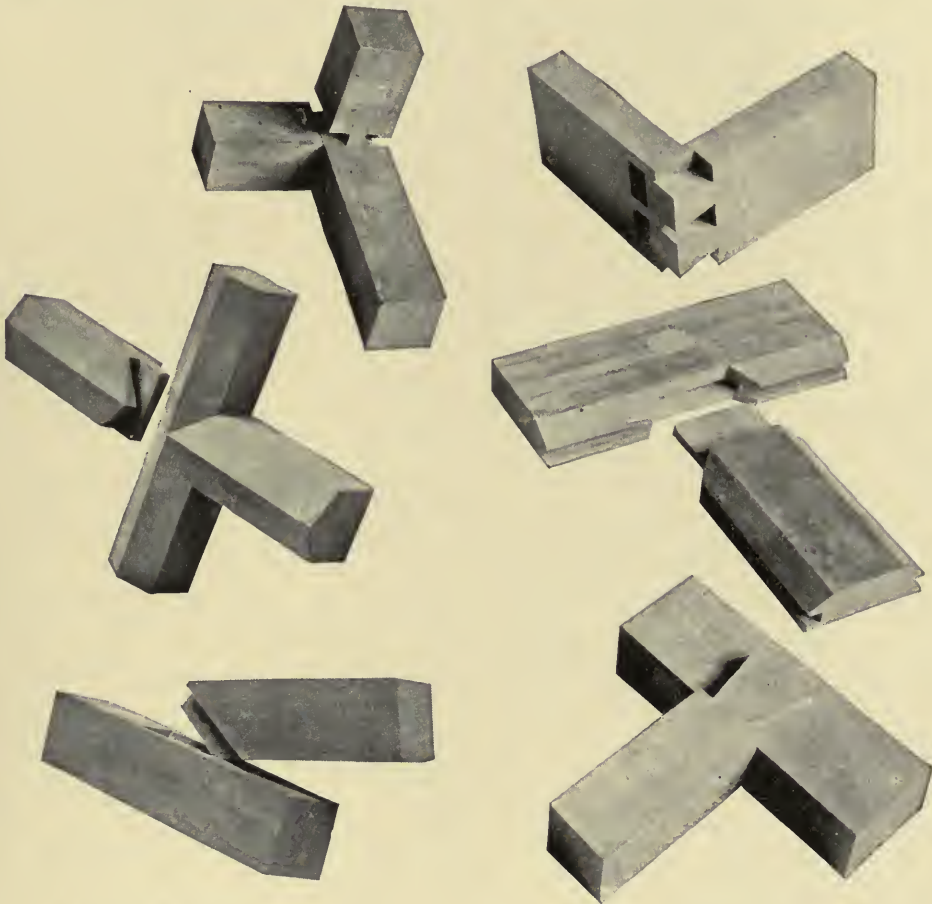


Drawings for Wood Working

Working drawings of typical exercises, one-fourth actual size. Each pupil makes a drawing of the object or a sketch thereof in his note-book. The model for cast-iron weight is to be cut entirely by hand. The test-tube rack, to be used in the chemistry class with other apparatus, is made by the boys. The advanced geometric forms, shown at bottom to the right, are to be made to scale without the use of machinery or lathe. The complex joint drawing shows the principle of the mitre.

required, can be ordered; doors and sashes can be framed by machinery at the mill, but all the draughting, detail drawings, filling and constructing

Illustrations 389-394



Complex Mortise and Tenon Joint  
Complex Mortise and Tenon Joint  
Mortise Slip Joint

Dovetail Joint  
Mortise and Tenon  
Halved Dovetail

can readily be done by the boys in a class of this kind. Nearly all the elaborate apparatus in wood used in teaching physics can be made by the boys in a class of this character, and also many useful things required in laboratories.

## WOOD-WORKING COURSE.

## 1. Use of tools and methods.

Tools—Rip saw, cross-cut saw, Jack plane, smooth plane, Try square, gauge.

Squaring to right dimensions.

Working with scribe knife, block plane, back saw.

Beveling with plane.

Sandpapering.

## 2. Simple joints.

Butt joint, miter joint, half joint, slip joint, varieties.

Laying out work—Gluing and clamping.

Use of bevels, chisels and chalk.

## 3. Sharpening tools.

Grinding, slip stones, shellac, alcohol, glue, varnish.

## 4. Simple geometric forms.

Cube, square prism, hexagonal prism, octagonal prism, cylinder.

Use of compasses, planing round, etc.

## 5. Simple constructions.

Frame, wall bracket, brace, box, etc.

Brace and bit, nailing, firmer gauges, scraper.

## 6. Easy exercises in pattern making.

Sledge hammer, wrench, crank, bracket, quoit, grate and other simple exercises.

## 7. Complex joints.

Mortise joint, dovetail joint, brace joint, varieties of these.

## 8. Advanced geometric forms.

Pyramids, square hexagonal and octagonal, cone and frustrum.

Cylinder with grooves, cone in sections.

## 9. Pattern making.

Fly wheel, weights, cams. Details of machinery.

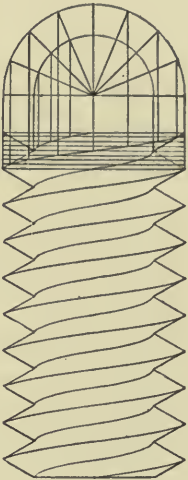
## 10. Advanced constructions.

Brace, roof trusses, bridges, doors, frames, frame house, furniture.

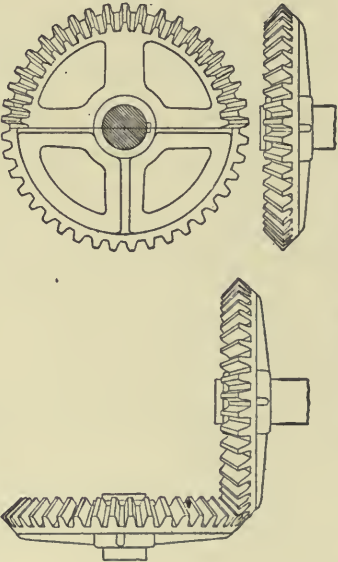


DOUBLE V THREADED SCREW

Diameter 2 1/2 in. Pitch 1 1/2 in.

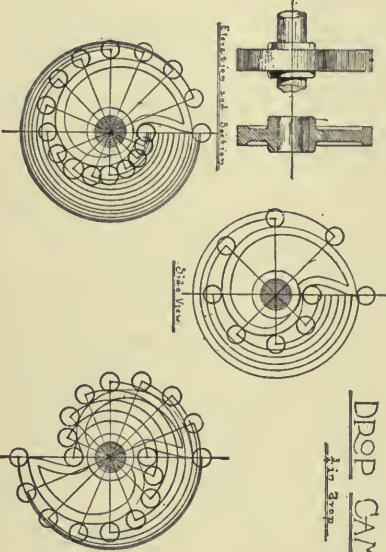


BEVEL GEARING

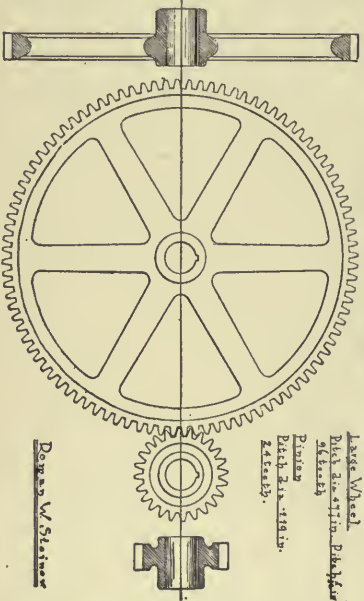


DROP CAMS

1/2 in. Stroke



GEAR AND PINION



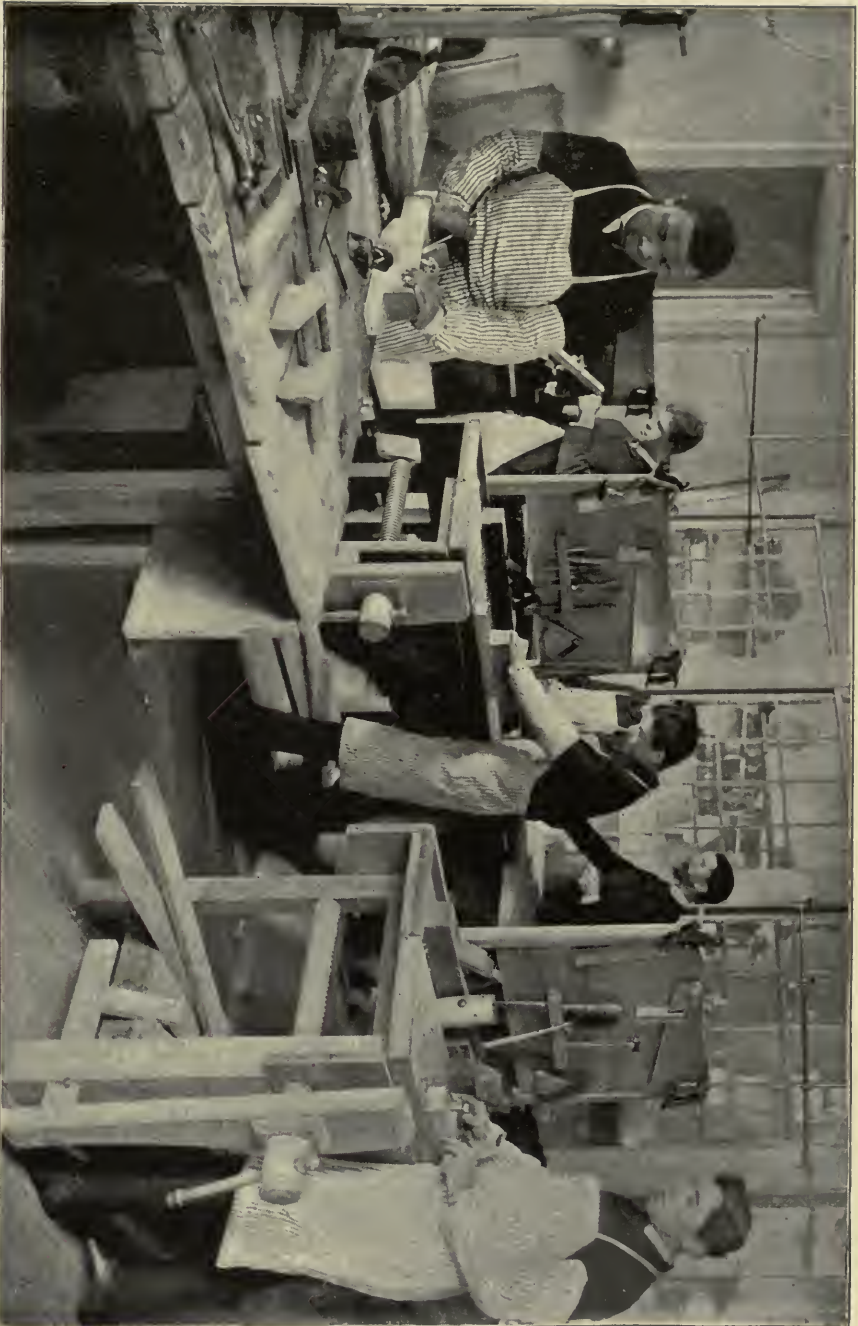
Larger Wheel  
Pitch Diameter 10 in.  
Pinion  
Pitch Diameter 2 1/2 in.  
Backlash

Recessed V. Motion

Mechanical Drawing  
Reproduction of work of pupils (reduced). The V-threaded screw shows true curve of edges. Three different drop-cams show principle of cam motion. The other two are advanced mechanical drawings. Each pupil makes different drawings, applying the principles learned. The

*Tools for Wood-Working Department.*—Equipment for a class of twenty pupils:

20 benches	$\frac{1}{2}$ doz. compasses
20 iron smooth planes	1 combination plane
20 wooden jack planes	2 bit braces
20 iron block planes	2 auger bits, each $\frac{1}{4}$ , $\frac{3}{8}$ , $\frac{1}{2}$ , $\frac{3}{4}$ inch
20 back saws	1 doz. German bits
20 nail hammers	$\frac{1}{2}$ doz. center bits
20 try squares	3 doz. rose countersinks
20 marking gauges	Large iron square
20 scribe knives	1 grindstone
20 bevels,	1 set slip stones
20 screw drivers	1 panel gauge
20 mallets	1 trammel
20 oil-stones	1 doz. files
20 steel oilers	$\frac{1}{2}$ doz. cabinet scrapers
20 rules	1 hatchet
20 bench hooks	$\frac{1}{2}$ doz. brad awls and nail punches
20 dust brushes	Glue pot and furnace
2 cross-cut saws	Shellac and alcohol
2 rip saws	Lamp black
2 turning saw frames	Sperm oil
2 keyhole saw pads	Chalk
$\frac{1}{2}$ doz. turning saws	Paint brushes
$\frac{1}{2}$ doz. keyhole saws	Sandpaper
$\frac{1}{2}$ doz. firmer chisels, $\frac{1}{8}$ to 1 inch	Four trusses
$\frac{1}{2}$ doz. firmer gauges, $\frac{1}{4}$ to 1 inch	Blackboards
$\frac{1}{2}$ doz. spoke shaves	Closets
$\frac{1}{4}$ doz. rabbet planes	3 doz. handscrows
$\frac{1}{2}$ doz. carpenter's pincers	Woods: White pine, poplar, cherry, mahogany, pear, walnut.
2 doz. saw files	



**Carpenter Work—The Old System of Manual Training**

This picture, made in 1882 at the Public Industrial Art School, is interesting because it represents the first attempt at woodwork in the public schools of Philadelphia. Giving the lessons myself, only a few terms were necessary to prove the futility of these exercises as real manual training. The same rooms are now used for the methods described in this book, with results in every way vastly superior.



## COURSE IN MECHANICAL DRAWING.

Scales, T and set squares used in constructing simple geometric ornaments or frets—later the compasses. Inking and drawing. Erasing and cleaning.

I—Use of tools	VIII—Developments
II—Geometric problems	IX—Screws, cams, gears, etc
III—Working drawings	X—Tracing and blue printing
IV—Isometric drawings	XI—Shades and shadows
V—Projections	XII—Parallel perspective
VI—Penetrations	XIII—Angular perspective
VII—Sections	XIV—Architecture

## EQUIPMENT REQUIRED

Twenty sets of instruments, including divider with pen, pencil, and needle-point parts and lengthening bar, a plain divider, steel bow pencils and steel bow pen, ruling pen with joint, box with leads.

20 adjustable drawing tables	40 tinting saucers
20 drawing boards, 20x26	40 brushes
20 T squares	20 note books
20 set squares, 45 deg. 7 inches	Pencils, grade H. H.
20 set squares, 60 deg. 9 inches	Drawing paper, 17x24
20 triangular scales	20 dusting brushes
20 bottles India ink, black	Thumb tacks
20 bottles India ink, blue	Pencil and ink rubbers
20 bottles India ink, red	Tracing cloth, blue printing outfit
Portfolios, frames, water colours, etc.	

---

*Exercises in Metal Work* are prominent in some manual-training schools. Usually these exercises consist for a few terms of portions of the work of machine shop and the blacksmith shop—a little chipping, filing and fitting; molding and casting, forging and welding, ornamental ironwork and tinsmithing and perhaps plumbing. Later on the operations consists of machine-tool practice. With the exception of wrought-iron work, which readily lends itself to ornamental and artistic treatment,

such work is entirely mechanical. No artistic work is attempted, the aesthetic idea is entirely wanting. Carefully graded forms are used, and the patterns and exercises of one manual-training school can usually be found in almost every other. Even the forms made in tinsmithing are nearly all alike.

Experience with a variety of these operations leads me to believe that the proper place for most of such work in metal is in the trade schools. At most of the manual-training schools the authorities themselves will state that "no trades are taught." Why then give portions of trade operations when fundamentals should or could be taught? If the work is given for its educational value, this should be done. A large part of the educational value is secured in the construction course just given in brief. The operations that are not thus covered are mainly of a trade character, rather than educational in their function. In many manual-training schools the present tendency is to build steam engines, dynamos, bicycles, etc. Too many boys are spoiled and too much energy is thus wasted. I have known all individual and educational efforts of pupils and teachers of an entire school to be wasted for a term this way. Much more attention should be given in manual-training schools to the artistic use of various metals, in wrought-iron, in brass, in molding and casting, in forging and hammered work.





BOTANY—Application of Drawing to Elementary Science Work

One pupil is sketching views of the sweet pea. The other pupil is dissecting the plant and preparing a portion for the microscope.



## CHAPTER II

### Correlation of Drawing With Other Studies

---

Illustration 396



Learning "Hard" Words by Illustrating their Meaning

FEW OF THE MANIFOLD ways in which art can be employed as an indispensable aid in education have been suggested in the preceding books of this work. One object therein has been to demonstrate the influence of art methods as an energizing power in forming a disposition and habit

of work with mind and body, and as a means of exalting and enlarging the mind by enabling one to perceive beauty. Besides this, however, art is one of the most valuable instruments, if not the most valuable, for co-ordinating various memories and ideas on all subjects. It helps to unify and solidify various partial ideas and nebulous fancies that are always floating about in the mind of the young, and enables them to grasp, apprehend and use these ideas with the least physical and nervous wear and tear, and with least loss of energy.

Every intelligent reader will recognize the wonderful value of drawing when so taught as to really enable the young to draw as a mode of expressing thought. All must admit that a picture presents a subject capable of illustration far more forcibly than mere words. One who accurately draws a bird, or a skeleton, or a flower, or a mathematical problem, has a more complete mastery of that special topic than could be gained in almost any other

way. Proper drawing being a mode of expression, it affords simply another channel for making a more vivid and permanent impression. In practically every branch of study, the power to graphically and accurately illustrate and to model the forms will be a great help in the acquirement of knowledge and in the mental, moral and physical development that are the real objects of education. No one capacity is more valuable than the power to steadily persevere or persist at work not in itself very attractive. This kind of self-control and self-reliance is especially the product of right art work and real manual training.

No joy is greater or more lasting than the power that comes from perceiving the beauty and spirit of all nature. This is also one of the results of art work. A thoughtful reading of First Principles will emphasize these statements so convincingly as to obviate further discussion here of this particular point.

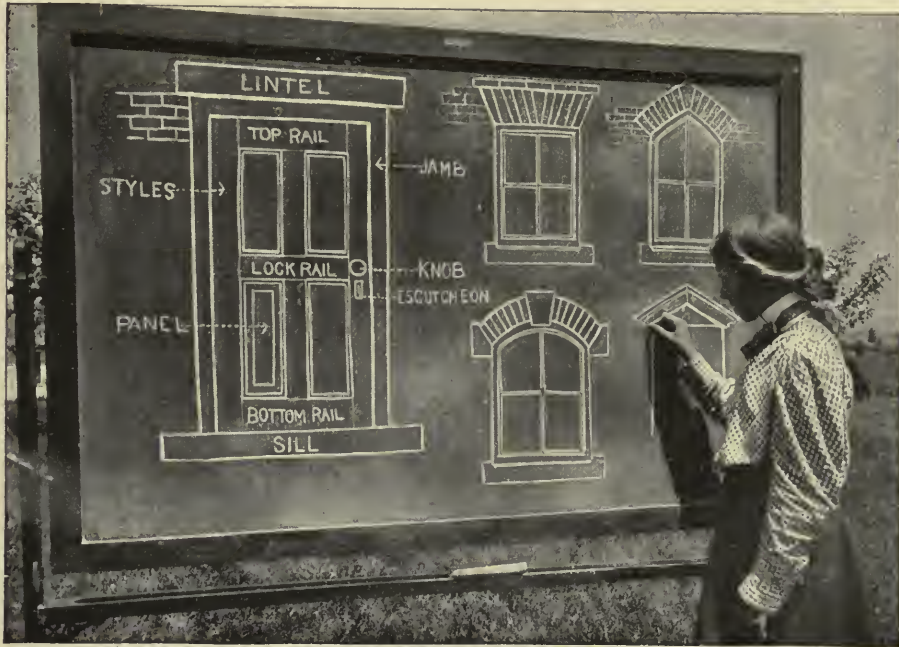
*One Trouble with the Old Methods* of education is that they fail to fix details and facts clearly and distinctly in the mind, so that they shall be permanently registered in the brain, where they can be called upon when needed. Many people retain cloudy and indistinct ideas of facts that they learned at school or from books, but seldom forget what they have learned in their business or household work by actually doing and by experience. No one can know how to really make bread except by actually mixing and baking it; once this is mastered, the knowledge is never forgotten. Just so the doing will make other facts and methods permanent in mind and hand.\* This "doing" will register permanently the essential details of desired facts and processes that constitute the very essence of wisdom, which is "knowledge and the capacity to use it."

---

\* Education consists fundamentally in the association of certain definite sensory currents, excited by external impressions, with certain definite motor currents, which are the adapted reactions of the individual to the impressions which affect him. No wonder then that we find so much automatic action when we look closely into the mental processes of men; the whole aim of education on the part of one generation being to produce upon the next generation the same impressions which it has experienced, and to teach the same reactions which it has performed. It is most necessary, however, to guard against the strong disposition which there is to look upon certain movements, those of the eye and the tongue, as having a special connection with the mental life which other movements of the body have not; they have a specially intimate connection, but not a special kind of connection. Unwarrantably separating by an absolute barrier the mind from the body, and then locating it in a particular corner of the latter, as is commonly done, we are prone to forget that in mental action the whole bodily life is comprehended—that what is dis- layed outwardly exists in the innermost—that every motor intuition has its essential place and influence in our mental life. [Maudsley, *Physiology of the Mind*, pages 470-471.]

*Correlation of Art Methods.*—We thus see that proper correlation of art and manual training methods with the various studies is one of the problems of the new education. It is hard to resist discussing here the best

Illustration 397



Learning Facts by Drawing Them

The visual memory is stored with the actual shape, structure, and details of familiar objects and they can be more readily remembered and named by drawing. We correlate theory and practice.

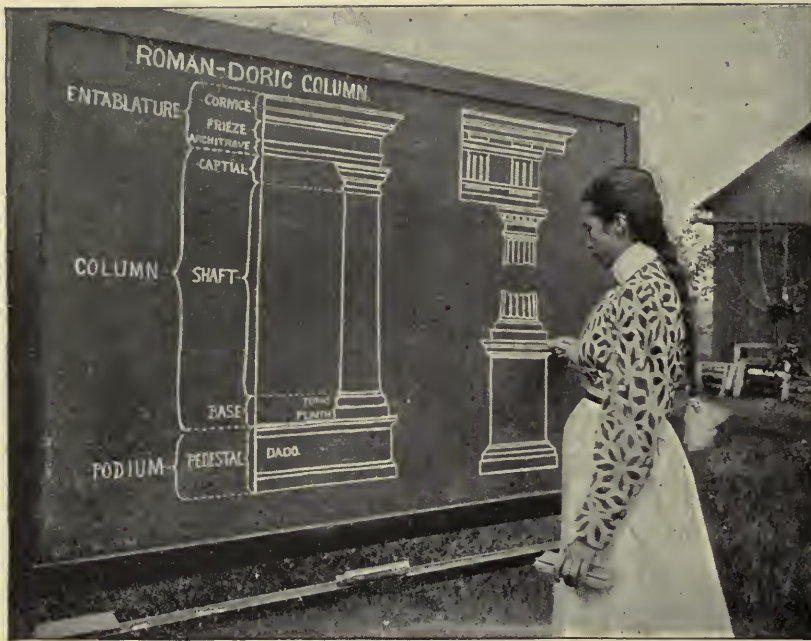
methods for fully securing this correlation, but a volume would be required for each phase of the subject. Some suggestions, however, are given that should prove useful to teacher and pupil alike. The work is being successfully done in some schools and in time will come into general use because it is right.

This union of study and "doing" imparts valuable qualities to the children. It improves their character and capacity, while avoiding much of the evils of the old cramming process, and at the same time conserves vigor of mind and health of body.



*In Language Study*, drawing and modeling have a leading place. The meaning of many important words, their correct spelling and pronunciation, when and how to use them correctly, can be fixed in the mind by

Illustration 398



Architectural Styles

The disposition of a column and its component parts, and of the entablature resting upon it, the various orders in architecture, the names of the parts, and many other correlations are more firmly fixed in the mind by drawing.

drawing the objects the words represent, by modeling them, if necessary, and by discussion and thought about them. When the mind is busy guiding the hand that is fashioning or forming concrete ideas in actual things, there is formed an energetic and cheerful feeling, and a desire to give utterance thereto. The good teacher will make use of these feelings and emotions in getting this good utterance and delivery.

This is especially true of so-called "hard words" and technical terms. For instance, let a child draw and model a stalactite and a stalagmite, as illustrated in 396 and learn what it can about these objects while doing this work,

and it will never forget the meaning of the words or of the geological phenomena they represent. These and many other words of similar character should be used with fluency and ease by the pupils. This can seldom be as long as the words are not firmly locked in the mind by action and made automatic by repetition. Along with such drawing or modeling will go work of great interest to the pupils in the way of writing, spelling, composition, etc, about the subjects in hand. These elementary studies, by themselves unattractive, when thus correlated with drawing or modeling, take on a new interest, and by what may be termed working experience the children

Illustration 399



Correlation of Studies

By drawing we correlate various school studies with zoology, including classification, habits, characteristics and distribution of animals, living and extinct.

readily fix in the mind a better knowledge than can be acquired by a longer period of more nerve-wearing study by abstract methods.

***For Learning Technical Terms,*** no method is more fascinating or more thorough. How few adults, much less children, recognize the names

of even the component parts of so common an object as a door (Illus. 396), yet when the child has drawn this object freehand and printed against each part its proper name, and associated these names with the real door in its mind, these terms are fixed in the memory through the combined senses of touch, sight, hearing and speech.

It should be remembered that this work must be done constantly, not from a few things only, at long intervals. The habit must be formed *by action*, of clearly seeing, knowing and naming the essentials of environment. When the mind can impel the hand, as well as the tongue, to clearly and distinctly express form with a few fine, strong lines, it means a stronger and better mental fabric.

Very few people can recall the shape of ordinary doors or windows. Of course every one has a partial idea of the shape, but few can distinctly recall and put down the variety of common window forms, as seen in Illus. 397. This power to retain visual impression is of supreme value in any walk of life, and is readily acquired by children.

When the pupil can delineate various architectural forms, the orders and styles (Illus. 398), and knows the names of the various parts with the related ideas, many similar forms can be drawn and enjoyed, and the mind becomes able to appreciate and enjoy a wide range of beautiful forms. For want of such training, few get the pleasure and satisfaction that architecture is able to give, as exhibited in fine examples. All these forms should be drawn without the ruler or without measurements, as these pictures have been made.

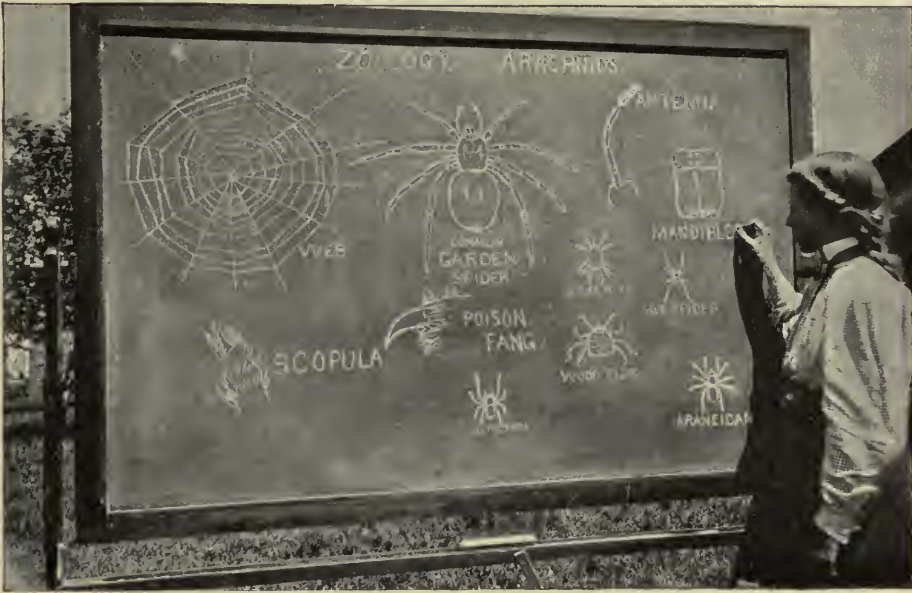
It is needless to mention that many of the forms in botany, zoology, geology, mineralogy, etc., can be drawn and memorized. In the accompanying picture of the spider, the form has been studied and the various parts memorized with a variety of other forms of spiders.

**Qualifying Names** and special groups of animal forms can be memorized and drawn, as in Illus. 399. All the characteristic features of the families can be illustrated. Some of the pictures illustrated in this work have been taken and memorized from the dictionary. Original sketches from the objects also be made and are much better, but the prints are also good. Excellent pictures can be made from photographs, etchings, prints and from sketches. Great artists of all periods have frequently drawn from the flat. It is the abuse of flat copying, not the use of it, to which I object.



*For Nature Study* we use drawing as a mode of expression, the instrument, or one of the instrumentalities, whereby we render more vivid the impression on the mind of outward phenomena through the touch, muscular sense and vision. The slightest diagram or mark then reinforces the impres-

Illustration 400



## Biology

When these forms can be drawn from memory, the technical names, the various processes and facts, and the visual, auditory and tactual impressions thereof, are more firmly placed in the mental fabric.

sion. It is well known that if we write a name or a number we do not forget it quite so readily, and to co-ordinate many impressions and memories by drawing or modeling is one of the valuable applications of art and hand work in the schools. To my mind this is one of the most important uses of art—to help build minds on the mighty foundation that nature furnishes.\*

---

\* "Every instrument, tool, vessel, if it does that for which it has been made, is well, and yet he who made it is not there. But in the things which are held together by Nature there is within and there abides in them the power which made them; wherefore the more is it fit to reverence this power, and to think, that if thou dost live and act according to its will, everything in thee is in conformity to intelligence. And thus also in the universe, the things which belong to it are in conformity to intelligence."—[Marcus Aurelius Antonius.

*Application of Drawing to Elementary Science Work.*—The series of illustrations, Plates Seven, Thirty-one, Thirty-two and Twenty-five, are simply suggestive of the application of hand work and drawing to the various departments of study. They are made by pupils who have had elementary art and manual training from their earliest school period. These pupils do not approach this work as beginners, but as children who have already good powers of delineation developed by manual training. They draw as a mode of thought expression, and their hands are already sufficiently skilled to perform difficult and complex movements in technical work.

*Botany.*—In plate Thirty-one, one pupil is dissecting the plant and preparing a portion for the microscope. The other pupil is delineating views of the sweet pea and its different parts. The pupils are working together and frequently change places. To work the compound microscope, especially when using the high power lenses, requires a great deal of skill. It can be readily done, however, by children who have had the proper training.

To delineate the various fields of view is also within their power. It is a great advantage to have children grow into this capacity. The most difficult operations are approached by them not as difficulties, but as pleasurable exercises for their skill and ingenuity, that offer them full reward when the work is accomplished. I am well aware that some, in looking at these pictures, will raise the objection that these methods are not possible for all children. These suggestions then are for the few who may be so fortunate, if parents and teachers are wise enough, to work in this way.

I am one of the teachers who do not believe that it is necessary for children to try to assimilate the whole series of connected facts on certain topics. In the study of botany, as illustrated, I would rather they should thoroughly know, in its relations and associations, one leaf or flower in its various parts and structure, visible and invisible; that they should thoroughly comprehend and apprehend the mystery that is embodied in its form, structure and texture; that they should get a glimmer or a gleam of the marvel and splendor of its colors when seen by the naked eye or when exhibited by the microscope, a new world, as it were, in their hands,—than that they should have a partial knowledge of the whole botanical field.

These radical ideas will be combated in many directions, but neverthe-



### Elementary Chemistry

These children are testing substances by the action of heat and acid. Notes and sketches are made and compositions are written after the various experiences have been received.

(347)



less, I think it of supreme importance to thoroughly impress children in this way. They have their whole future life in which to accumulate and to assimilate knowledge of the many different subjects. To give them this discursive view in the beginning, without the love and reverence that come from a thorough appreciation of a few forms intimately and organically known, is futile. The wise teacher can teach an everlasting lesson from one fact. It is better to do this than to give so many that the children are mentally stultified. No thinking person can imagine more fascinating or interesting lessons than can be given on the endless facts from plants and flowers, their structure, distribution, habits, use, etc., unless they are the lessons that can be received from the other elementary science studies, in mineralogy, in geology, zoology, or in any department of biology, with all its beauties, mysteries and lessons. It is a simple matter of introducing the child to a new heaven, where the mental horizon extends in all directions, exposing worlds of ideas to be conquered. Few teachers consider the size of a child's mind or try to enter its chambers; until this is done little progress can be made. In the elementary stages of education, the child's mind should not be filled with information or facts from words or print, because this tends to satisfy it and stultifies it and prevents the impulse to action so energetic in the beginning. Rather, it should be made more curious or inquisitive, more eager and earnest to attend, to admire, to act.\*

**Blackboard Work.**—At certain seasons of the year it is important to allow the children to draw as much as possible from foliage, as in illustration 229 on page 166. Single leaves should be drawn, groups of leaves, and even sprays. The first sketches should embody as much detail and anatomy of the leaf as possible, and then sketches can be made showing arrangements. The real leaf or spray of leaves, or branch, can be held in the hand, and with very little practice, single leaves, groups of leaves and sprays can be drawn. The forms must be studied thoroughly and the character of the leaves embodied. As soon as a few careful studies are made in this way, then the form should be memorized and the pupil should attempt to draw

---

\* For discipline, as well as for guidance, science is of chiefest value. In all its effects, learning the meaning of things is better than learning the meaning of words. Whether for intellectual, moral or religious training, the study of surrounding phenomena is immensely superior to the study of grammars and lexicons.—[Spencer.]

them without the leaves. Do not attempt complex arrangements of leaves or sprays, until the character of the single leaf has been thoroughly practiced. Draw the single leaf a number of times first.

The morning-glory leaf, the clover leaf, the birch leaf and a number of others are comparatively simple. They should be thoroughly memorized and the essential features grasped, then more complex leaves, like the maple leaf, the horse-chestnut leaf, the buttercup leaf, and so on, should be practiced.

Many of the most familiar and most interesting plants spring from

Illustration 401



Memory Drawing of Elementary Botany

seeds. The children should be taught to draw the forms and study the structure of a few important seeds. They should then sprout them and watch the development of the plantlet from the seed. Drawings of the seed, the sproutlet seed, and of the plantlet in its successive stages of development should be made from day to day. Characteristic details of any parts should also be drawn. After a few lessons of this kind the children should

be able to represent without the objects the various seeds and plantlets, such as peas, beans, etc., and be familiar with the names of the different parts.

Experiments can be made to show absorption of water by seeds, force exerted by expansion of seeds when soaked, also to show the effect of temperature on the germination of seeds, effect of light and darkness, of water and of carbon-dioxide, etc. By experiments, children can see whether heat is given off in germination, they can show the use of the cotyledons to the plantlet, and drawings, notes and diagrams can be made at stages of the work.

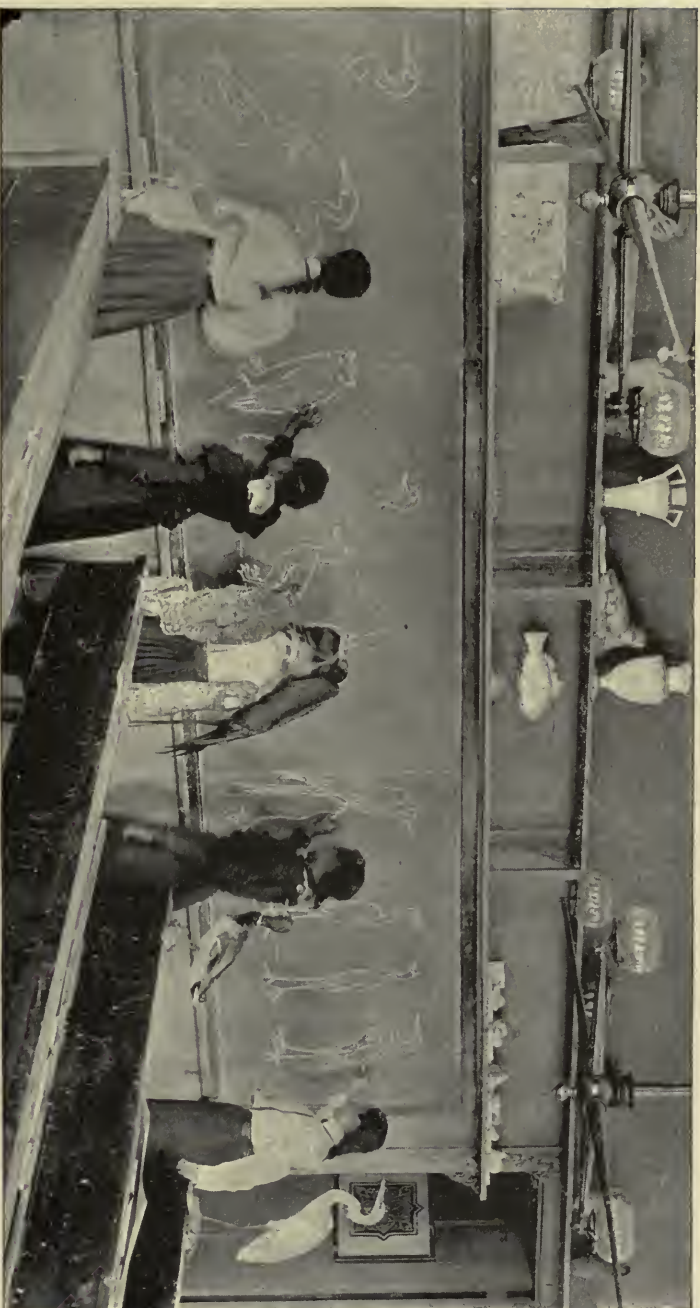
Children should become interested in and draw the structure of roots and their various forms, with the manner in which sap ascends and with the way that the roots grow. They should watch, draw and make diagrams of the way roots spring from cuttings placed in water, and should observe and draw the various aerial roots. All this is far more simply done than would appear from these words by children who have acquired the habit of seeing and doing through the methods described in Books Two, Three and Four.

Many kinds of flowers can be drawn to advantage on the blackboard in this way at certain seasons. Apple blossoms, cherry blossoms, can be provided. Children can bring a great variety of flowers into school. Not only the flowers can be drawn, but also the parts of the flower, as calyx, corolla, pistil, stamens, etc. When the children have seen the parts, have been given their names with the derivation, and have drawn the parts and written the names against each part, the ideas become firmly fixed in their minds. This makes nature study doubly interesting to children. The discovery of the new facts is interesting in itself, and when children can represent the new ideas obtained from objects by means of proper drawing, the study has an added value and interest.

When flowers are not available, the work need not cease, for leaves may be found. It is very good practice in the winter to use even pressed leaves. The maple, ivy, horse-chestnut, and a number of others are always good practice, and, if properly pressed, retain their color for several seasons. They afford fine specimens for color work in winter.

Children should be encouraged to draw as much as possible on the blackboard from the natural form. It gives a free, bold style that is very useful. If they have had the preliminary training and drill work, any forms





### Drawing from Nature

The children become very much interested drawing natural forms, birds, fish, shells, flowers, etc. Some of these are drawing birds for the first time. The forms are repeated in various positions until the pupils can draw them from memory. The models can be placed upon the desks or in various parts of the room, the children changing places.

they enjoy should be used, and especially the memory work, or recalling of visual impressions.

*Elementary Mineralogy.*—Plate Thirty-seven represents one pupil examining a fragment of quartz, and another preparing a slide of some other mineral for the microscope. Drawings can also be made of the various crystal forms in mineralogy. They are exceedingly interesting, and I find children of the grammar grades, who have been taught drawing as a mode of expression, are quite as capable of appreciating and entering into the valuable facts and ideas embodied in this science as any other people. Their joy and admiration are excited as readily by mineralogy as by other studies, and their minds can be expanded and ideas of reverence and adoration excited thereby.

Perhaps the most wonderful color it is possible for the eye to appreciate is exhibited by the iridescent radiance that gleams from many forms of crystals, of metals and other minerals. Nothing is more common in the environment of most children than various kinds of minerals—granite, quartz, chalk, marble, iron, lead, tin, etc. Beautiful specimens of valuable varieties of mineral forms can be purchased cheaply. Some are beautiful in color, such as malachite, azurite, sulphur, chalcopyrite, fire opal, jasper, etc. The children should memorize and embody these colors direct from the minerals themselves, and should make drawings of specimens. They should also handle and compare the samples one with the other frequently, with respect to their hardness, lustre, fracture, structure, texture, color, density, weight, etc.

*Entomology.*—To children this is one of the simplest and most interesting departments of elementary nature study. There is a wonderful amount of spontaneous curiosity excited by these strange and beautiful creatures. Plate Seven, page 55, represents the children working with insects that they have collected themselves and are now studying. One pupil is engaged in examining a portion of the seventeen-year locust, while the other is making a variety of drawings from the insect and its different parts. No forms embody the wonders of color more beautifully than insects. Few forms are more suitable for school purposes and class instruction, or retain their perfect color and tints better than insects. Mounted as they are by certain firms for individual use, they are desirable and very handy for large

numbers to use, and they reveal endless combinations and beauties of color with which every pupil and teacher should become familiar.

All children are pleased with the metamorphosis of insects, and especially that of butterflies and moths. They can collect the eggs and larvae and observe the various stages of development—(1) egg, (2) larva, (3) pupa,

Illustration 402



Correlation with Natural History

Making charts of the various parts of a bird, and the skeleton. The names of all the parts and bones are printed against each. The student of natural history finds this training a vast help in fixing in the mind difficult facts, terms and positions.

(4) imago. Drawings and diagrams can be made of many of these forms and stages, and bugs and beetles that are usually objects of disgust to the ordinary child become objects of delight and wonder to those trained aright. Of course it is still better, especially in secondary schools, when sufficient



time is devoted to this and other natural sciences, that the students capture, prepare, mount and name the specimens for themselves.

I do not advocate the making of miscellaneous collections of insects to be swept away in the course of time, but I do advocate that children should become thoroughly familiar with a few of the forms in their relations and associations.

**Chemistry.**—In Plate Thirty-two the children are engaged in testing various substances by the action of heat and acids. One pupil is using the blow-pipe, an operation in which much skill is required. The other pupil is ready to test the same with acid.

The children should perform many experiments and make observations from them. The value of the whole work will depend largely upon the accuracy of the observations, and the manner of keeping notes. In connection with the notes, careful drawings and diagrams should be made of the various forms and of the apparatus. Many simple experiments can be made in the grammar grades or common schools that have no apparatus or laboratory. For instance, sulphur may be heated and dissolved in carbon bisulphide and allowed to crystallize in its three different forms, which can be studied and drawn. Interesting experiments can be performed on the preparation and properties of iodine and its effect on starch; this knowledge can be used in the work on seeds.

In making this series of pictures from these children, I have been primarily engaged in showing the different occupations. Of course I would like to exhibit ten pictures of the product of the work of these children in each study. This is not possible, however, and the work is merely suggestive. These children can test the various substances, mount the specimens for the microscope, make their own ignition tubes, frames and apparatus of a variety of kinds, and frequently, by investigation of the subject matter, they determine its name and various other interesting and scientific facts.

**Making Charts.**—The pupils in the higher grades, and teachers who have had sufficient training, can make very fine charts for a variety of purposes, as illustrated. For this purpose large sheets of manilla paper can be used. It can be procured by the yard or in rolls, 36 inches, 40 inches and 44 inches wide. A very good size is about 40x44 inches. These sheets can be pinned up on the wall or on a blackboard, and drawn upon just as the pupils draw on the blackboard. Charts can be made for a

variety of school purposes, illustrating all the botanical forms. A variety of nature studies, geological formations, minerals, studies in zoology, anatomy, physiology and astronomy, can be illustrated in this way, and serviceable charts made for use in the lower schools.

The illustrations given herewith (Nos. 397 to 404 inclusive) show

Illustration 403



Painting Charts

One boy is drawing conventional shells. The other, various fish forms. The charts are painted with a brush in India ink or water color and are useful in the lower grades. The names and technical terms are printed under each form.

high school boys preparing charts to be used in the lower schools. The forms are drawn freehand with a lead-pencil, and then painted in monochrome, in India ink, or in water colors, as desired. This is splendid practice, as can be seen from the pictures, and the charts are very useful for purposes of illustration in the school room. I am taking it for granted that the pupils doing this work will have had complete training in all our methods of drawing and manual training, and are capable of making charts that will be

sufficiently accurate to be used for school purposes. This our pupils can do readily, and there is a great demand in the lower schools for these charts. Remember, I am not advocating that poor work by beginners should be spread around the class rooms. Only very skilled teachers or pupils who have power of drawing as a mode of expression can attempt to make these charts. Usually in my schools they have had four, five or six years' solid training in the other departments, and are therefore quite fit to do the expert work illustrated. Where such experts are not available, printed charts can be secured that will represent the different subjects with fidelity.

I do not believe in much copying from the flat, but I do believe that it is possible for children in the lower grades of the primary schools to be very much benefited by looking at and occasionally working from fine charts, of forms that cannot readily be introduced into the school room. Beautiful drawings of such animals as reptiles, insects, birds and fishes, can be made and give pupils in the higher grades splendid practice. They can be made sufficiently well for use in the lower grades in any thoroughly organized school.

It will be noticed in looking at the illustrations of these charts that the forms are all large, made to be seen readily from any part of a large room. The essential features are well marked, leaving out trifling detail, this being valuable practice to the pupils making the charts, especially if they have to stand up and do the work boldly and freely. Similar charts are made of all the historic styles, the units of design, and important architectural forms. In the mechanical departments the charts show modes of construction in wood and metal; all the different joints and forms in wood can be illustrated; and problems in perspective and machine drawing, architectural plans and elevations can be made on a large scale.

In making charts of this character, it is important to select the very best forms for illustration in the stages that are most appropriate for school uses. For nature studies or elementary science work many beautiful charts can be made. In zoology, for instance, examples of the radiates can be given, like the star fish, sea urchin, etc.; mollusks,—the snail, mussel, clam, etc. Examples of articulates can also be given,—the lobster, crab, grasshopper, bee, spider, etc. Examples of vertebrates—among the fishes drawings can be made of trout, bass, herring, and shark. Batrachians and amphibians can be drawn in various stages; examples—the toad, frog,



salamander, etc.; examples in reptiles—the snake, alligator, tortoise, lizard; examples of birds—the chicken, duck, turkey, parrot, robin, swallow, etc.; examples of mammals—the cat, dog, sheep, horse, deer, lion, etc. In botany, flowers can be drawn,—their general shape and appearance, and their different parts. Leaves of different kinds can be drawn,—simple leaves, compound leaves and other varieties. The germination and growth of plants can be illustrated; seeds and their various parts can be explained. Other charts can be made to show kinds of plants, their habits and their use; and diagrams to show their anatomy, their structure, texture, etc. These are simply suggestions that will be found elsewhere in the course for different grades, and that show how drawing can be correlated to the other departments without any loss of time.

Illustration 404



Painting Chart of Mechanical Forms

PLATE THIRTY-FOUR



A NIGHT SCHOOL—St. James Church Boys' Guild, Philadelphia

Showing three departments of drawing, modeling and carving, working in the same room. The drawing tables are in the distance. The boys work two hours.

## CHAPTER III

### Art and Manual Training in Special Schools\*



#### (a) NIGHT SCHOOLS

IN EDUCATING THE YOUNG IN THE night schools, there is no reason why we should not give them, along with the means of making a livelihood and an energetic disposition, a knowledge of their own character and the possibilities of which they are capable. All attempts in education of this kind should be in the direction of finding out what the pupil is most fitted for, and then to develop the natural capacity. This is the plan I have followed.

The training advocated is not visionary, it is possible and practical. It has been tried and has not been found wanting, and its beneficial results are so patent as to convince even the most skeptical. In the different classes of the various night schools that I direct, its effectiveness is being constantly demonstrated. Each season sees an increase in the attendance, and added earnestness and interest on the part of the pupils, and a real tangible output of accomplished work,—work which represents not only muscular energy, but thought, and which is moreover actually salable. I have seen many relays of pupils, ragged street urchins, dirty, irresponsible little waifs,

---

\*In this chapter are given some general suggestions, which are the result of fifteen years' experience with night schools, summer schools and vacation schools, after trying many kinds of work with several grades of children and adults.



with no organized classified knowledge of anything except vice, grow into sturdy youths, cleanly from personal preference, decently clothed, amenable to rules, and above all, ambitious, with power to work and plod steadily. They have become so unconsciously (through the performance of systematic and persistent actions, and through their improved associations), under the endeavor to create things of use and beauty. They have learned how to do, how to make their hands the servants of their brains, how to use their intellect to some pleasurable end. The joy they find in the discovery of these unknown faculties is attested by their voluntary application to the school tasks, an application which resembles that of the enthusiastic young mechanic to his "job" rather than of the unwilling pupil to his lesson.

It requires very little thought to convince almost any one that there must be something in artistic work, where the beauty of the product is considered as well as the use, that has in a measure repaid the artist in past periods, since it is well known they have often received little return in the way of money. This is true with regard to the work of authors, poets and others, as well as of artists. There is a certain amount of joy in the labor that compensates. The exercise of the higher faculties is one of the most important functions of life. Children are not to be shut out from this—especially poor children. Neglected children, those who have not had the advantages enjoyed by children in comfortable circumstances, are wonderfully responsive to the training that brings out this spirit.

To get any response from the very young and irresponsible we must appeal to the emotions and aspirations.\* Dry tasks and uninteresting work will not do this; they must be fascinated and charmed. This can readily be done with proper methods. Children are first idly curious, then attentive, then ambitious, in an easy series of steps.

The young are imitative and very susceptible to suggestion. At certain stages they must be doing something, good or evil. Overflowing with energy, it must have an outcome, a vent. This current can be made to flow in any direction. Usually it is environment that controls this expenditure or flow of energy, and the children are, and do, as their associates do. I find there is a wonderful impulse to action stored up at certain

---

\* Art arouses emotions and aspirations but not appetites. Its effect is therefore to purify the feelings.—[Dr. W. T. Harris.

periods in the young, especially among the lower classes. The lower one goes in the social scale, the more energy we find exerted on material things, the more we find the capacity for work implanted.

I have seen boys in some of my night schools come in drenched with

Illustration 405



Night School in a Church Basement

Sixty pupils are engaged in drawing, designing, modeling and carving.

the rain, after a hard day's work selling newspapers, or delivering messages, the slave of twenty bosses perhaps in some shop, and sit down to carve or model until a pool formed at their feet. They will work two hours with energy and pleasure, often at heavy work, and go home happy and well, if moist. The same thing done by a pupil reared in the lap of luxury would send him to his grave, or perhaps cause him some serious illness.

Many men and women at maturity seem to lose this natural activity that is planted in them to do things. It seems to be diverted to aimless drifting from one thing to another, or to reading newspapers and other matter. With many this mental dram drinking seems to absorb so much energy that none is left for the real things in life. It is said, "By their fruits ye shall know them;" and this also,—“To him that hath shall be given, and to him that hath not shall be taken even that which he hath.” Unless one works, even the desire to do so will gradually pass away. After maturity, in many cases, it seems impossible to arouse the activities by any means. See how incessant these activities in the young—so should they be during mature age.

*Importance of Occupation.*—The path is plain for teachers who really desire to change the character of the pupils in their charge. It is not difficult to give the boys or girls a disposition to perform right action. Every deed is a prayer and helps in forming habits of right that will result in a good disposition. Their energies are just as active toward viciousness if their environment is vicious, and it is simply to counteract these influences that the teacher has to work.

Do not let the pupils in night schools or vacation schools be injured by contact with namby-pamby, goody-goody people, who come in at intervals with the very earnest desire to help, but whose ideas of help are so nebulous and obscure as to usually resemble their own tendencies. They will wish to amuse the children, and frequently think the simple contact with their superior presence is sufficient to elevate them. They will frequently seek to patronize the children to the extent of reading to them or playing games with them. In some cases I have actually seen good boys ruined by these well-meaning, thoughtless people, who have attempted to better their hard lives and conditions by teaching them how to dance and sing, and in some cases even going to the trouble of giving them lessons on the banjo, in jig dancing, light opera, and things of this kind.

It does not require much thought to realize that unless we can put these boys in a different environment from that they live in, it is an injury to their characters to make them pursue pleasure for its own sake, without giving them at the same time a disposition to be reliant and industrious in other directions. To give them the one without the other is wicked. This I have seen done even in a church school.



We expect too much from children when we send them to Sunday school one or two hours a week, or to a night class or a guild, where they have simply been singing hymns and listening to diluted ideas or printed matter, which deals with truths of nature at second-hand. We expect too much

Illustrations 406-407



In the Wood-Working Department, High School

The teacher is explaining construction and dimensions of pattern wheel for casting.

Boy fitting joints in a frame made by the pupil.

from them, I say, if we expect them to realize and appreciate righteousness, order, high principles and so on by such "second-hand" methods. They must get practical lessons in these things, not auditory impressions only. The first and the whole part of a teacher's duty in the beginning is to make the children perceive the principles of beauty and fitness implanted in nature, and to train them to make the necessary reactions. Children must be bombarded with these ideas. They must be drenched with the beauty of

things and of life at first-hand, just as nature is continually hammering at them in so many other directions. Then the lessons can be carried from these things to the abstract ideas based on them.

How can we expect children to be influenced by concepts of evil preached to them, when they are not conscious of tangible and visible evils in their environment? How can we expect love to be infused into the mind by beautiful words, written or spoken, if they cannot appreciate the visible and tangible beauty in things around? How can we expect parents who are blind to visible physical evils, actually existing in some of their children, to realize anything about the invisible mental evils and vices that may be developing in their character? The spiritual or mental life has just as many sides, suffers injury just as readily and is as capable of improvement as the physical. Some one has truly said, "It is much easier to let children do as they will than to make them do as they ought. It is necessary to form moral habits in children before you can inculcate moral principles. Later on you can justify your habits by principles."

*Application and Plant Required.*—One of the chief advantages of this method for night and vacation schools is its feasibility of application, slight cost and ease of adaptation to diverse classes. Classes have been established in various churches, guilds and aid societies on week-day evenings, and during the summer months in the forenoons. I propose here to give a few suggestions as to cost and application, in very simple ways. These suggestions can be used by committees of various kinds, or single individuals, who can carry out the work. Usually, however, a committee of one is the best.

I have supposed, for the present instance, that the room, a large room, has been provided by the organization, society or church, and that there are chairs and light, everything else to be furnished. The committee should decide on the number of pupils and the branches. For general purposes I find that the most feasible way is to use the four fundamental branches—drawing, designing, clay modeling and carving.

If the committee decide to do this, and the room is large enough for twelve pupils in each department, plant can be furnished as follows: Four large tables, each 3x12 feet. The tops of these tables must be at least two inches thick, on trestles that can be moved, so that they can be put away at any time. One table is to be used for wood carving, one for modeling

and two for drawing,—twelve pupils at each table. This allows them plenty of room, and if necessary even fourteen can sit at each table. If a school room is taken the ordinary desks can be used, but tables or benches

Illustration 408



Clay Modeling in a Night School

Flash light picture of clay modeling department, in church basement. These boys sometimes draw on paper and carve in wood.

are better for carving. This plant will be for an equipment of about fifty pupils. Of course more than that number can be enrolled, there always being some unavoidable absences each session.

The plant, apart from the tools, required for this number, will be:—as many blackboards as there is wall space (if they can be borrowed or procured; for at least two or three blackboards should be used all the time, the pupils taking turns at this work,—leaving their seats, working for ten minutes at the blackboard and then changing with other pupils); some open shelves to stack the work upon, a closet to lock up tools and materials, and a clay box. This will be all that is required. A simple pine box 4 or 5 feet



long, with a lid, will do to hold the clay. A few shelves can be put at one end to place the partly finished work on.

**Materials Needed.**—For the drawing work: One ream of manila paper, 36 lbs. to the ream (this is good, strong paper, and can be used for designing and for practice work, and will last about one winter for a class of 50, using it very liberally); three gross lead pencils, two pounds of rubber and four dozen small camel's-hair brushes, Nos. 4 and 5, for painting the patterns and designs; two dozen bottles Higgins' black ink, or India ink, or, if it is a matter of economy, common jet-black ink can be purchased; one dozen boxes common water colors (Rembrandt boxes are good for this purpose, costing 25 cents each); five dozen foot-rules,—these are usually given away at the art stores with advertisements on them.

For the modeling department: 18 modeling boards, 12x14 inches (these can be made of pine at about fifteen cents each by any carpenter, battened on each end to prevent warping); two dozen small modeling tools, one dozen large modeling tools, two dozen palette knives, with blades about five inches in length,—the thick, heavy ones are the best; six common cups or mugs to hold water; and six small sponges. For models, plaster casts and natural forms can be used, according to the amount of money that can be procured for this purpose. The forms described in this book are recommended as being the most valuable for the purpose, and can be readily purchased.

For the carving department, the following materials would be required: One common grindstone, foot power; one saw, cross-cut; one hammer, one screw driver, one box of assorted nails, two boxes of tacks and twelve sets of carving tools. There are ten tools in each box,—small sharpening stone, one mallet, two clamps and a stamping tool, this being about the usual equipment for one pupil (Illus. 317). With twelve complete sets and a few additional tools that are used in common, eighteen boys if necessary can work, some of the tools not being in use all of the time. A carpenter's steel square, two sharpening stones and one common jack plane complete the equipment of tools for the carving department.

The wood required for carving will be 250 feet of soft red oak, planed to seven-eighths of an inch in thickness. This can be delivered in planks and cut off as required, of various lengths, according to the size of the work the pupils wish. For convenience, the planks can be cut in two at the lumber

yards, making pieces that can be readily stored away. The planks should run about six, eight and ten inches in width. One hundred feet of soft quartered oak can be used for best work, of the same width and thickness. In ordering lumber, be sure to get the soft oak. It is firm in texture and just right for carving. Some oak is very hard, and it is almost impossible

Illustration 409



Drawing, Designing and Modeling  
St. James boys' guild night school.

for children in the beginning to do much with it. See that the oak which you buy, then, is the desired quality. It can usually be purchased at about five or six cents a foot, wholesale, in the cities.

Chalk and lead pencils to be used by the carving class in making their designs on the boards, will be furnished by the drawing department. A can of oil must be provided for sharpening the tools, and it is good to have a can of boiled linseed oil and a brush to oil the carvings when they are finished, according to the option of the teacher.

For the blackboard department, at least one dozen erasers will be required, and six gross (or boxes) of school chalk or crayon. See that the

blackboards are placed in a position where they will not interfere with the workers at the tables. A clock, one call bell and a roll book, with a small desk or table for the teacher attending to the discipline, roll call, etc., will be all the equipment required. If possible, use slate blackboards. Any other kind will wear out very quickly, on account of the constant use. Canvas or wood surfaces and painted surfaces are very good for use for ordinary purposes, but slate is the best if pupils are to work constantly, the life of a canvas board being only a few months if it is used steadily.

*The Teachers Needed.*—In running a class of this kind, numbering from 50 to 60, three teachers will be required,—one each for drawing, modeling and carving. The pupils can change at intervals from table to table. There can be a regular system, allowing pupils to change every third or fourth session,—the whole class together, or it can be done at the finish of each piece of work individually, according to convenience. While rotation of work is important, there need be no set rule about it.

Do not let the children work in one department only. This they will sometimes desire to do. See that the pupils, however, get the advantage of the opposite kinds of work. We find in the cities the most convenient hour for a night class to be from 7:30 to 9:30. For vacation schools from 9:30 to 11:30 a. m., if one session only. In some schools, however, two or three classes can be received during the forenoon. The school can be conducted one, two or three nights a week, according to the amount of money to be spent for teachers.

The following rules will be found useful in managing the children in the evenings. Do not allow them to enter the room till 7:30. See that the teachers are in attendance at 7:15; this is very important. If a teacher comes late, the class is demoralized. If this happens repeatedly with any teacher, change the teacher. See that each teacher has the work spread out and in place on each table before pupils enter, all work to be cared for and carefully put away after the class is over. Individual instruction should be given to each pupil in rotation by the teacher of each table.

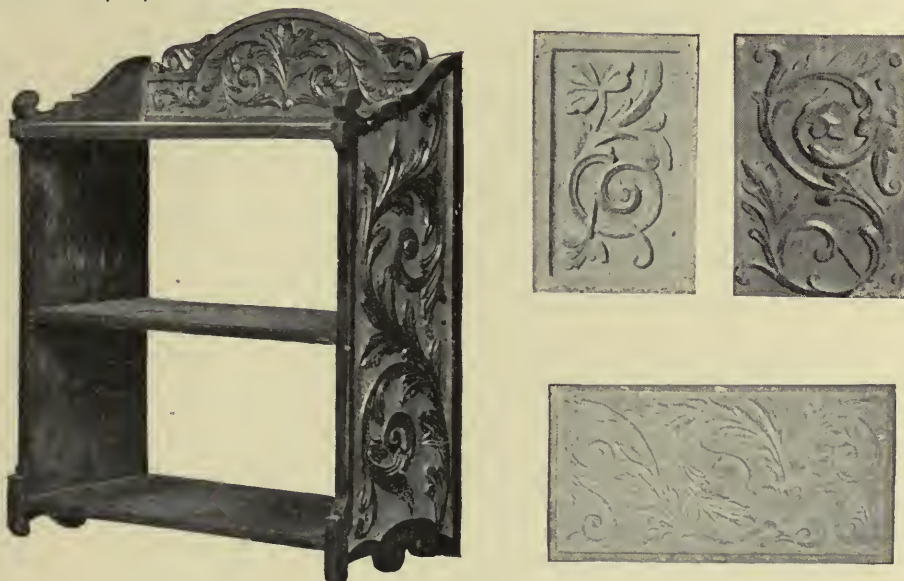
Take the roll about nine o'clock, ring the bell, have all the classes cease work and call off the names. This is the most rapid and best way. At the same time, announcements can be made of any kind pertaining to the work, and it is advisable to make statements at frequent intervals as to



the character and benefit of the work. Instruct the teachers to continually enforce the rule that pupils must sit up in their seats, keep their heads level and their designs and work spread evenly on the table. Damage is done to the pupils physically by their drooping over their work, this shortening the focal length of vision and injuring the breathing capacity.

If the pupils are boisterous in their conduct, stop it at once. The moment they come in, the rule should be immediately enforced that they

Illustrations 410-411



Designed and Carved in the Night Schools

take their seats promptly and quietly, and begin to work. Any boisterous calling to each other or "cutting up" must be cause for removal. In our classes the work is so interesting that the pupils settle down very readily, and there is no trouble at all in keeping order. Even "toughs," that come in occasionally to some of these classes, become like "tin angels" for the time being.

One of the three teachers should have general authority, and see that the pupils go up to the blackboard in rotation. Invite visitors and friends

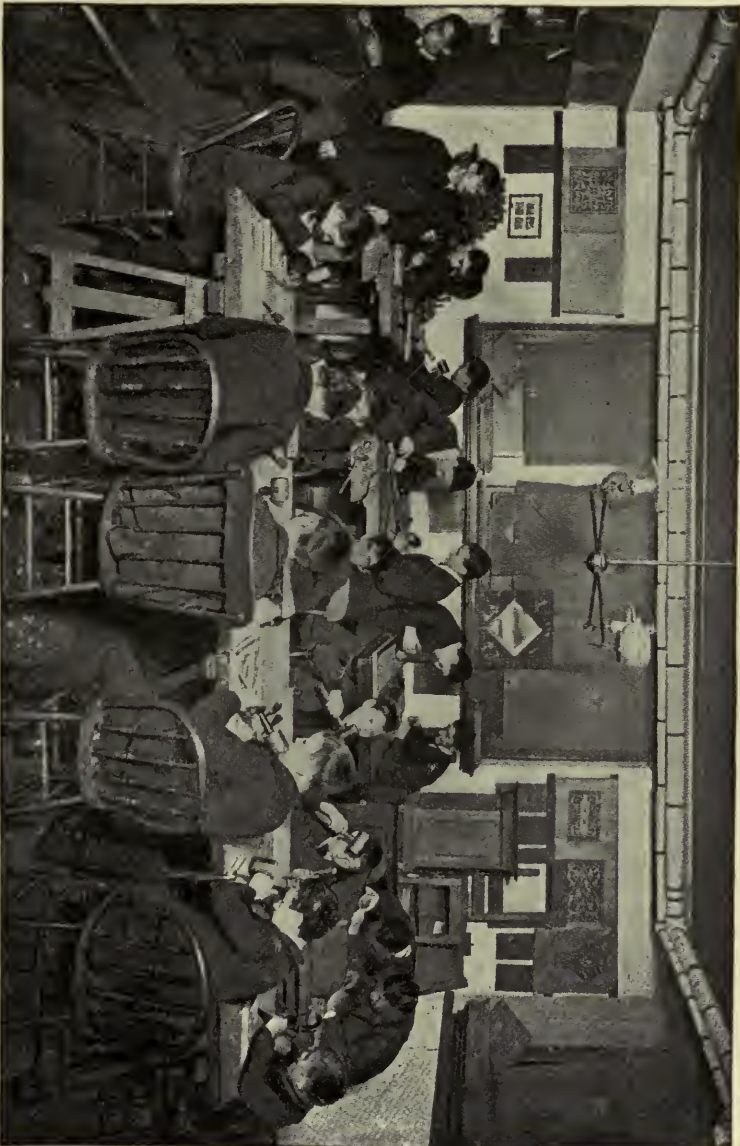
of pupils as much as possible to visit the school. This encourages the pupils and helps to maintain order. See that the pupils are at work all of the time.

As the work is finished in the drawing, modeling or carving departments, have it placed on the walls for exhibition. Do this from the first night. Do it while the children are there. In a very short time the walls will be decorated with pieces of work. As the character of the work improves, remove the poor pieces and place good work in their places. At certain periods allow the pupils to keep their work, and take it home. If any child expresses particular desire to show its parents the work, allow it to be taken home, but make the rule that it should be brought back the next night. Keep all finished work for the exhibition, at the end of the term. After that, allow every piece of work to be kept by the pupil.

This is very important and is a great means of encouraging the classes, because each piece of work will impress the parents as to its value, and they will soon help the teacher in keeping pupils steady in their attendance. I have known cases where the parents have forcibly removed their children in the beginning, through ignorance. I have seen the same children brought back by their parents when they could see what valuable work other children were able to do, and what an influence it was in keeping them out of mischief.

*Teachers in the Night or Vacation Schools* must remember that the object of the work is a little different from that of the ordinary school. Discipline and education are not the only things to be considered. The children are also working for fun and recreation. It must be made pleasant for them. Teachers must realize when they are working with degraded children, that their minds are small, and they must be led from stage to stage unconsciously. If you give a street arab or some waif a piece of work that becomes irksome from its subject, that particular pupil is apt to despair the second session, from lack of self-control and energy. Like the savage who will only work when he has to, they have not been taught the habit of continuous application.

A good teacher must, therefore, be very particular at this stage with all the different pupils, to see that there is an element of satisfaction and pleasure in their work. They must be allowed to do things which are not rigidly graded and are not visibly in the nature of drill and discipline.



NIGHT SCHOOL—Wood Carving Room

St. James Church night school, Philadelphia. Boys carving furniture, etc. Ninety pupils attend this school two evenings each week.



They must be allowed to select what they please as long as it is not too difficult for them to attempt, and even if the result is failure, the teacher will remember that it is the endeavor that counts, not the achievement.

For this reason the drawing teacher will not give the drill forms too much in the beginning. Do not present the dry aspect of the work. Encourage the children to make diagrams of things they like, and even to make copies of things, if they are pleased with them. No attempt should be made to administer the drill forms steadily. That should be done on the blackboard at intervals only. The rest of the time the children could be making patterns and designs for various purposes similar to the ones on exhibition on the walls, and this usually pleases them very much. Occasionally let the pupil draw leaves, flowers, shells, animals, and other similar things. Recently I have found war vessels, torpedo boats, guns, soldiers, etc., drawn by the children spontaneously and with intense interest. Keep up this work, and by degrees they become equally fascinated by other forms; do not curb the pupils in these tendencies unless absolutely necessary. Their tasks, aims and desires can be elevated by degrees. The same is true in the modeling department, and after they have made one or two very simple pieces, they may be allowed, if they desire, to attempt to copy the forms that give them pleasure, no matter how grotesque or poor the product is at first. The teacher will usually be surprised at the improvement shown, as the children, when they have received encouragement to go on by the pleasure they find in the work, later take readily to work that is more in the nature of discipline. For this reason the teacher will allow them to select simple models. Do not compel them to take any one against their will; let them select the model, if it is not too difficult, whether an animal's head or another form. I have known many cases where I have taken boys that were discouraged from the different classes and have personally put them to modeling lions or griffins or drawing a warship or something that gave them pleasure, and after a few weeks' struggling this way, they have become the best pupils in the class.

*Encourage the Pupils.*—I must repeatedly speak of the desirability of encouraging the pupils and leading them from step to step unconsciously, rewarding them in a measure with a chance to do more important work if they complete in a satisfactory manner what they are doing. I continually feel that the ones who do the poorest work and who are the most ready to

give up at the slightest difficulty, are the ones who need encouragement the most, and that they frequently turn out to be the steadiest and best pupils in the end. Consider this all the time. No one can pick out the geniuses in the beginning.

Remember, it is their characters and their minds we are shaping, and the most degraded, wretched-looking pupils are the ones that respond most

Illustration 412



Instrumental and Cast Drawing  
St. James boys' guild night school.

faithfully to patience, as they are also the ones who need it the most. When children reach this stage, it is very easy, in the course of a few years, to see their characters change and to see the same change reflected in their faces. No joy is greater than to transform mind and character, and also to see this transformation reflected in the face. This is the reward of a true teacher.

No set of children respond to this treatment more readily than the lowest, including some so unwashed and wretched, some so marked by disease, that it would seem they could never reach maturity. I have seen the same little wretches grown into big, strapping young men, with eager, bright faces, ambitious and energetic, prepared to fight a good fight in the battle of life.

*Street Arabs.*—There is a certain kind of street arab that can be met with in any large city that is something like a rat. You can see them at night sneaking around street corners and alleys, restless spirits, unable to sit consecutively even for ten minutes in the same place. They think if you look at them steadily for a minute that you are going to strike them. They are of any age from six to about eight or ten,—absolutely little animals, able to smoke, chew and swear with ease and facility. It is not possible to take them at this stage into these regular classes, but in several of my schools I have a place apart with a few blackboards, where they can work if they wish to for a few minutes at a time. Usually they drift in and out

Illustration 413



Unfinished Panel by Night School Pupil

all the evening, sometimes as thick as a bunch of grapes, sometimes, if there are other attractions on the street, very few. It is advisable to have a teacher in charge of this department, and they should do almost anything they please on the blackboards. When they have formed the habit of coming and can work steadily and consecutively, they are

promoted to seats for the ordinary work. Do not, however, let them mix at this stage with the other pupils. They are very quick and ready to "get onto" the advantage that accrues to them if they settle down, and pupils emerge from this disorganized little body by degrees into the light, the quiet and the order of the other classes.

I have found it at intervals useful to give slight money rewards to those who do the best,—little spurs and incentives that urge them. This is not bribery. I do not believe in the principle of awards, except in the case of these classes. They are not necessary among ordinary pupils. The teacher in care of these little ones must have a certain amount of tact and must exert a little discipline at intervals.

Properly conducted, a class of this kind will help mightily. It is perhaps more important than any other of the departments of work, because of its powerful influence for good in this early period of child life, and its



influence on the character. The most wretched children can be easily bent in any direction at this age or period.

**Wood Carving.**—The teacher of this department in a night school or vacation school will allow the pupils to carve very simple panels in the beginning, about fourteen or fifteen inches long. In making their patterns on these panels, they must be assisted. No harm is done if the teacher in the beginning actually draws one-half the simple pattern. The pupil can then be required to copy in chalk and pencil the other half. Then they are ready to carve.

They are very anxious to begin with the cutting tools, and usually, unless they are watched carefully, will break many tools in the beginning.

Illustration 414



Clay Modeling Department, St. James Boys' Guild Night School  
The designs on the walls are made by the boys—Clay box in the back ground.

This must be prevented in case of malicious damage by punishments, which must be carried out and enforced from the beginning. If pupils damage each other's work, see that the offender is removed. Every one is surprised at

the beautiful product that can be made almost from the beginning by some of these boys, who seem from appearance to lack all capacity.

The boys must also be encouraged to make things for themselves as soon as possible. They should be given blanks for furniture, and it is advisable to have a few pieces of work in the room for the pupils to see, similar to the work illustrated in Nos. 346, 348 and 416.

Illustrations 415-416



Chairs Designed and Carved by Normal Class

From the beginning almost, boys above ten or twelve years of age can begin making mirror frames, chairs, brackets, settees, etc. When a few in the class have realized the value of these things, you will see a wonderful spirit diffused among the pupils, and there is great pride on all sides in belonging to the school.

We have found it one of the best plans in conducting this work, to allow the boys to carve blanks that are made up afterwards into chairs, settees,

hat racks, mirrors and so on, and then dispose of the work if possible by sale, deducting the cost of the materials and giving the boy the product of his labor. For instance, if a chair blank costs \$3, and putting together and polishing cost \$2 more, it will make the chair cost about \$5, which chair, properly carved, will sell for \$10 or \$12. If the chair is sold—and we can usually find customers for work of this character—the boy can then be paid the amount above the cost and construction—\$5 or \$7, as the case may be. It is a very dull, stupid boy who cannot, after a few months, make forms and do carving to the value of twenty-five or fifty cents a night. If he does work of this character, and with good materials selected and superintended by a good teacher, who sees that the work is properly constructed and finished, it is always salable. Value is put into the raw material. It has an auction value. It is not, like the feeble amateur work produced in some places, valueless. A nicely enriched chair or mirror frame or hat stand always has some money value above the cost of lumber. This kind of boy is usually quick in appreciating the value of money, and I know of no better means of enabling boys to realize the dignity of labor, nor a better way by which we can make them become self-reliant and ambitious, than by giving them a key to the power that is locked up within them, if they use it rightly.

I protest against the stupid idea of some people who have only partly looked into these matters, and who will sometimes, because this work is so valuable to the boys, frequently desire to make a charge for tuition; anything, they say,—five or ten cents a lesson,—so as to make them realize the value of it. These are foolish people invariably, because in so doing they discourage as pupils the very ones desired most. In these classes we usually desire the very pupils who are not willing to pay for the lessons, but who would rather pay the five cents or the ten cents for cigarettes or tobacco, or a vicious dime novel. The good boy willing to pay is the one able to get along without so much help. I have had many pupils, seemingly most hopeless cases, that are now in successful business for themselves, and who received their start and inspiration from the methods of these night schools.

*Rewards or Prizes.*—In the night schools and vacation classes it is very useful to give as an incentive prizes to the best workers at the end of the season. These may consist of sets of tools, sets of paints, water colors,





### Part of a Summer Class in Adirondack Mountains

Two or three pupils are drawing on the blackboard, several are working at wood carving in the tent, and the others are sketching from the dog, which the young man is modeling in clay. The tent is also used for modeling. A table about 12 feet long, made of heavy planks well braced, is the only furniture required for carving; six pupils can work at once upon it. Boxes of various sizes serve for seats and modeling stands.

drawing materials or instruments for the pupils in drawing and designing, and sets of carving tools or carpenter's tools for the carvers and wood workers. Sometimes we allow them to make their choice. In some night schools these prizes can be on exhibition part of the time. They act as wonderful incentives to some of the boys who desire to possess them. It is perfectly proper to make use of these means to encourage them to form the habit of work.

Some people, of course, will say that the inspiration should come to the pupil through the value of the work alone, but they forget that the children, through lack of certain ideas, do not recognize this value, and that means must be taken to get the habit some other way. This industrial hand-training, especially those kinds that engage a certain amount of the physical energy of the individual, educates both the mental and the physical faculties. The mind being kept constantly active, and occupying the hand in fashioning various forms, the time passes pleasantly, and the pupil gradually becomes satisfied and contented with the gratification following the work itself, a contentment that pleasant labor and work always produces.

#### (b) VACATION SCHOOLS\*

These have been conducted in connection with St. James Protestant Episcopal church in Philadelphia every summer since 1886. In these vacation schools boys and girls work together, and such valuable results have been obtained that the idea is being adopted in other cities and towns at home and abroad. By this means large numbers of children can be kept off the streets in comfortable, safe quarters, and at the same time can be getting the best kind of training. Classes can be conducted in any ordinary school room, and the same plant described for the night schools can be used.

School committees and others in authority should not allow teachers without elementary skill and art knowledge to attempt to teach the children in vacation schools; the children have the right to proper instruction in art and manual work. The author has seen many classes started lately by well-meaning but ignorant people, where much harm has been done to the children through wrong instruction and loss of time. During the past summer several cities have "taken up" the vacation work, and in some schools the regular teachers have been employed, and the class rooms thrown open to

---

\* Further particulars as to such vacation schools and night schools may be obtained from Mr. W. W. Frazier, Jr., Treasurer St. James Boys' Guild, Philadelphia, Pa.

the children, who have simply been experimented with. Too many teachers think that because there are plenty of children, they can dally with them and test their own stupidity by consuming the child's time that is so valuable at this vital period of life. In some classes, kindergarten work has been given to grown pupils, boys 15 years of age have been seen doing paper cutting and weaving or stick-laying, work with toothpicks and potato cubes, whittling, etc.

When teachers at good salaries are employed to do work of this character, and expensive plants for wood-working are used and instruction given to a few only,—the mob of children being really only employed with “busy work,”—it shows crass ignorance of elementary education. It is still the idea of many that as long as the children are cutting paper, making clay cubes or whittling, that they are getting art and manual training. It is a mistaken and false idea and one that will work out in the course of a very short period. The children will tire very quickly of these “occupations,” and in some of these false manual-training vacation schools the attendance will diminish very rapidly instead of increasing. Right methods of art, manual training and nature study should be used, that fascinate and at the same time elevate the children, and that will produce lasting benefit, instead of merely consuming the pupils' vital energy and time during this formative period of growth.

The art and manual-training methods described in this book are valuable for their feasibility of application in common rooms and school buildings, no heavy plant or changes being required. These methods prove so interesting to the children that they eagerly flock to the summer schools, when other systems will not hold their attention.

#### (c) NORMAL SCHOOLS AND SUMMER SCHOOLS

*In Normal Schools*, and in all training schools for teachers, the applicability of these methods is especially marked. Probably it is only a question of a short time before these ways of correlating art, real manual training and nature study with other school work will become a prominent feature in such institutions. That they greatly need improvement along these lines is apparent. The public demands the new education, and as fast as the methods herein are mastered by competent teachers, there will be lucrative positions for them. The results of these methods of training speak



for themselves. The art, manual training and nature-study idea is right; the masses are bound to have it.

Besides the classes for teachers from the Philadelphia public schools, private normal classes are conducted at my studios or at my private summer schools. The time needed to qualify teachers to apply the new methods in elementary schools is surprisingly brief for those who really apply themselves. Not the least remarkable characteristic of these methods is the

Illustrations 417-418



Second Stage



Completed

Panel for Front of Desk. Carved by pupil of summer school,  
Adirondacks

facility with which they can be mastered, even by adults who have never had any art instruction or manual training. Sometimes such adults make better teachers than others who have to undo their previous training. For elementary school teachers, a course of 30 lessons each in manual training drawing, modeling and carving, duly rotated, and accompanied by proper practice at home, is found to be sufficient, though more thorough training of course has its compensating advantages.

*Summer Schools* for both teachers and younger pupils in the country also prove very attractive. Plate Thirty-six gives a glimpse of such a class at the Adirondack summer school, which is further referred to at the close of Chapter V of this section. The summer school or institute is growing in favor, and for such institutions these methods are peculiarly adapted.

Illustration 419



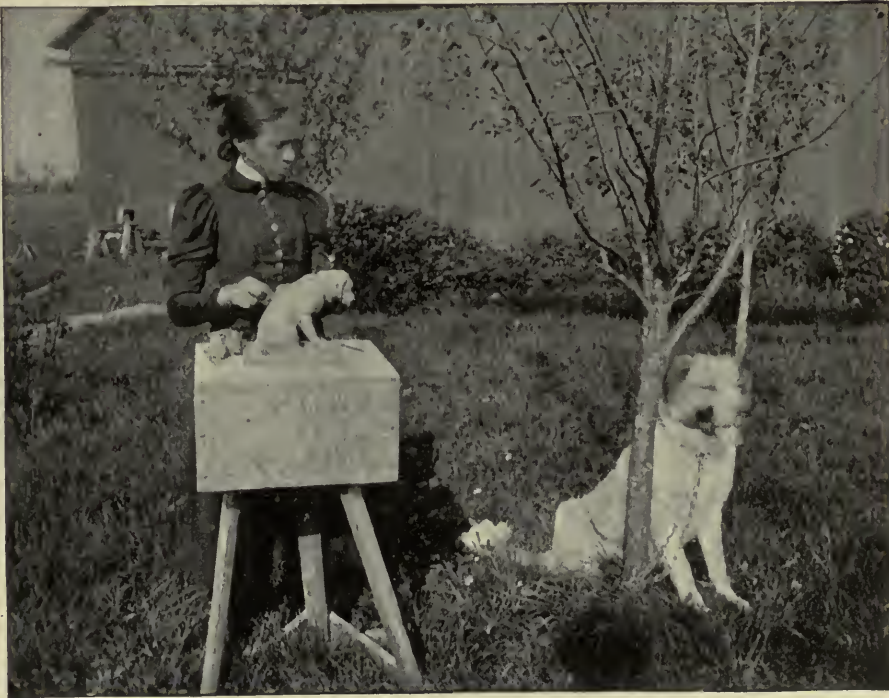
Children Modeling Vase Forms—Summer School

This picture, and also the one used for the initial to Chapter Five, were made at my summer school in the Adirondacks. The work is sometimes done in the open air and sometimes in the studio, according to the weather. The vase and jar forms are modeled by hand entirely and then decorated. Large jardinières, two or three feet high, can be made this way. These jars are fired at a pottery and can be painted several colors and glazed. The firing is very hard, and only a few colors can stand it, but fine tints of mazarine blue, brown, green, yellow and white can be made, and for decora-

tive purposes these strong underglaze colors are very appropriate. Flower and umbrella stands, urns, dishes, tiles, door weights, etc., and a variety of other forms and all kinds of pottery can be made. These afford ample opportunity for original design, or suggestions may be seen in bric-a-brac stores. Beautiful examples of this kind of work can be seen in Japanese stores; many of their quaint dragons and idols are made of colored clay fired.

Work of this kind is a great help in arousing the interest of children. The forms are a change from making tiles or the like, and the pupils will work with renewed interest. To completely make a vase and decorate it requires continued application.

Illustration 420



Modeling the Dog from Life—Summer School





### Elementary Mineralogy

One pupil is examining a fragment of quartz, the other is preparing a slide of some other mineral for the microscope. The sketch book should be used and color studies made of the various minerals. Some of the forms and colors exhibited by crystals are very beautiful.

## CHAPTER IV

### Other Uses for Art, Manual Training and Nature Study

Illustration 421



Underglaze pottery and metal plaque made in  
Decorative Art Club, Philadelphia

(a) DECORATING THE SCHOOL ROOM  
NDEAVOR FROM THE BEGIN-  
ning to make the school room or the  
class room attractive. The mind is  
influenced by its environment. Do  
not let that environment, especially of  
the young, be blank walls. But it is  
not necessary that we should have the  
greatest masterpieces of Greek art,  
the frieze of the Parthenon, the Venus  
of Melos, etc., in the kindergarten and  
primary school. Art forms alone,  
without the proper exercise and  
proper studies, are as powerless to  
elevate the mind as it is for a person  
to lift himself by his own boot-straps.

But it is possible for the average teacher to make the class rooms more  
beautiful than they are at present by (1) decoration with natural forms and  
things that can be readily procured by any intelligent teacher, and  
(2) with simple art works that little children can understand. There is no  
reason why ordinary school rooms, in being painted, should not have bor-  
ders or dadoses painted illustrating simple patterns of the best styles. Pro-  
vide shelves, or closets with glass doors, that could be filled with interesting

objects desired by the children and selected by the teacher. Do not allow trash to accumulate.

In our school rooms we find that the walls can very soon be decorated with attractive designs made for all kinds of purposes and with models, some of which are reproductions of the best art works of great artists. These help to furnish rooms very nicely and serve as inspiration to the pupils also. Pictures in this book show how attractive the school room may be thus made with samples of the best work of the pupils in drawing, modeling and carving. Such work accumulates so rapidly there is never any trouble about decorating our school rooms. A great variety of charts useful for school purposes, as indicated in Illustrations 397 to 404, are not without some degree of beauty. They are certainly better than walls unadorned, and also give the school room an air of "business" that is quite attractive to young and old.

The artists and good people who are now beginning to decorate the school rooms with great art works ought to be influenced to use instead work that is more suited to the minds of the children, not far above their powers of appreciation. One who has heard the remarks of the children and teachers about the broken Venus and several other statues of a similar character during the past ten years, knows that they are not being impressed as a great many persons think. Instead they are too often forming a dislike, that will continue through life, to models and forms which might otherwise have been a joy and a pleasure to them in later years. Purcel and Bach and Handel were great musicians, but all the same you cannot make small children understand or love their fugues. It is a matter of cultivation. So it is with art forms. You can, however, by wrong methods, form a dislike that will become ingrained and perhaps do a great deal of damage, perverting some who might have been otherwise influenced.

There should be more endeavor by teachers, with the aid of their pupils, to do with the school room or class room as they do at home. Encourage the pupils to decorate the school room with flowers at certain seasons, and with branches of foliage at others. Flowers in the commonest kinds of cups or vessels are beautiful at all times, and when 50 or 60 children are gathered together, can usually be procured without difficulty. It is a very easy matter to grow things in common wooden boxes, or tins, for that matter, although of course flower pots are better. There are a very few school



rooms in which there is not light enough at some window to cherish some kind of plant. This should be a part of the work of the school, and very soon the windows can become bowers instead of the dreary places they are at present. The same is true with regard to aquariums. They are very cheap, and a small, good aquarium is a revelation and a joy to pupils,—I do not mean a neglected one. This again is part of the work of the school. Objects of this character in the school should be kept in the best possible condition.

All depends on the teacher, the living personality that is in contact with the pupil so many hours each day. If the teacher is vulgar and coarse, the

Illustration 422



Underglaze Pottery Forms

Made by members of private class. Work of this character is touched upon on page 382.

attempts at decoration will be similar. Energy and force must be spent to elevate the teacher. The opening and broadening of the teacher's mind will mean the better opening and expanding of the child's mind. I believe in the use of natural objects in the school. It is true that they soon become

“trash” and “truck” in the hands of unskillful teachers, but that does not deter my advocacy of nature forms and nature study (along with art and manual training) as one of the best means to get art and art ideas into the pupils, to implant ideas of the beautiful, of order and of system. The

Illustration 423



Swiss or Swedish Carving

The pupil is carving a box, in the style similar to the Swiss or Swedish carving that is seen. The tools are held in the hand almost like an engraving tool. The form to be carved is made solid and is held in the hand or is supported on a table, and by means of the tools the patterns are incised and slightly carved. If original and well selected patterns are drawn, various kinds of valuable small things can be made. This work is not without some value educationally, but is feeble for educational purposes compared with real carving.

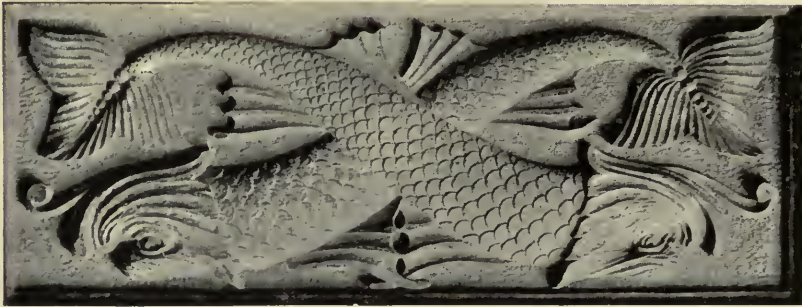
greatest lessons we can learn are printed in things, common things, not alone on or in art works, and this is said without prejudice to art works. We should get through nature the right perception of the beauty of art works.

Too many think that “works of art” and their contemplation are the best means of education and training in this direction. Fortunately nature has made this impossible. We *must* read and listen to the Almighty voice printed in and on nature, the eye must see its wonders and the heart feel a response, before the smaller art creations can touch us. This attained, we will be able to enjoy those lessons also.

(b) *For Backward Pupils* the methods outlined herein prove to be of marvelous utility. We do not refer here to the feeble-minded, but to the very considerable proportion of children in every large school who are backward compared to the majority of the scholars. Very often these pupils who appear so backward mentally are especially apt in responding to art methods, real manual training and nature study. The intellect of these children is slow and hard to reach through the eye and ear, yet if they are taught to use their hands and to develop the faculty of learning through the touch and muscular sense, the results are often surprising. These are the kind of pupils that can best learn by "doing." In many cities, the larger schools have a special room for backward pupils, and with very little expense it could be equipped for drawing, designing, modeling and carving.

Properly taught in correlation with the other school work, these methods will develop a large proportion of such pupils into reasonably bright and capable young people. In many cases, the result will be to make a useful, self-sustaining member of society out of an individual who otherwise may become a charge in some public institution. There is here a large humani-

Illustration 424



A Carved Panel

Designed and carved by a teacher, member of the Adirondack summer school.

tarian object to be subserved by these methods, which touches one of the sore spots in our educational system. Experience with children of this type emphasizes the great importance of beginning their art and manual training education at an early age. The nascent or growing period in back-



ward children is the time at which they can best be reached by any method of development. A whole volume might be written on this one subject, but it could not more strongly emphasize the importance of this application of these methods.

(c) *Feeble-Minded and Insane*.—I have found manual training especially suited for some classes of patients in insane hospitals. Experiments with large numbers show that it is an excellent means of providing these classes with pleasant occupation. For employment that is beneficial and at the same time interesting, nothing takes the place of art and industrial training. There is a great tendency with some patients to be very moody and to brood over imaginary or fancied troubles and ills. In cases of this kind it is especially important that the patients should be provided with an occupation that will be sufficiently attractive to please them, and at the same time interest them sufficiently to make them lose themselves in their work for the time being.

This, carried on to the stage where the habit of work is formed, is decidedly beneficial. The patients have something to think about even when they are not working. They take renewed interest in their walks around the grounds. They notice the variety of forms in flowers and leaves, insects and other natural objects. They take especial delight in imitating these forms in clay and wood. Even if the patients cannot be cured, there are sometimes cases when their moody ideas can be changed, and instead of their dwelling on their troubles they can be switched off onto the consideration of things that will do them less harm. Good results always follow when they become sufficiently interested in the product of their hands. That it is possible for them to do elaborate and sometimes beautiful and useful work is proved by the illustration herewith,—No. 425. To get pupils of this character to settle down for two or three hours to one thing is an advantage, and this can readily be done if the right kind of work is given them and they are kept interested.

Of course there will be a percentage of failures. Some give up the work, some become discouraged very readily, but in the majority of cases they are very willing to try again. I have had some such patients who have worked with a steadiness and persistence which was surprising and who have produced, and still produce, things of beauty and value.

The late Dr Kirkbride, the great expert on insanity, and director of the

Pennsylvania hospital for the insane, under whose suggestion I first experimented in this work, repeatedly assured me that it was very beneficial to the patients. I have very much regretted my inability to continue experiments in this direction as much as could be wished, owing to a pressure of duties in other places. If the authorities and managers of these hospitals and

Illustration 425



Pottery Forms

Designed and modeled by inmates of the Pennsylvania hospital for the insane.

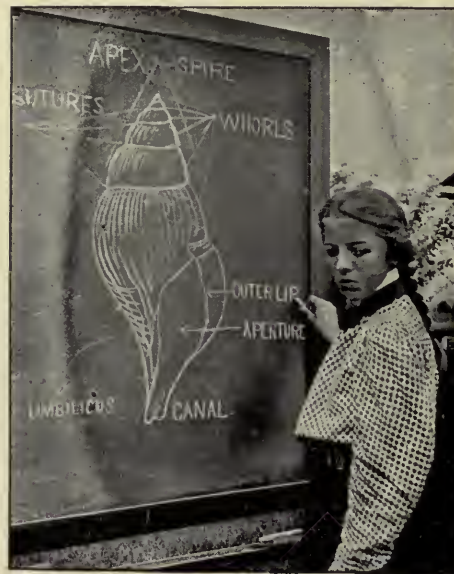
institutions will only introduce some of these methods under good instructors, I am convinced that they will be more than repaid by the benefits accruing to the patients.

The instructors, of course, will have to pursue a different plan from that in the ordinary schools,—the dispositions of the patients must be studied, and, above all, they must be interested in the beginning, even if the instructor is obliged at first, for a series of lessons, to do most of the work. These pupils, like others, learn directly by observation, and when they have seen a thing done a number of times they are more ready and better pleased to undertake it themselves. Emphasize the nature study or work. Like very little children they are soon interested, and I have had repeatedly very pleas-

ant times with them when they have simply been observing the work and making comments upon it. Sooner or later a disposition to try it for themselves is developed. Allow others, even though they do not work, to be spectators occasionally. Even this is good for the unfortunates. A special treatise could be written on this phase of the subject, but these few suggestions must suffice.

Many people outside of insane hospitals suffer from disintegration of ideas and lack of thought. They have only partial ideas, and they cannot

Illustration 426



Correlation of Drawing and Nature Study

By one of the children at the Adirondack summer school.

dwell on them consecutively very long. Work of the character herein advocated is a great means of preventing such disintegration of ideas, and a help to make people able to think consecutively and for continuous periods. This is quite an important thing for all grades of people, from the brightest to those who suffer the most in these institutions. I have been led to think from my experience that there are more feeble-minded people at large than in the various institutions.



(d) *In Reformatory Institutions* the methods treated of in this work may be applied with good effect. Under instruction of the right kind, much of the good in character building that we get in night schools with "tough" boys will be obtained with "children of a larger growth" who comprise the inmates of reform schools and similar institutions. Many of the occupants of such places are capable of reforming their character under proper conditions. This will seldom be done by either punishment or preaching, but may be accomplished by arousing in these men or women a sense of their abilities and a capacity to use those abilities in making an honest living.

To thus develop character and impart a training that may assist in obtaining a respectable livelihood, is the object to be sought in reformatory institutions. It is better and cheaper for society to do this wherever possible than to turn out criminals who will constantly prey upon the community. I know from experience the beneficent results of proper art methods and real manual training when applied to the unfortunates referred to, especially when supplemented by the teaching of trades. Such practical education is evidently to become an increasingly potent factor in the treatment of that large class of offenders who need reformatory influences more than summary punishment.

(e) *Truant Schools, Etc.*—This method is the only safe plan for truant schools and special classes for the idle and vicious. These children are sometimes "smart" and clever, but are beyond the control of the ordinary teacher. I visited a truant school only a few days ago and found the children sitting in front of desks and the teacher "talking" to them; it was about 10 a. m., and some of the boys already looked "bored," with three hours more to stay in school. I felt like being a truant myself. I saw failure in the face of the teacher, failure in the air of the room and rebellion and hate in the eyes of the pupils. You may lead a horse to water, but you cannot make him drink, and you cannot make an unwilling child a good pupil by "nagging" his mind or by forcing him to do something he dislikes.

My experience with this class of children has been such that I have always had full classes, and when the children realize the nature of the work they bring others. There are always pupils at the door waiting for the vacant places. Why is this? Simply because the children like the work, they have an intense desire to be doing things, to be moving quick, to be making

a noise, and to be active; it is the normal state of healthy boys and girls. I find that boys,—rough, truant, coarse, vicious boys if you will,—*like work*, if it is pleasurable. These boys work so hard in my classes in the night

Illustration 427



Art Metal Work

These designs have been beaten into the metal repousse; the plaques were made from sheet brass and German silver.

schools or vacation schools, that when the room is warm, the perspiration drips from their chins or eyelashes. Pupils of this description can be controlled, held and developed only by working in this direction. Then, in the course of time, if they are treated rightly, they almost invariably become biddable, responsive, studious and self-controlled.

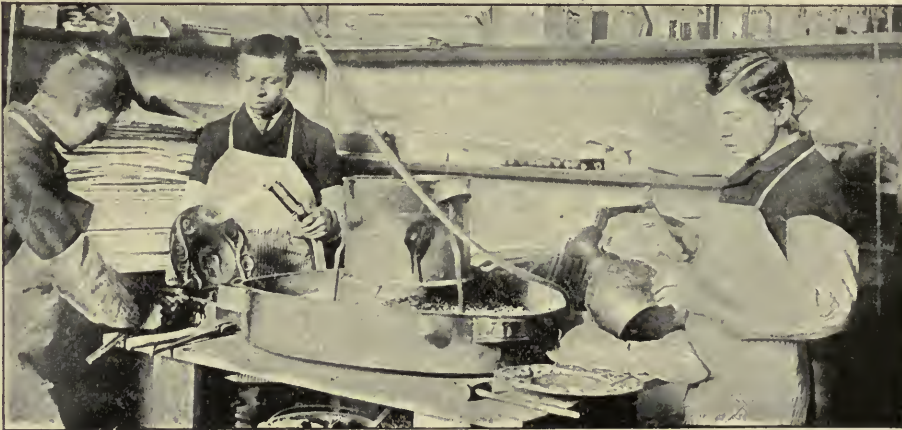
#### (f) MISCELLANEOUS APPLICATIONS

*Art in Metal Work.*—No one can see the mass of crude and vulgar silver forms now being made and sold since that metal has become cheap, without feeling the depths to which handicraft and art have fallen. Hardly

any one looks for beauty or fitness on the forms purchased. If it is cheap, and stamped with the magic word "sterling," it is enough. I venture to say that very few people reading this article can even state the style or kind of ornament used on the various forms they have purchased in this line, or even remember of what the pattern consists. Silver, copper, brass, iron, German silver, pewter, are perfect mediums of expression if real art and handicraft are used upon them. And the workers in these metals and the owners of the forms can have their minds expanded and exalted if right ideas prevail.

*Repousse and Hammered Work.*—Very little plant is required for producing the most beautiful and exquisite work in repousse and hammered work in metal. No medium will make a better return in real manual training, embodying thought in material. As illustrated, No. 427, plaques,

Illustration 428



Art Metal Work

The two boys on the left are annealing a metal plaque with hand blast. This plaque has been beaten out of a flat piece of brass. The other boy is chasing a design on a metal vase; the vase is filled with hard cement and it is hammered upon a sand bag.

crumb trays, brush backs, vase forms and a variety of other metal shapes, can be embellished. Sheet metal of various kinds can be used, and by means of punches on cement it is beaten into shape. Depressions and eleva-



tions are made, and then the surface decorated from both sides. Napkin rings, salt cellars, pitchers of various kinds, and an endless array of dishes can be made of brass, copper, pewter, German silver, or sterling silver, and beautifully decorated as desired. All forms illustrated have been made by pupils working in some of our schools, and they are given simply as examples of what can be done. The technical application of this work cannot be explained here. There is a great variety of process in metal chasing and repoussé work, and some of the most beautiful art work of all periods consists of hand work of this kind.

*For Parents.*—One application of these manual-training methods in art, real manual training and nature study, that has not yet been touched

Illustrations 429-430



Models in Clay

Made by boys of the grammar grade.

upon is their use by parents in teaching their own children. The method is so simple that any bright father or mother can accomplish much good by training their children along the lines herein indicated, so far as the parent may be able to do so from a careful reading of this work. All educators realize that one of the great obstacles to better results in elementary schools is the fact that parents so often utterly fail to make any reasonable effort to teach their own children. It is all left to the schools, and the child's home environment is often such as to counteract much of the best effort on the part of school teachers. This joint responsibility of the parent and of the teacher

will become more and more recognized by people generally, just as it is already recognized by experts in elementary education. Parents are usually averse to the drudgery of teaching their children in the ordinary elementary studies from books, but these same parents will take quite as much pleasure as will their children in rational manual-training drawing, memory work and original design on blackboard or paper or in clay or wood. Some of the most enthusiastic advocates of these methods are parents who have taken up the work in this way with their own children.



Normal Class Work—Carved by teacher



Rembrandt's Study of an Elephant, 1637—From the original in the Museum of Fine Arts, Vienna

This is a splendid charcoal drawing, showing perfect knowledge of the form. Notice that it is almost "scribbled," yet each stroke means something. You can see the movement of the beast, the thick skin in folds, the anatomy, the weight and the thickness. All are rendered with ease by a few touches, probably made in a few minutes. It is a superb example of thought-expression automatically executed.



## CHAPTER V

### Suggestions for Art Students

---



Modeling a Vase  
At Adirondacks summer school.

NEVERY CONSIDERABLE NUMBER of pupils there are some who desire to take up art and to make it their life work. Some feel that they have capacity in this direction, and some that they have a taste for art. It is very disappointing to many, after attending certain art schools for several years, to find that they have not been working in the right direction, that they have been doing superficial work instead of work calculated to give them real art ability.

Some art schools will keep students for years engaged upon such work as copying or studying objects, "normal art courses," with geometric work, conventionalization of flowers, designing for fabrics, etc. The students find out ultimately that they should have been doing real drawing from life and the antique, painting and modeling from life; and that they should have been gaining manual dexterity and experience by doing artistic work of this character from the start. In some schools the art work is entirely imitative; the pupils never work from memory; they are kept busy all the time copying objects, casts, models.

Why should the fine art schools allow numbers of pupils of all degrees

of capacity to join their classes? Granting that 3 per cent, or even 5 per cent of these pupils become finished artists,—and this, I think, is not the case,—what is to become of the other 97 or 95 per cent? Should they not have been equipped with the artistic skill necessary to enable them to enter into some of the numerous trades or vocations that require hand skill and a certain amount of art taste and judgment? Do antique drawing, life painting, sketching and other imitative methods give this capacity? I claim that they do not, especially as many only attempt this work after reaching adult life, and that a waste of time for the greater number of students is involved in such methods.

Surely these are not the correct methods. The pupils from their youth up should certainly have had such training as would enable them to enter the fine-art classes equipped with sufficient knowledge to indicate whether they are fitted for the business before them. No one knows better than the teachers who are engaged in teaching at some institutions of art, the incompetency of many of their pupils. In some cases the students have worked five, six, eight and ten years, and are no more advanced in practical art knowledge than when they started. Is this not the fault of the teachers and instructors of these schools? Should not they advise such pupils to take up pursuits that would enable them to make a living, instead of tacitly encouraging them to follow the fine arts?

These are simply questions and statements uttered with the idea of compelling a little thought on the subject. I for one know how difficult it is to enter the higher stages of the fine arts. That should not prevent us, however, from being willing to discourage pupils who from the first show lack of adaptation to artistic pursuits. Some of our institutions to-day have hundreds of pupils who will never amount to anything in the fine arts, who will waste several years, and after all be obliged to take up some other line of work. If better educational methods were used in the elementary schools, this would not be so often the case.

*A Great Field for Teachers.*—I venture to suggest to all with artistic desires the wide field and application of the manual-training and industrial-art idea in education. Of course I know by experience how difficult it is to change the aim of many students who start out with the expectation of becoming great artists. They invariably find their level, but at what loss of valuable time and energy! Michael Angelo did not consider it degrad-

PLATE THIRTY-NINE



Modeling and Drawing from Life

Sometimes the model is drawn and sometimes modeled. This work is also done in the barn and in the tent, where the light is not diffused as it is out of doors. The light and shade can there be regulated at will. There is a peculiar fascination about this sort of educational work outdoors, close to nature's heart.



ing to design costumes and ink bottles, and Raphael and many of the best and greatest artists engaged in various minor arts, in designing and working in various mediums and materials, and in fact, most of the great artists of the past became so through the consummate knowledge they had of ordinary processes gained by years of experience.

It is not necessary that a good artisan or craftsman, or a fine teacher, should be spoiled in order to produce a feeble artist. Why not, if we cannot achieve the one, become the other? Be assured that there is more honor and profit in it. Nothing is more dismal to himself and friends than the whining of a feeble or poor artist "not appreciated by this coarse, dollar-loving age." Instead of displaying that spirit, let those who manifestly can never become great artists realize the magnificent opportunities that await the capable and enthusiastic teacher of art, of real manual training and nature study.

While the truly great artist may be benefited by experience in teaching children of all ages, it is not essential that teachers of these natural methods in the elementary schools shall be geniuses in art. The truth is, that far more teachers, as well as pupils, have a fair degree of capacity for the simpler forms of art than has been recognized heretofore. This has been abundantly demonstrated by the high average product obtained from many who have received the requisite training in my schools during the past few years.

*Preparing for Fine Art Work.*—Just as in the elementary work, we give the hand power to produce automatically and unconsciously all the simple and conventional forms used in design; and just as the children gain power in expressing themselves through the simple forms of nature, such as leaves, flowers, shells, fish, birds and other familiar objects, so, in the higher branches of art study, the mind should become familiar, as far as practicable, with diverse art and nature forms and their movements, and the hand should gain facility and dexterity in reproducing them.

Some will say that this is not necessary; that if a student is fond of landscapes, for instance, it is not essential to be able to draw the figure or animals; or, if the student is going to be a cattle painter, marine views or water need not be studied. This is yielding to the common tendency in life to do only the things we like and not the things which are best for us. A little thought will convince any one that the wider our range of knowledge and power the better will be the individual and special expression.

After a certain range of experience has been gained from work upon various subjects, the student is far better able to determine the subjects for which he has the most liking, and in which he can express himself with the most power. When this stage is reached, then it is right to specialize. Until then, however, the more the student works from the figure, from animals, from landscape, and marine views, the better. Some students will find that they have more power rendering form than color; some will be able to ex-

Illustration 433



Landscape Painting and Drawing in the Adirondacks  
The pupils sketch with pencil and paint in water color or oil colors.

press themselves better by lines than by light and shade; some will be more expert in clay than paint, or in oil colors than in water colors. However this may be, the student should endeavor to get control of each end, and should not be satisfied until a certain amount of power is acquired in the medium or method in which he is most deficient. This is the way to get on in the conquest of weaknesses.





Angelo's Sybil—Fresco from Sistine Chapel

This is one of over four hundred figures painted by Michael Angelo in his composition on the ceiling of the Sistine Chapel at Rome. Some of the figures are over twenty feet high. Words fail to describe the beauty and grandeur of his work. It is chiefly remarkable for the natural ease, grace and style of the figures, the wonderful and energetic movements portrayed, the endless variety of postures, and the strength of all the figures. It was as though he had demi-gods in his mind, and in the heat of his genius he seemed to fling these colossal and beautiful beings from his hands. He worked with remarkable rapidity and speed and seemed to know instinctively just how things would appear on the painted surface or in marble.



*Fitting for the Minor Arts Also.*—Students who do not succeed in the higher branches of art should undoubtedly be able to do so in the minor arts. The fact that a man cannot succeed in painting a portrait or landscape is no reason why he should not be very successful at designing, carving or modeling, or in some of the many diverse industrial arts in metal, stone, clay and wood. I know a painter who worked for twelve years producing very poor pictures, yet when through chance he became familiar with the operations and art of metal work, produced some very beautiful and valuable results, and is now far more qualified than before to make a living.

All art students are supposed to have a taste for the beautiful. This is the primary reason that induces them to enter upon art studies. Such taste and judgment must enable them to succeed in some of the minor arts if they fail in the higher branches.

All students, then, should follow a course that will give them manual training and artistic power in any pursuit they may adopt. The proper training for art institutions to give should be to fit all their students (not a small number of them only), to make a better living. Those incapable of pursuing the higher branches of art by no means need be failures, but should become good artistic workers in the various trades. Their artistic training should enable them to make the low and common in any pursuit of business more beautiful and refined. This implies more profit and success in whatever vocation is finally adopted, as well as more pleasure and happiness, for the great call in the world of industry to-day is for the artist-artisan.

The following suggestions and pictures are offered with a view of helping, in some of the various branches of art work, students who will ultimately join the proper institutions for their higher training.

*Charcoal Drawing* is one of the first processes in art, it being one of the best mediums of expression that we possess. A piece of charred wood, properly handled, on paper, will give all the form, all the light and shade, all the texture, any one can desire. To attain some of this power, a student must use charcoal for some time, drawing decorative forms of the various styles, then portions of the figure and from the antique, and from this to the entire figure, or its parts, from life.

Few materials are required. Charcoal can be purchased for a cent a stick and is usually bought for 20 or 25 cents a box. A piece of chamois skin

and a few leather stumps are all that are needed. Some even dispense with the stumps, using the fingers. Very black marks can be made with a piece of charcoal, and they can be readily dusted off with the chamois leather.

All gradations of light and shade can be produced with very few touches, charcoal being perhaps the quickest medium for reproducing light and shade. In reproducing a model, the simplest way is the supreme end to be attained. Thousands of directions can be given to do this or that, to get this texture or that, but to reproduce the appearance of the model is the main thing. The

Illustrations 434-435



Charcoal Drawing  
First stage of charcoal sketch from life.



Drawing from the Nude

Only pupils who already have some idea of form and dexterity of hand should study the nude form. At the same time anatomy should be studied from casts of the muscles, from skeletons, and, if possible, from the cadaver. At some of the best art schools facilities are provided for this work in connection with life drawing, painting, etc.

moment any one states that a particular surface or texture, tint or tone must be made, there is danger, because sometimes the thing can be produced better another way. None but experts in charcoal can give suggestions as to the best way to use it. To see a good charcoal drawing being made is the best lesson. To see a number being made in a class is still better.

Pupils should study the sketches and studies of the old masters; they should endeavor to find out how they produced certain effects. They should study the appearance and renderings of diverse drawings; they should not

blindly follow one style or fashion, they should know many of the possible ways of rendering color, form values, light and shade, etc., with the brush or pencil. The beautiful charcoal sketch by Rembrandt on page 398 should be studied, also by Raphael on page 417. In any good art museum hundreds of similar sketches may be studied to advantage.

Some pupils make a mistake by keeping at charcoal work too long. It is a happy medium to render form in light and shade, and beautiful results can be produced, but I do not believe that pupils should work for years in charcoal, as some do. It is not a fact that the more you work in charcoal, the better you will be able to paint. Charcoal is simply an instrument of expression, and a ready one in which to become familiar with form and light and shade. When this stage is arrived at, then color should be used. The longer this stage is put off the harder it will be for the pupil to work with color, the palette with paints on it being a much more complex instrument than the charcoal. If one becomes accustomed to charcoal and works a number of years with it, there is difficulty in learning to handle a palette with perhaps eight or ten colors upon it.

I advise pupils, therefore, to get a thorough knowledge of form, light and shade by means of charcoal, and when this stage is reached, to immediately begin painting in color part of the time. To get light and shade, form and color with the palette is one of the highest forms of art, and is one that will take much time. Remember, I advocate charcoal work in the elementary stages, and as a ready means of becoming familiar with form, but I still advocate color and clay work in connection with it.

There is a tendency in a great many places to do too much of the sketchy work, pen and ink work, and similar modes of expression, instead of settling down to solid charcoal work, and work in paint and clay. I have known pupils who have sketched for two or three years, in art schools, thinking they were going to be illustrators, who would have done much better if they had settled down to learning true form and light and shade in charcoal, paint and clay. They would have become much better illustrators in the same space of time. Some newspapers and magazines are filled with the work of these foolish people who expect to make a short cut to fame, but who take a road never traveled by any real artist. The best illustrators of any period have been artists who understood their medium and gave the most care and pains to the smallest and seemingly most trifling details.



*Painting in Water Color from Casts.*—This illustration (No. 436) is simply suggestive for the position to be taken in doing simple work of this kind. As can be seen, the materials consist of a simple box of colors, a few

Illustration 436



Painting in Water Color from Cast  
Showing position of painter and model. The drawing is only in its first stage.

brushes, paper to paint on and the model. The model is placed so that a side light strikes it at a favorable angle, and it is reproduced on the flat surface by the pupil. In the illustration herewith, allowance must be made for the fact that the drawing is still in an unfinished condition, showing the first few washes. The cast is taken from one of the most beautiful of the works of

Michael Angelo, "The Dying Slave." It is a difficult position for the head, because it is tipped on one side, tilted back and turned. For this reason it is a difficult cast to draw. I believe Michael Angelo stated somewhere that he considered this to be one of his best pieces of work. The original is a full-sized figure in marble in the Louvre at Paris, and is still unfinished in several parts. This is true of a great many of Michael Angelo's statues.

*Life Work.*—In the following series of pictures showing studio work from life, I have purposely taken the two students whose pictures show in all the departments of the book from the first steps as children of five and six

Illustration 437



Sketching from Life—Model in Costume

A simple pose is selected and sketches are made of the position of the head or hands, portions of drapery, etc.

years of age. These students are now (at the ages of 13 to 15) prepared for the most advanced work, drawing, painting and modeling from life. Having worked in all the elementary branches of art work, having a certain amount

of manual training and dexterity and knowledge of drawing as a mode of thought expression, they are able to begin intelligently upon the highest kind of work. The pictures have been taken in one of my studios used for

Illustration 438



Modeling a Head from Life

The model is seated upon a movable stand which is turned at intervals, allowing the head to be seen from all points.

private pupils; in the other studio are facilities for all the elementary branches heretofore described.

Sketching in pencil from the living model is shown in Illustration 437. A simple pose is given with very simple costume. It is important to choose the most pleasing positions. This is one of the things requiring most judgment and art taste,—i. e., to be able to choose a simple arrangement and at the same time a beautiful one, with good light and shade, good choice



of color, etc. The model usually poses 25 minutes, with five minutes' rest each half hour.

In sketching from the model, portions of the figure are sometimes drawn, then again the entire figure; sometimes special arrangements of drapery are made. Sketching is chiefly to impress the mind more vividly with memories of the pose, movement, light and shade, color, etc.

*Modeling from the Head.*—In the next illustration (No. 438) two pupils are shown making a bust from life. The model is placed upon a mov-

Illustration 439



Modeling the Figure

The model stand is turned at intervals, and the students also change their positions, sometimes working close to the model, sometimes at a distance.

able stand and it is turned at intervals. In this manner the head can be seen from all points. The pupils work on high stands and can also revolve the stands to get the required view.

*Modeling from the Figure.*—In this illustration (439) the model is placed on a movable stand. The figure is built up, without any support in the clay, and the model, if satisfactory, can be fired and made into terra cotta.

Illustration 440



Modeling from Life

Another view of same model. Properly finished, these clay models can be fired and are convenient to keep.

Beautiful small figures of this character can be made, some of which may be seen in the various views of the studio.

There are many methods of modeling the figure. Sometimes a piece of lead pipe is used to support the clay; sometimes a framework of strong wire or wood is made. Metal or wood supports are also used in making busts or models of various forms. When these are used the model is always cast in plaster. Technical details cannot be given here. A visit should be made to the studio of some sculptor, where many ideas can be received.

*Summer Art Work.*—A few of the illustrations herewith are taken from some of the students at work in my Adirondacks summer school, the teachers' classes at which also receive the elementary manual training in drawing, designing, modeling and carving. Numerous artists, teachers and others have been fitted in these classes to establish schools and institutions for the new education, as well as to benefit themselves in their various lines of art or industry. The environment is beautiful, and every facility is provided for the student ambitious for art, manual training and nature study.

Illustration 441



Summer School—Drawing the Horse

A large number of pupils can work at once all around the model. The blackboard can be used occasionally to make the forms life size. To grasp the character with a few lines, shows that the form is memorized, and that it can be repeated in different positions without the model. The horse will stand very patiently for long periods in one position.





### Drawing Pigs, Adirondacks

The pupils work around the pen. A plank can be taken down and the pupils can sit to paint or model. It is good practice to model a pig. Some of its parts are very characteristic, and to express them well requires great skill.

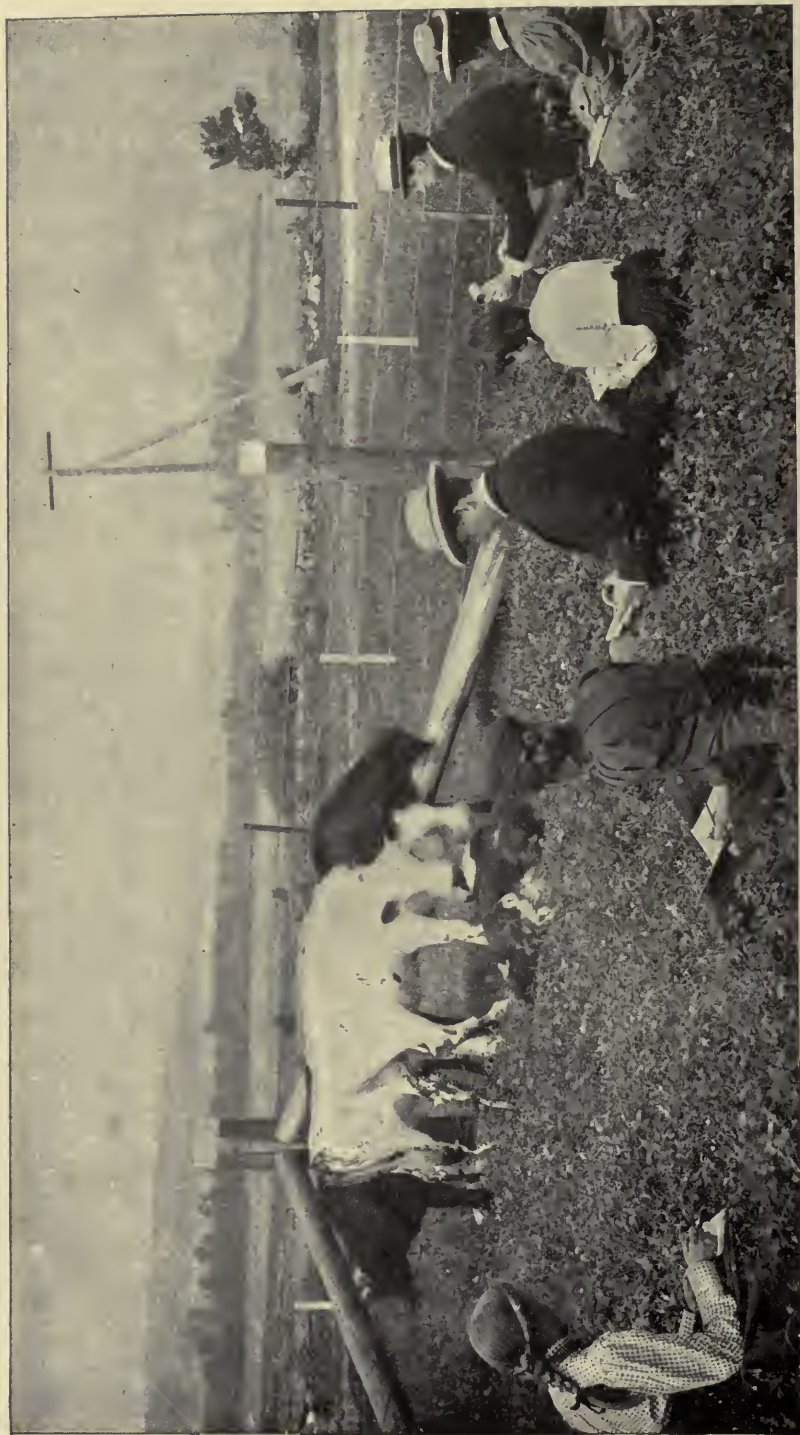
*Modeling from Animal Forms.*—Illustration 419 represents a pupil modeling from a large dog. The dog is chained to a tree and moves about continually. At first it is difficult to make the form, but after a little study it does not matter how much the animal moves after the pose or position is settled upon. If it is a seated position, as in the picture, it will be found that the dog will continually resume the same posture, and that the form is still the same even when moving. The shape of the head, the bulk of the body, the length of the legs, the character of the coarse hair, etc., can be seen as readily as when in repose. Beginners are confused at first, but if the work is persisted in the form will soon be grasped by the mind, and the memory of form strengthened.

All the animals on a farm can be modeled to advantage. Cattle are very good and patient models, remaining in one position for long periods at a time. Pigs can be modeled from the side of the pen and horses in the stable. No work is better for students in the beginning than this modeling in clay or wax from moving forms. It renders the mind able to grasp and apprehend movements that are rarely shown; it enables the hand to embody these positions or motions, which are sometimes more artistic than any that can be produced from the fixed model; and sometimes a rapid movement is made or position taken that is far more beautiful and appropriate than any before selected. The work, moreover, gives artistic power when it gives familiarity with all the possible movements of the model instead of a few. A student working this way soon becomes familiar with all the possible range of movements and is able to choose the most artistic for his purpose.

It is, of course, more difficult to model in diffused daylight, or in strong light and shade; but to be able to do so is excellent discipline. These forms can all be modeled in the barn or studio, and the class illustrated do so in wet or stormy weather. To get certain effects of light and shade, it is necessary to have a side light, and beautiful work can be produced in modeling form by light and shade alone. But to make the real form and proportions of the models from life is feasible and perhaps the best practice for pupils in their student stage, when the acquisition of knowledge, not the object produced, is the main thing. Models are made constantly by many of our pupils that possess both value and beauty, when working out of doors and in this manner.

Frequent sketching in pencil and charcoal from the animal form is





### Sketching from Cattle

In this work, the main object is to retain visual memories of the form of the animals, and then of the varying positions. Sometimes the animals move continually and sometimes they remain for a long time in one position. Sketches should be made of the various parts, the head, the legs, etc., then again of the entire body. This picture was taken from a class in the Adirondack summer school.

(416)



recommended. Sketches should be made of movements, of parts in action and in repose, of details and of the entire form. Sometimes the sketches should be made large, sometimes small. It is also good practice to draw the forms life-size on a blackboard or other suitable surface. The blackboard sketches illustrated in the pictures on pages 413 and 414 are made freehand without any erasing and are memorized so that the forms can be drawn in any position. The pupil drawing these forms has had practice at this kind of work for years, and I have purposely used the same pupil drawing on the blackboard in each of these engravings. The other members of the class draw in sketch books or on pads.

Illustration 442



Raphael's Study for the Madonna Del Cardellino  
Now in the possession of Oxford University.

This is a perfect sketch, showing great knowledge. The position and movement of the three figures are suggested with a few touches. Each touch is bold and positive. There are no tentative touches or patches, each line has meaning and intention. The master's mind was occupied with the idea he so rapidly sketched. He did not have to think of his lines or shades, they were made automatically. Notice the patches of shadow made with a few swift lines. The idea of a complete composition is embodied with a few master strokes.

## IN CONCLUSION

The author extends his sincere thanks to a number of pupils in his schools and several friends who have aided him, directly and indirectly. Special appreciation and recognition are due the following :

MR HERBERT MYRICK, for valuable aid, advice and assistance throughout the entire work.

PROF W. S. LONG, in nature study.

MR BERNARD UHLE, in the carving.

ROMAN STEINER, for various drawings and help in chapter on construction.

# INDEX

- Abstract work—energy wasted by 50, geometric forms 225, should come naturally 174
- Abstruse ideas should become familiar 316
- Acanthus leaf molding 204, 295
- Accuracy—after facility 81, 88, 98, 122, 126, 140; exercises to compel 124, 01 perceptive powers created 25
- Ambidextrous work—anthemion used for practice in 101, 102; blackboard designing in 66, 136; co-ordination in 70, defense for 48, educates individual 47, especial care to left hand 79, 80, 137; left hand trained for educational value 48, 51; loop forms good practice in 83; Meissonier's opinion on 51, old education neglected both hands 50, produces sympathetic influence of all sets of muscles 47
- Angelo, Michael—eye, not hand, for instruments of precision 9, essentialities first 93, 148
- Angelo's Dying Slave, painting from 428
- Angelo's Sybil 404
- Animal forms (see also Bird forms and Fish forms)—advice to teachers 249, Barye casts for schoolroom use 182, 249; Barye casts illustrated 213, 246; directions for modeling 199, 204, 247; drawing pigs from life 414, drawing the horse 413, enlarging in wax 260, frequent sketching recommended 415, general form first 249, illustrations of 181, 213, 246; individual taste of pupils consulted 247, modeling from 415, modeling from birds 250, model for each pupil 248, model the best teacher 249, sketching from cattle 416, tool marks vs. smoothness 249, work by grammar pupils 251, working on, illustrated 186, 247
- Antefix of Parthenon 104
- Anthemion—ambidextrous practice in 102, antefix of Parthenon 104, basis of most beautiful art forms 103, combined with scroll 105, 107; directions for carving 285, directions for modeling 241, fundamental Greek form 102, graded curves in 102, ideal form, not imitation 104, illustration of carved form 287, love of Greeks for 104, modeled form illustrated 241, tangential curvature in 104, various arrangements of 242
- Antique forms—plaster models from 105, vs. natural forms for schoolroom 208, working on illustrated 223
- Antonius on the divine power in nature 345
- Apple, directions for modeling 209, 212
- Architectural forms for drawing—five styles represented 182, illustrations of 183, 184; memory drawing of makes good practice 103, practical application 184, styles learned by drawing them 342
- Architecture—aim to understand styles 323, architectural models indispensable 323, original plans and original ideas 323, typical forms and principles first 323, unnecessary detail should be avoided 323
- Aristotle—bodily health and moral character first 1, hand instrument of instruments 22, true education exalts and expands mind 1, utility alone of little value 1
- Armour institute's methods 54
- Art—(see also Drawing, Manual-training drawing and Art students, suggestions to), art and mechanical sides taught both together 325, art in handicraft very rare 30, artist's views of instruction desired 67, art methods make knowledge automatic 59, atmosphere of in school room 208, bad use of art work in schools 52, compels observation, reflection, action 45, 340; divorced from commercial systems 44, drill and designing necessary adjuncts 46, emotions aroused by 350, forms alone cannot elevate mind 385, good art requires good ideas 57, imitative work at schools 56, lack of training in common schools 36, need of in fundamental work 44, Philadelphia school of industrial 19, 27, 33, 92, 192, 228, 256, 262, 270; preliminary step to manual training 44, required in all pursuits 46, should precede mechanical work 317, symbolism in explained 178, 180; true meaning and use of 44, vital part in many pursuits 45, work under name of 41, wrong methods often engender dislike for 386
- Art methods—compel reflection and action 45, co-ordinate memories and ideas 339, correlation with school work 339, 357; make knowledge automatic 59, unify and solidify ideas 339, various applications of 303
- Art, Philadelphia school of industrial—clay modeling class illustrated 27, cost of manual training plant 33, drawing and painting class illustrated 92, modeling room illustrated 192, samples of grammar grade work 228, wax designs by pupils 256, wood carving class illustrated 19, 262; wood carving examples 270
- Art students, suggestions for—carving in the round illustrated 396, characteristic of best illustrators 407, charcoal drawing 405, 407; charcoal sketch illustrated 406, don't follow one style 407, drawing from the nude illustrated 406, drawing the horse illustrated 413, fitting for minor arts 405, good artisans vs. good artists 402, landscape painting and drawing in the Adirondacks 403, life work 409, methods of art schools criticised 500, Michael



- Angelo even designed ink bottles 402, modeling a vase illustrated 399, modeling from animal forms 415, modeling from life illustrated 410, 411, 412; modeling from the figure 412, normal class carving illustrated 397, painting in water color from casts 408, painting Angelo's Dying Slave illustrated 408, preparing for fine art work 402, Raphael's study for the Madonna del Cardellino 417, Rembrandt's elephant illustrated and explained 398, schools' greatest fault 399, sketching from life illustrated 409, study sketches of old masters 406, summer art work 413, superficial vs. real art training 399, teachers needn't be geniuses in art 402, when it is right to specialize 403
- Artists—(see also Art students, suggestions for) carving part of education of old masters 300, give care and pains to seemingly trifling details 407, good artists sketch constantly 143, great artists simplify things 149, greatest could model 187, judgment of should be sought 68
- Arts, fine—see Art students, suggestions for
- Arts, fitting for the minor 405
- Backward pupils—can best learn by "doing" 389, humanitarian object 389, nascent period of 390, often especially apt in art methods 389
- Balliet, Dr.—no true distinction between hand and brain work 18
- Banana, directions for modeling 214
- Barye casts—children's love for 249, illustrations of 213, 245; use of preferred in schoolroom 182, 249
- Basket, directions for modeling 206
- Beauty—as rendered by "pagans" 153, a universal hunger 254, common heritage of 254, appreciation of how best taught 60, contented mind through knowledge of 6, drawing creates knowledge of 19 how acted 39, goodness and truth examples of 254, human responsiveness to 254, joy of perceiving 3, 340; knowledge of makes contented mind even in drudgery 6, 310; love for in nature cultivated 60, 208; moral influence of 6, organic impressions of produced 6, perception of developed 7, recognized in common things 62, science of 3, sense of how educated 254, standard of is absolute 7
- Bell, Sir Charles—greatest source of happiness 65, hand governed by sensibility 51, hand the instrument for perfecting the senses 261
- Bench work—illustration of 16, should correlate with other studies 319
- Bird forms—color learned from 163, conventionalized 172, decorative 173, directions for modeling 207, 250; 252; drawing and painting from life illustrated 49, drawing illustrated 351, essential features should be first grasped 172, memory drawings illustrated 161, modeling from life illustrated 207, 250; models of for drawing, painting, modeling 179, object lesson in 162, primary work illustrated 160, simple form should become automatic 159, suggestions on drawing 159
- Bird's nest, directions for modeling 205
- Blackboard—design and drill work illustrated 121, 138; designing on (suggestions) 135, 138; exercises for 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 98, 134, 136, 138; night-school work on, illustrated 37; shell exercises on 158, value of blackboard work 10, work on made much of in woodwork construction 324
- Bodily life comprehended in mental action 340
- Book learning—book-bred people indisposed to action 20, memory overtaxed 16, vitality consumed by 17, words studied at expense of ideas 21
- Borders—acanthus leaf 295, beaded surface 292, carved work illustrated 292, 295; exercises in drawing 123 for schoolroom decoration 385, models in plaster illustrated 227, plain curved 293, suggestions on carving 291, 295; suggestions on drawing 122, 123; tongue and dart 292, 293
- Botanical drawing 165, 167; daisy lesson illustrated 165, dandelion lesson 167, drawing from fruit illustrated 166, horse-chestnut leaf embodies many laws 165, leaf lesson illustrated 167, technical names easily learned 166, useful for school work 164, 338
- Botany, drawing as aid to 165, 167, 338
- Brain as an organized register of experiences 224
- Brush work (see Color and brush work)
- Bud forms 111
- Building constructions illustrated 309, 111, 313
- Calipers—best kind for curved surfaces 292, marking out mouldings with 293, 294, 295; use in rosettes 286
- Capacity for drawing inherent 64
- Carpenter work, previous training required for 305
- Carrot, directions for modeling 218
- Carving—see Wood carving
- Carving on curved surfaces—arms for settee and chair 301, borders 292, 295; dolphin easy to cut 301, flat surface practice first 291, suggestions on "spoiled" work 292, work in illustrated 291, 302
- Casts (see also Plaster models)—Barye 182, 213, 246; fish forms make good 254, leaf forms 215, of wax models how made 259, teacher should make 182
- Chair forms—drawings from memory illustrated 176, 177; examples of carved work 290, 297; suggestions on drawing 177
- Character and capacity improved by doing 341
- Charcoal drawing—don't stay too long at 407, equipment and cost 405, first of art processes 405, get form, light and shade through 407, light and shade gradations with few touches 406, Raphael's Madonna del Cardellino 417, Rembrandt's elephant 398, sketching the human figure 406, study sketches of old masters 406, too much sketchy work 407
- Chart-making for school use 354, 357
- Child study, danger of wrong methods 40
- Chisel—acute vs flat 273, best practice at first with 272, beveling outer edge 274, curved form on round surface 294, 295; cutting around curve 273, 274; feeling form with 273, few kinds needed 263, flat form on curved surface 292, mallet used with 271, position for holding 271, 273; touch of guided by intelligence 280
- Circle, the—combinations of 122, directions for drawing 77, 78; directions for modeling 196, first exercise 77, meaning of in symbolism 178, practice for freehand movements 41, six-movement exercises 79

- Clay (see also Modeling and clay modeling)—box for 191, care of 192, cavities in how avoided 248, cost of 188, manipulation of 193, 251; shrinkage of in modeling 250, suggestions on using 190
- Clay modeling—aid to drawing 86, 154; animal forms 186, 199—204, 247—255; basket 206, bird forms 207, bird's nest 205, circular form, illustrated 196, elementary courses in 193—208; elementary forms, directions for making 194—207; elementary forms illustrated 189, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 200, 202, 203, 204, 206, 231; first exercises, illustrated 198, fish form 202, 253; for grammar grades 229—245; frog 202, fruit and vegetable forms 209—220; geometric forms 221—227; leaf forms 112, 115, 195; lizard 203, modeled forms illustrated 186, 189, 198, 211; mouse 204, natural forms should be more used 252, natural objects 203, reason for elementary forms 207, shoe 205, small forms 189, snake 202, spiral 194, suggestions on natural forms 252, tile 206, tree stump 205, turtle 203, vessel forms 204, work in illustrated 27, 209
- Color—good example of in bird 164, light and shade after form 177, not best taught by tinted paper 43
- Color and brush work—freehand brush work 133, good brush handling important 132, materials for 132, painting from nature 141, warning to teachers 141
- Common things—made beautiful 62, perfect lessons from 39, pleading to be understood 62
- Cone, directions for modeling 226
- Construction in woodwork, see Woodwork construction
- Construction in woodwork and mechanical drawing 305—314
- Constructive work, see Woodwork construction
- Co-ordination, physical—ambidextrous work creates 48, drawing, designing, carving makes 5, of motor centers 103, of hand, eye, brain 30, training of forms sense connections 39
- Correlation of drawing with other school work 52—57, 339—357
- Crattsmanship now vs. the past 307
- Crocket, the—combined with scroll as model 239, directions for modeling 239, single and double curved as drawing exercises 94—95
- Cube, directions for modeling 222
- Cupid's head carved 299, 300
- Curiosity, value of in children 39
- Curvature, tangential—anthemion example of 104, horse-chestnut leaf 165, how become organic 99, necessity of in designing 99, shells show 158
- Curved surface, see Carving on curved surfaces
- Cylinder, directions for modeling 224
- Daisy drawing lesson 165
- Dandelion drawing lesson 167
- Decorative work (see also Designing)—anthemion in 103, bird forms for 172, 173; defense for 45, fish forms in 152—153
- Design, carving elementary units of—anthemion, how carved 285, conventionalized shell forms 289, designing the form to carve 266—268; fluted forms, how carved 288, rosettes, how carved 286, scroll, how carved 283, 284; simple leaf, how carved 284, spiral with crockets, how carved 285, three stages in work 283, 284; work by public school children 131
- Designer, nature the best 155
- Designing (drawing)—alter work as little as possible 137, blackboard 135, 136; both hands used 136, center of pattern first 137, color and brush work 132, combinations of units 97, elementary units 87—100; elements of 95, fish forms in 152, harmony in arrangement 100, object of teacher 137, originality of arrangement 95, original pattern 10, 51; practical application of 95, 138; rosette in 95, 98; ruler, use of 132, secret of strength in 100, see form as whole 20, sketching compared with 57, spiral used in 93
- Designing on wood (see also Wood carving)—avoid artificial means 266 design should be of use and value 266, free curves needed in 272, hard wood preferred 266, outline made permanent 266, scoring the background 268, simple freehand pattern first 266
- Development, natural—foundation of 5, importance of 12, 14, 15
- Diagonals, exercises on 79
- Disposition or bent, natural 11, 15; common lack of development in 12, inspiration through discovery of 15, manual training methods find out 12
- Divine energy—bend to, in nature 63, 254; build on, in children 145, education should develop 164, flow with, not thwart 254, in each one 145, in natural things 345, magnetic, energizing power of 254
- Divinity of things, how learned 7
- Dolphin—conventional designs of 169, 170; fish forms first 170, suggestions for using 170, use in carving 301, wax design 259
- Drawing (see also Manual-training drawing, Designing and Art students)—abstract forms disapproved 174, absurdities of commercial systems 44, anthemion 102—107; application the aim in designing 96, artificial aids opposed 88, attention to position, movement, etc. 75, automatic movements desired 84, beauty taught by 19, botanical 165—167; bud forms 111, capacity for inherent 64, circle 77—79; channel for vivid and permanent impression 340, children suffer by wrong methods 36, combinations of units and styles 97, 101—120; compared with writing 75, 145; conventional forms first 91, correlation with other school work 52—57, 339—357; creative capacity developed 93, crudity corrected by habit 75, double loop 80—84; drill and design forms 121—131; drill for magnitudes 127, drill work important 125, elementary units 87—100; elements of design 95; energy destroyed by definitions 145, enlarging 11, 162, 164; facility then accuracy 98, facts learned by illustrating their meaning 330—341; first exercises 72, first experiments 9, foolish statements 43, freehand for young children 73, fruit 157, fundamental methods 9, futility of present methods 55, general lack of training 35, 35; kindergarten fault 91, language of truth 55, language study correlated with 342, leading lines 98, leaf forms 108—110; like 139—154; lining in opposed 75, 77; love of nature taught by 53, makes mind 33, materials 73, 74;

- Meissonier on teaching 50, memory 139—168; mental image vs. pencil lines 127, 128; methods criticised 43, Michael Angelo's maxim 9, misuse of type forms 43, mode of thought expression 19, 40, 45, 56, 64, 117, 146, 339; Moorish units 118—120; moving models, drawing from 161, natural method 88, natural vs. type forms 43, nature 155—168; nature study drawing 6, 345; not mere accomplishment 52, object 173, 176; originality in arranging forms 95, outlay required small 44, perception trained by 39, performance the test of teachers 45, perspective naturally acquired 174, preliminary manual-training drawing 67—74; primary work 160, province of, properly taught 20, 32; reason for consecutive movements 79, reinforces knowledge 70, sizes of units suggested 91, speaking through finger tips 146, spiral 84—85, 93; steps toward better methods 71, solids 127—129; straight lines 76, 79—80; suited to the dull and backward 52, supplemented by modeling and carving 86, supplement to nature study 70, systems in common use 36, 44; teachers should be tested 45, technical and hard words learned by drawing 342—344; technical terms and instructions opposed 89, tangential curvature 99, teachers and supervisors should draw 42, teaches beginning of wisdom 53, union of thought and action by 40, universal tongue 33, 146; value as manual training 71, vital study 52, weakness of old methods 41, wrong and right way of teaching 52—53; zoology aided by 343
- Drawing as mode of expression 19, 40, 45, 56, 64, 117, 146, 153
- Drawing materials—manila paper for practice work 73, ordinary lead pencils 74, paper 73, pencils 74, reason for no rubber 74
- Drexel institute methods 54
- Drill forms (see also Forms and Clay modeling)—anthemion 101—107; automatic facility in 70, 76; bird forms 159—163, 172—173, 179; circle 77—79, 122; combinations of units and styles 97, 101—120; double loop 80—84; drill forms and designs 121—138; elementary 75—100; ellipse 126, fish forms 143—153; leading lines 98, leaf forms 108, loop form 82, 83, 90, 101; meanings enhance enjoyment 123, set forms opposed 72, spiral 80, 84—85, 93; straight lines 79—80; strap work 124, vessel forms 127—129
- Drill work, importance of 125
- Duty—as a desire, not sacrifice 254, beauty of should be more dwelt on 254
- Education (see also Education in art and manual training)—abstract work consumes energy 50, all channels should be used 22, book-bred people indisposed to action 20, common idea of 157, common things made beautiful 62, common nature-study method criticised 58, correlate drawing with other school work 52, drawing and manual training in 32, Emerson on 4, emotions and aspirations must be appealed to 360, energy from right methods 61, eye troubles, cause of 10, 21; facts not words 18, familiarity not knowledge 59, finding natural “bent” one aim of 12, first step to higher thought studies 54, health damaged by improper methods 62, knowledge means ability to use 18, 340; learning facts by illustrating their meaning 339, 341; loss of energy through unessential things 40, Maudsley on 340, memory overtaxed by present modes 16, mental and bodily vigor by union of study and “doing” 341, modeling human mind 227, motor centers trained 59, object of, real 4, old methods faulty 21, 340; one problem of the new 341, perfect lessons from common things 39, progress requires persistence 142, schoolroom decoration 385—387; “special experts” opposed 38, steps to character building 362, systematic training of senses through 38, teacher's mission 15, teacher's personality recognized 34, traditional errors overcome 32, true education expands mind 1, true teacher draws out energy 145, 150, 164; union of study and “doing” 341, unites thought and action 22, value of direct knowledge of environment 54, value of few things well learned 348, visual memory important 20, vitality consumed by book learning 17, words too often studied at expense of ideas 21
- Education in art and manual training (see also Education, and Art students, suggestions for)—ambidextrous work 47—51; art and manual training in special schools 359—383; beauty, perception of developed 7, combinations of units and styles 101—120; contact with things forms ideas 16—23; conventional and symbolic forms 169—184; correlation of drawing with other studies 339—388; development of natural organism 4, drawing correlated with other studies 52—57, 339—357; drill forms and designs 121—138; elementary drill forms 75—86; elementary units 87—100; elementary work outlined 4—5; ideas first necessary 17, impressions assimilated through all senses 22, inspiration of natural method 17, intelligence from hand skill 39, life and memory drawing 139—154; manual dexterity, value of 233, mechanical drawing 319—323; mechanical methods useless 9, mediums for shaping ideas 5, modeling animal forms 247—255; modeling for grammar grades 229—245; modeling geometric forms 221—227; modeling, preliminary 185—220; modeling in wax 257—260; natural capacity discovered 8, 12; nature and memory drawing 155—168; nature studies 58—64; object of new method 24, organic memories developed 5, physical co-ordinations 5, preliminary manual-training drawing 67—74; real drawing needed 35—46, rectifying exercises 4, repetition and force of habit 18, rotation of work 5, school equipment 33, schoolroom decoration 385—387; teachers not plants needed 34, teachers should be examined 45, teachers vs. imitators and copyists 45, 325; tool-using alone makes machines 4, tool work not the end but the means 317, true and false manual training 24—34; union of head, hand, heart 18, utilitarian idea overdone 26, 41; visual memory in 20, wood carving 261—302; woodwork construction 305—337
- Elementary carving, instructions for—acute and flat chisels, use of 273, beveling off outer edge 274, cutting form around edge 273, cutting oak



- splendid discipline 271, encourage the pupil 275, gradually increase grooves 272, how to carve 271, pushing chisel through wood 272, raised surface how carved 273, swing chisel with both hands 273
- Elementary courses in clay modeling 193—208
- Elementary forms, directions for modeling 194—207
- Ellipse—compels balance 126, exercises for automatic use 125, use in design 126, vessel forms 126—129
- Emerson—common things pleading to be understood 62, good thoughts valueless unless executed 185, real object of education 4, thought ripened by action 185, what education is and should be 4
- Emotion—art arouses 360, touch children's 164, value of, through generous acts 254
- Energy—abstract work consumes 50, 63; bend to divine in nature 63, build on divine in children 145, conserved by nature knowledge 17, dissipated by mere book learning 17, divine in each one 145, 254; how lost during maturity 362, in children must have some outlet 360, loss of through unessential things 40, necessity of for success 14, pleasing forms help create 247, right education creates 61, 300; saved by this method 10
- Essentialities first 93, 143, 148, 178, 201
- Esthetic training (see also Beauty)—essential to complete culture 39, influence of beauty 6, necessary in education 3, practical use of 3, 59
- Experience the mother of ideas 11
- Expression—drawing a mode of 19, 40, 45, 56, 64, 117, 146; modeling a mode of 188, 255
- Eye troubles, one cause of 10, 21
- Facility—automatic use of 76, before accuracy 81, 88, 98, 122, 126, 140
- Familiarity not knowledge 59
- Farari, sample of carving by 298
- Feeble-minded and insane, best education for 390
- Fine—art work, preparing for 402
- Fine arts, the—see Art students, suggestions for
- Finger tips, speaking through 146
- Fish forms (see also Drawing)—angel fish 144, carangoid 144, color examples in 144, combined with other forms 152, directions for modeling 202, 254; drawing creates knowledge of 151, 153; generalizing 147, general remarks on 153, idealizing 146, in design 152, mackerel 143, memory drawing of 148, 151; modeled in clay 185, sea bass 150, sheephead 145, subjects for study 143, typical 145, use of for plaster casts 254
- Fluted forms, how carve 288
- Form—feeling form in wood 273, first considered 177, impression of best secured 86, 207; learned through modeling 177, 187; wood carving teaches real form 263, 300
- Forms (see also Drill forms and Clay modeling)—animal forms in modeling 199—204, 247—255; architectural 182—184; botanical 164—167; chair 176, 177; conventional and symbolic 169—184; conventionalized bird forms 172, decorative and conventional 45, dolphin 169—170; forms suitable for carving 296—300; fruit and vegetable forms in modeling 209—220, geometric in wood construction 326, 327; geometric too much used in drawing 56, idealized animal 171, natural before type 43, natural should be more used in school-room 252, natural vs. idealized 153, vessel shapes 129
- Forms suitable for elementary carving—chairs 297, for small work 298, frames 296
- Frazier, Mr. W. W.—authority on vacation and night schools 379
- Frog, directions for modeling 202
- Fruit forms, modeling from—apple 209—212; banana 214, fruit tile 214, hints to teachers 212, modeling from nature 217, pear 212, texture easily imitated 212, use of tool 210, 212
- Fruit, drawing from 167
- Fruit tile, directions for modeling 214—217
- Furniture and other advanced work, carving on—acanthus leaf molding 294, 295; arms for chairs and settees 300, 301; beaded surface border 292, calipers sometimes necessary 286, 292, 295; chair back piece 296, chair examples 297, curved surface, how carve on 291, forms suitable for carving 296—300; illustrations 291—301; picture frames 296, plain curved molding 293, 294; shell and leaf forms for 295, tongue and dart molding 292, work in illustrated 291
- Galpin, Sir Thomas—development of human faculty 20, visualization 20
- Geometric forms, modeling from—cone 225, cube 222, cylinder 224, general remarks 226, size best to use 221, sphere 222, square prism 225, too much used 56, 221, 224
- Goodness and truth examples of beauty 254
- Gouge—cutting channel around design 271, for removing background 272, position of in carving 279, select according to curve 273, scooping out inside curve 273
- Greek art, learning to appreciate 208
- Griffins—frechand designs 138, original design 255, suggestions on drawing 172, winged form in carved furniture 301
- Habits vs. principles 214
- Hailmann, Dr. W. N.—acknowledgment to 16, clothe utility with beauty 33. Dr. Hailmann's address at the graduating exercises of the Public School of Industrial Art, and his comment upon this book, are in the prefatory pages.
- Hall, Stanley—nature the source of education and religion 23
- Halleck, Prof. Reuben—acts vs. ideas 20, motor action needs cultivation 20, motor paralysis of book absorbers 20
- Hand, the—Aristotle on 22, capacity for skill in 11, instrument for perfecting other senses 261, instrument of instruments 22, intelligence from hand skill 39, left-hand training needed 48—51, 79, 80; Meissonier on left-hand work 51, obedient to will 22, 76, 91, 276; power of to find texture in wood 271, 275; right and left-hand work 47—51; sensibility governs the 51, Sir Charles Bell on 51, 261; skilled hand vs. fluent tongue 23, various mediums for 6
- Happiness in spite of drudgery 6, 310
- Harris, Dr. W. T.—art influence 360

- Health—first consideration 1, improper educational methods injure 62
- Hobby, value of this system as 13
- Horse-chestnut leaf embodies many laws 165
- Human form studies—charcoal drawings 406, methods of modeling 412, modeling and drawing from life 401, modeling head from life 410, modeling the figure 411, 412; Raphael's Madonna del Cardellino 417, sketching model in costume 409
- Ideas—ability to revive 57, as images of sensory impressions 207, basis of originality 30, development of 16, 18; disintegration of how prevented 392, getting and giving first hand 32, good art requires 57, growth of 57, sense impressions create 16, 19; separate mental existence 57, symbols of things cannot create 17, thought fabric built by expressing 17, union of head, hand, heart necessary 18, words made valuable by 16
- Imitation—tendency of art schools toward 149
- Impressions—more time for dwelling on needed 57, permanent and vivid through art channels 340
- Individuality—recognized in pupils 322, 329; recognized in teacher 34
- Insane and feeble-minded institutions—art and industrial training adapted for 390, disposition should be studied and interest awakened 391, Dr. Kirkbride's experience 390, importance of pleasing occupation 390, not all in institutions 392, pottery forms modeled by the insane 391, suggestions 391, things of beauty and value produced by 390
- Inspiration—at first hand 53, conserved by knowledge through nature 17, cultivation of 174, discovery of natural disposition creates 15, energy to act created by 62, first understanding of 57, in natural forms 253, manual training creates 15, performance of deeds causes 15, 20; teachers' need of 15
- Intelligence through hand skill 39, 280
- Isometrical drawing and its use 322
- Jacobi on perception and memory 185
- Joints—complex forms named 329, first exercises 325, illustrations 314, 331; simpler forms first 325
- Keene, Bishop—"stairway to God" 63
- Kirkbride, Dr., on adaptability of these methods to the feeble-minded and insane 390
- Knowledge (see also Education)—means ability to use 18, 340; not familiarity 59, 340; of environment necessary 54
- Leading lines 98, 100
- Leaf, the—complex forms 108—110; combinations of leaf and scroll 116—117; conventional forms first 91, curved leaf how modeled 242, directions for carving 208, 284; directions for drawing 87, directions for modeling 195, 215, 237, 242; drill work 90, forms modeled in clay 112, 115, 208, 215, 237, 243; idealized forms 113, illustrations of 88, 89; series of forms 111—116; simple forms 87—93; three-tipped leaf and variations 89—90; unnecessary technical terms 89
- Left hand—see Ambidextrous work
- Lettering and design 175
- Life drawing (see also Drawing, and Art students, suggestions for)—get new impressions from object 140, human form studies 409—412; illustrations 139, 141, 143, 144, 145, 146, 150, 154; living fish should be studied 144, 149, 150; memory of form must be fixed 140, mounted forms, use of 142, moving models, drawing from 161, power registered by practice 140, simplicity, importance of 148, suggestions on 139
- Life work, fitted for by true manual training 32
- Light and shade (see also Color and Charcoal drawing)—after form 177, learned by modeling 177
- Lines, leading—fundamental lines in patterns 98, spiral the basis 98, suggestions on use of 100
- Lining-in opposed 76, 77
- Lizard, directions for modeling 203
- Loop, the double—application of 82, directions for making 80, exercises on 81—84; reason for various movements 82
- Machinery and power misused in technical schools 310
- Machine-shop methods, limitations of 306
- Machine-shop practice has its place 310
- Magnetic influence in nature 254
- Magnitudes—drill for 127, must be grasped mentally 129
- Mallet—aid to chisel or gouge 264, hand used as, illustrated 277, position of illustrated 276, right and left hand with 273, use of with chisel 271, 273
- Manual training, the true (see also Manual-training drawing and Education in art and manual training)—adapted to all grades and ages 9, balanced human organism by 4, contact with real things important 16, co-ordination of hand, eye, brain 30, basis of all education 22, benchwork 16, 319; capacity and energy through 10, 12, 14; drawing the first essential 6, 9; drawing supplement to 29, dull and backward pupils adapted to 52, 389; educates to enjoy life even in drudgery 310, elementary precedes special work 5, 29; feeble minded and insane educated by 300, first experiments 9, first principles 1—64; good-will of educators for 10, hand obedient to will 76, hand skill makes intelligence 39, inspiration through 15, knowledge reinforced by 70, love of nature from 23, mind and character developed 31, mode of thought expression 30, muscle and mind in harmony 31, old methods insufficient 41, old system of carpenter work illustrated 335, perspective powers trained 24, 40; province of 32, reformatory institutions benefited by 393, school for not a machine shop 309, self-reliance taught by 39, senses trained 38, smallest school can teach 34, sloyd, cooking, etc., not included 38, thought and action united 24, 40; tools first needed 4, tools required inexpensive 33, trade processes compared with 32, truant schools should teach 393—394; true distinguished from false 31, wood-working operations 29, work of life fitted for 32
- Manual-training drawing (see also Drawing and Designing)—construction lines not allowed 88, contact with things important 16, drill forms 72, 75—86; drill work for fundamental skill 69, elementary units 87—100; freehand manual and memory 13, modeling and carving supplements to 86, nature study with 70, paper for 73, plan of exercises 71, preliminary considerations 67—74
- Manual-training school not a machine shop 309

- Maudsley**—education and what it consists of 340, growth of ideation 57, ideas as images of sensory impressions 207, nerve experiences, registering of 143, physical basis of memory 48, unconscious development of visual sensations 65
- Meanings of things better than meanings of words** 348
- Mechanical draughting, previous training required for** 305
- Mechanical drawing**—artistic beauty of how lost 321, class room illustrated 304, course should include what 336, different drawings, same principle 322, draughting and when properly taught 305, drawings for wood working 330, equipment required 336, freehand perspective illustrated 323, freehand projections illustrated 315, individuality of pupils always considered 322, instrument discussion begins course 322, isometrical drawing and its use 322, isometric drawing lesson illustrated 316, machines should not be too much discussed 319, mechanical units 322, parallel and angular perspective of educational value 320, 323; perspective and architectural design included 320, practical experience at machine shops desired 322, pupils' work illustrated 333, real manual training first 306, rotation with wood-working 315, screw principle illustrated 321, tracing and blue printing important 322, the previous training required 305, 321
- Meissonier**—ambidexterity 51, drawing a basis of primary education 55, drawing expresses all things 55, language of truth 56
- Memory** (see also **Memory drawing**)—basis of 48, correct use of 38, mind expanded by drawing from 143, physiological condition of 143, strengthened by drawing 39, visual 20
- Memory drawing** (see also **Drawing**)—ability formed to "think" pictures 143, assimilate impressions from real things 163, bird forms for 159, botanical forms 164—168; fish forms good practice 143, good artists constantly refresh memory 143, illustrations 148, 151, 153, 155, 156, 160, 161, 162, 164; not enough insisted on 143, 149; persistence required 142, primary work by little children 160, type forms must be fixed 146
- Mental and bodily vigor by union of study and "doing"** 341
- Mental fabric, building of** 18, 22, 48, 50, 57, 60, 150, 344
- Mental image vs. pencil lines** 127, 128
- Mental inertia, result of** 8
- Mental functions, development of** 48
- Metal, carved patterns for** 302
- Metal work**—esthetic idea usually lacking 337, art in 394, designs 394, entirely mechanical fundamentals before trade operations 337, illustration 394, plaque illustrated 385, proper place in trade schools 337, repoussé and hammered work 395, working in illustrated 395
- Methods in manual training** (see also **Manual training**)—cost of equipments contrasted 33, distinction between true and false 24—34; false methods consume energy and inspiration 29, methods advocated and criticised 4, old methods found wanting 9, 305; stupid claims for sloyd 25
- Modeling** (see also **Clay modeling** and **Wax modeling**)—aid to drawing 86, 154; animal forms 247—255; before carving 252, elementary courses in 193—208; "feeling form" 225, for grammar grades 229—245; form taught by 187, fruit and vegetable forms 209—220; geometric forms 221—227; hints to the teacher 196, mode of expression 188, 255; plant required 188, 190; preliminary instructions 187—192; props, use of 251, 252; suggestions on 187—188; wax modeling 257—260
- Modeling animal forms**—advice to teachers 249, Barye casts for school use 182, 249; Barye casts illustrated 213, 246; directions for modeling 199—204, 247—255; general form first 249, individual taste of pupils consulted 247, modeling from birds 250, model for each pupil 248, model the best teacher 249, tool marks vs. smoothness 249, work by grammar pupils 251, work in, illustrated 186, 247
- Modeling and carving** (see also **Modeling and Carving**)—ability inherent 64, aids to drawing 86
- Modeling for grammar grades**—anthemion 241, curved leaf 242, leaf tile illustrated 237, leaf units 237, Moresque form 238, rosette 234, scroll 230, scroll and crocket 239, scroll and leaflets 240, simple shell forms 243, suggestions 229
- Modeling, forms for**—see **Clay modeling**
- Modeling fruit and vegetable forms** 209—220 (see also **Fruit forms and Vegetable forms, modeling from**)
- Molding**—acanthus leaf 294, 295; plain curved 293, 294; tongue and dart 292, 293
- Moorish units**—directions for drawing 119, directions for modeling 238, Moresque designs 118, 119; Moresque unit illustrated 238
- Morality embodied in nature** 7
- Moral training** (see also **Night schools**)—activities and individual faculties the aids to 6, 7; beauty part of goodness not enough taught 254, before intellectual 1, character developed by manual training 31, 233, 242; divine energy a splendid aid 254, duty should be a desire not a sacrifice 254, habits before principles 278, knowledge of beauty an important aid 6, morality embodied in nature 7, preference for good how best developed 7, skilled hands develop 23, 32
- Motor centers**—co-ordination of 103, lack of active use frequent 59
- Mouse, directions for modeling** 204
- Moxom, Dr. Philip S., on moral habits** 278
- Nascent period, best results at** 29
- Natural disposition, common lack of development in** 12
- Natural forms**—inspiration in 253, schoolroom use of 252
- Nature**—best designer 155, drawing from 61, looking at things not enough 58, love for cultivated 60, manual training teaches love for 39, morality embodied in 7, painting from 141, touch of 64
- Nature and memory drawing** 155—168 (see also **Nature drawing** and **Memory drawing**)
- Nature drawing** (see also **Drawing**)—bird forms 159, 161, 162; blackboard work 158, botanical 164—167; general form first aim 162, object drawing illustrated 155, shell forms 155—158



- Nature study and memory drawing 155-163; common method criticised 58, 60, 61; drawing as supplement to 70, 72; drawing used in 6, 345; example of 153, 154; familiarity not knowledge 59, organic impressions in 60, right methods 58-64
- Nature-study drawing, use of 6
- Night schools—application and plant required 364-366; character and energy how naturally developed 359-364; encourage the pupils 372, materials needed 365-368; plan of exercises 368, principles and methods and their practical working 359-364; pupils often injured by goody-goody people 362, rewards or prizes 374, 377; scenes in 358, 361, 365, 367, 371, 373, 375; street arabs 374, suggestions for controlling pupils 369, suggestions to teachers 370-372; teachers needed 368, value and use of manual-training methods 359, wood carving in 375-377; work illustrated 369, 374
- Normal schools—necessity for these methods being taught 380, public demands the new education 380, teachers can easily prepare themselves to teach true manual training 380
- Nude, drawing from the 466
- Oak—chiseling around curve difficult 271, cutting in, splendid discipline 271, experience with is the best teacher 271
- Objects of woodwork instruction 316
- Originality, ideas basis of 30
- Painting—See Color and brush work
- Paper for drawing 74
- Parents, a word to—can teach your own children from this book 396, parents are enthusiastic advocates of these methods 397, will gain pleasure and use by learning and teaching manual-training 397
- Parthenon, antefix of 104
- Pattern making after geometric forms 327
- Patterns in woodwork construction 305, 327, 329
- Pear, directions for modeling 212
- Perception—accuracy of created 25, modeling an aid to 219, foundation of reasoning and imagination 208, memory associated with 185
- Perspective—architectural design included with 320, lesson illustrated 328, naturally acquired 174, parallel and angular 320, 323
- Plaster models—animal forms 181, 213, 246; antique 105, architectural models 182-184; Barye casts for schoolroom 182, 186; borders 227, capitals 221, casts vs. nature 180, fruit forms 181, model for drawing, modeling and carving 187, 240; panels 222, shield 220, teachers should make 182, vs. clay models for schools 252
- Potato, directions for modeling 217
- Pottery forms illustrated 387
- Pratt institute methods 54
- Processes best for all pursuits first 316
- Radical feature of real manual-training methods 306
- Raphael's Cardellino illustrated 417
- Reformatory institutions—character reformed by pleasing work 393, cheaper methods for society 393, experience with art methods in 393, respectable livelihood may be earned 393
- Rembrandt's elephant illustrated and explained 398
- Repoussé and hammered work 395
- Righteousness, second-hand vs. first hand methods 363
- Roof construction 311, 313
- Rosette, the—directions for carving 286, 288; directions for modeling 234, drawing exercises on 97-98; Gothic form illustrated 245, illustrations of carved forms 287, modeled form 234, modeling exercises on 198, models for drawing, modeling and carving 99, round and square forms of illustrated 287, various designs 96, with leaf form 110
- Schoolroom decoration—aquarium 386, borders of simple pattern 385, charts give business air 386, designs and pictures 386, flowers 386, great art works undesirable 386, natural forms 385, shelves of interesting objects 385, simple art works easily understood 385, teacher's personality in 387, "works of art" alone no education 388, wrong methods may engender dislike for art forms 386
- School work aided by drawing—biology 345, blackboard work 348, botany 346-352; chart making 354-357; chemistry 352, elementary chemistry 347, elementary science 346, entomology 352, language study 342, learning "hard" words 339, mineralogy 352, natural history 353, nature study 345, qualifying names 344, technical terms 343, zoology 343
- Scroll, the—combined with anthemion 105-107; combined with crocket 239, combined with leaflets 240, designing form to carve 283, directions for drawing and modeling 230, 239; modeled form 230, 241; "modeled line" 230, modeling lesson on, illustrated 233, three stages in carving 284
- Self-reliance taught by manual training 39, 340
- Sense impressions—assimilation of 35, complexity of brain cells from 50, concrete ideas from 19, co-ordination for individual harmony 48, cultivation of 63, importance of various 16, organized 59, reproduced through finger tips 146, sense channels how impressed 56, systematic training of 38
- Senses—brain co-ordination forms connection between 39, distinct yet connected 18, mind developed through 207, practiced use of prevents accidents 251, systematic training of 38
- Shakespeare on learning from nature 62
- Shell forms—blackboard work 158, carvings of conventionalized 289, directions for modeling 243, from memory 155-158; from object 156-158; modeled form 229, models illustrated 158, 244
- Simplicity—characteristic of great artists 149, importance of 147, one aim sought in drawing 149
- Sketch and note books in woodwork construction 325
- Sketching constantly practiced by good artists 143
- Sketching vs. designing 57
- Sloyd method—busy work but not educational 28, not real manual training 28, original reason for 26, selected for criticism 28, stupid claims for 25
- Smiles, on habits vs. principles 214
- Snake, how to model 202
- Solids—cups and saucers 128, drill for magnitudes 127, mental image vs. pencil lines 128, principle of Greek vessel forms 128, vessel forms for practice 129
- Spencer—brain the register of experiences 224, educa-

- ted senses and muscles needed in accidents 261, meaning of things vs. meaning of words 348
- Sphere, directions for modeling 222
- Spiral, the—directions for carving spiral crockets 285, directions for drawing 84–85; directions for modeling 194, drill forms 80, frequent form in art 84, modeling 194, units of design based on 93
- Spoiled work vs. spoiled pupil 275
- Straight lines—directions for making 79, exercises on diagonals 79
- Strap work—exercises for accuracy 124–125; interlacing exercises 125
- Street arabs and what can be done with them 374
- Strength in designing, secret of 100
- Study and “doing” should go together 341
- Summer schools—these methods adapted to 382, work at illustrated 382, 383
- Swiss or Swedish carving 388
- Symbolic forms—circle 180, cross 180, hieroglyphics 180, nimbus 180, passion flower 180
- Symbolism—explanation of 178, forms in described 180
- Tactual impressions—produce “seeing power” 188, value of portraying 147, 160
- Tangential curvature—see Curvature
- Teacher—great field for 400, inspiration needed by 15, mission of 15, 227; personality recognized 34, true teacher draws out energy 145, 150, 164; vs imitators and copyists 45
- Teachers, great field for 400
- Technical terms learned by drawing their meaning 343
- Things vs. symbols 16–23
- Thought—drawing as mode of expression 19, 40, 45, 56, 64, 117, 146, 339; modeling as mode of expression 188, 255; ripened by action into truth 185, thought should be put into work instead of into tools 317, valueless unless executed 185
- Thought and action united by true manual training 24, 40
- Thought fabric—see Mental fabric
- Thought studies, first step to higher 54
- Tools—calipers 286, 292, 293, 294, 295; carving set illustrated 265, chisel 263, 271, 272, 273, 274, 292, 294, 295; clamps 263, clamps and mallet illustrated 264, fewer tools, better workmen 263, 264; first ones needed 4, gouge 263, 271, 272, 273, 293; mallet 263, 271, 273; marks of on Venus of Milo 264, natural vs. artificial 4, 286; not end but means 317, parting tool 293, ruler 132, 286; sharpening 328, simplicity of in Greek art 264, position in modeling illustrated 233, 235; position of modeling tool described 236, sculptors’ best 243, set of carving, illustrated 265, use of in elementary modeling 210, 212; use of in grammar grade modeling 230–245; wood-working tools required for 20 pupils 334, work with should become automatic 317
- Tool work not the end but the means 317
- Tomato, directions for modeling 218
- Tongue—drawing the universal 33, 146; vs. skilled 23
- Tongue and dart molding 292, 293
- Touch—master sense 188, mind and judgment trained by 188, sculptor’s power in 188
- Trade (see also Manual training, the true)—hand skill precedes trade learning 29, 32; hand of shown in common art methods 41, mercantile ideas overdone 8, 13; old-fashioned ideas unavailable 13, trade processes vs. manual training 32, 280; trade school’s real use 32, true handicraft trains eye, hand, brain 30, teaching of not beneficial 7, weakness of old method in teaching 32
- Trade processes vs. real manual training 32
- Trade school’s real use 32
- Truant schools, etc.—art methods always liked 393, enthusiasm awakened 394, even “vicious” boys like work 394, forcing methods a failure 393, good word for pupils in 394, rebellion and hate vs. enthusiasm 393
- Truth, the language of 56
- Utility—alone does not educate 54, clothed with beauty 33, idea of overdone 26, 41; insufficient alone 1
- Vacation and night schools, authority on 379
- Vacation schools—false vs. right methods 380, Mr. W. W. Frazier, authority on 379, too much experimenting with 380, valuable results obtained 379
- Vaulting principle illustrated 321
- Vegetable forms, modeling from—carrot 218, potato 217 remarks on 218, tomato 218, turnip 219
- Venus of Milo, tool marks on 264
- Vessel shapes 129
- Visual image—best workmen have 20, designer has 137, necessary in designing 20, pleasure of use 21, unconscious development of 65, universal need of 21
- Vitality consumed by mere book learning 17
- Vital force how acquired 57
- Voluntary action, Wundt on 89
- Water-color painting from casts—best position for model 408, materials 408, painting Angelo’s Dying Slave 408
- Wax—cleaned by melting 259, colors of 258, compared with clay for modeling 257, cost and care of 257, 258; good substitutes for 257
- Wax modeling—designs 256, 257, 258, 259; directions for making casts of wax models 259, drawing and lining in for 257, enlarging animal forms 260, rough-texture wood best for 258
- Women and girls, hand training adapted to 31, 264
- Wood—hard vs. soft in carving 265–266; practical use of hard 266, texture learned by experience 271, 275
- Wood carving—age for learning 264, avoid too deep cutting 273, background first removed 273, best work from the start 254, 265; beveling outer edge of design 274, borders 292–295; carved patterns for metal work 302, 305; carver’s grip necessary 280, carving on a curved surface 291–296, 300–301; carving on furniture and other advanced work 291–302; carving the elementary units of design 283–290; chairs 297, continuous clean cut 273, Cupid’s head in four stages 299, 300; cutting around curve 273, 274; design, carving elementary units of 283–290; designing form for carving 266; discipline and training value of 278, educational value of 233, 263, 275–281; encourage the pupil 275, energetic disposition fostered by 300, equipment, simplicity of 262, feeling the form in wood 273, finished work how used 277, finishing the carving 280, first steps in 266, 271–281; frames 266, free curves needed in designing 273,

furniture and other advanced work 291—301; gouging channel around design 271, graded work in 258, grooves slight at first 272, hard vs. soft wood 265, hard wood preferred 265, illustrations of examples of 2, 3, 65, 158, 185, 261, 263, 268—271, 281, 282, 283, 290, 291, 297, 298, 299; instructions for elementary work 271—281; knowledge of form required 263, line of drawing not considered by expert carvers 273, muscular exercise for torpid muscles 279, panel illustrated 317, 389; position of hands 267, practical use of hard wood 266, raised surface how carved 273, scooping out inside curve 273, scored background illustrated 268, scoring the background 268, should be taught with clay modeling 317, should precede cabinet making 317, spoiled panel vs. spoiled boy 275, spoiled work made good 292, stupid pupils make skilled workmen 275, Swiss or Swedish carving 388, teaching of not common enough 299, texture of wood learned by experience 271, 275; tools required 263, 264, 265, 273; tracing is cheating 268, transfer instruments not used 266, 267; wood work distinct from 317, working in, illustrated 19, 262, 272, 274, 276, 277, 279, 291; wood to practice in 265

Woodwork construction—abstruse ideas should become familiar 316, advanced construction 328, apparatus for school purposes illustrated 320, architecture 323, architectural column illustrated 314, art and mechanical sides both taught 325, art work before mechanical work 317, bench work should correlate with other studies 319, black-board work made much of 324, building constructions illustrated 309, 111, 313; carpenter work, where it should be taught 305, comprehensive rather than detailed training 316, difference between the important and the trivial must be dis-

cerned 317, door model 317, drawings for wood working 330, duplicate parts may be turned work 329, education in requires no machinery 310, 312; equipment inexpensive 313, fallacy of ordinary methods 305, geometric models 326, 327; good teacher better than good tools 318, individuality of pupils recognized 329, joints for first exercises 325, joints illustrated 314, 331; machine-shop practice has its place 310, manual-training school not a machine shop 300, mechanical side how best taught 325, misuse of power and machinery in technical schools 310, note and sketch books required 325, objects of instruction 316, patterns for advanced work 329, patterns illustrated 305, pattern making after geometric form 327, perspective lesson illustrated 328, preliminary training required 305, present vs. old-time craftsmanship 307, processes the best for all pursuits first 316, radical feature of this method 306, real manual training first 306, root construction 311, 313; sawing lesson illustrated 306, simple exercises for beginners 325, skilled mechanic alone not best teacher 318, teacher's best qualifications 325, thought should be put into work, not into tools 317, tools required for woodworking department 334, tools not end but means 317, tool work should become automatic 317, typical forms most important at first 325, use of head work in 315, vaulting principle illustrated 324, wood carving distinct from 317, wood working course and what it includes 332, wood working illustrated 306, 307, 308, 312, 319, 363; wood-working samples illustrated 305, 309, 311, 313, 314, 317, 320, 326, 327, 329; wood-working tools for 20 pupils 334

Wood-working course and what it includes 332

Writing, compared with drawing 76, 146

## THE PUBLISHERS' WORD

This book has been primarily a labor of love with the American publishers. It describes methods that have been successfully applied with many thousands of pupils and teachers in public, parochial and private schools, art classes, reformatory institutions, etc. At the World's Columbian Exposition, Mr. Tadd's working display of his methods was awarded the only medal "for excellence and unique method of teaching drawing and its application to clay and wood." The judges were Russian experts in industrial education and manual training. It is further significant of true merit, that a different set of judges should have awarded another gold medal to this work as exhibited by the Roman Catholic high school of Philadelphia in another and distant department of the exposition. The report of the United States Commissioner of Education for 1894 says "the exhibit of this school was a surprise," and devotes more space to it than to all the Philadelphia art schools and colleges combined.

This school also received the lion's share of space and commendation in the voluminous report to the Swiss government by its accredited delegate, Mr. Leon Genoud, director of the Museum of Industry and the Pedagogium, Fribourg. Mr. Tadd was invited to explain his methods to the British Association for the Advancement of Science in 1895, and an institution for teaching these methods has since been successfully inaugurated at Liverpool, while it is rapidly spreading throughout the United States. In consequence of these and other indorsements, much inquiry for "the natural education" has come from leading educational bodies, not only in the United States, but in Norway, Sweden, Switzerland, Belgium, France, Germany, the United Kingdom and Australia. The present work is partly to satisfy these and similar inquiries.

The American publishers offer their services to families, institutions, superintendents or teachers who may wish to adopt Mr. Tadd's methods in whole or in part. Correspondence is invited regarding competent instructors in art, real manual training and nature study, concerning opportunities for the training of teachers in this method, or about the simple and inexpensive equipment and supplies required for these natural methods in the new education. We will cheerfully co-operate to any reasonable extent in promoting the universal use of these new methods in education that are so full of promise for the youth of the world.



# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

## Full Page Plates

Frontispiece	ii
1 Charcoal drawings from casts	vi
2 Children's work, grammar grade, Philadelphia public schools	2
3 Work in clay modeling, Public School of Industrial Art	27
4 Blackboard work in a night school	37
5 Unfinished charcoal sketch, showing how artists draw	xii
6 Drawing and painting birds from life	49
7 Correlation of drawing with elementary natural science—entomology	55
8 Ambidextrous designing	66
9 Drawing and painting class, Public School of Industrial Art	92
10 Painting in color form butterflies	141
11 Drawing dog from life	154
12 Bird form models for children to work from	179
13 Girl modeling a lion	186
14 180 small forms modeled in clay	189
15 Some of the Barye casts	213
16 A collection of pupils' work, Public School of Industrial Art	228
17 Forms suitable for elementary schools	231
18 Various positions of tool in modeling rosette and shell	235
19 Modeling a lion	246
20 Original designs modeled in wax	256
21 Wood-carving room, Public School of Industrial Art	262
22 Examples of wood carving	270
23 Vestment case of R C high school pupils	282
24 Mechanical drawing	304
25 Part of wood-working room	308
26 Illustrating roof construction	311
27 Simple and complex geometric models	326
28 Drawings for wood working	330
29 Mechanical drawings by pupils	333
30 Carpenter work—the old system of manual training	335
31 Botany—application of drawing to elementary science work	338
32 Elementary chemistry and drawing	347
33 Drawing birds from nature	351

34	St. James Boys' Guild, night school class	358
35	Boys carving furniture in night school	371
36	Summer class in Adirondacks at work	378
37	Elementary mineralogy with drawing	384
38	Rembrandt's study of an elephant	398
39	Modeling and drawing from life	401
40	Angelo's Sybil	404
41	Drawing pigs, Adirondacks	414
42	Sketching from cattle, summer school	416

### Principal Pictures, Arranged by Subjects

#### DRAWING

Pupil working on original blackboard design 10, 15, 35, 46, 134	Crocket forms for drill work 94
Enlarging sketchbook drawings 11, 162	Units of design based on spiral and crocket 95
Freehand manual and memory work by little children 13	Pupil practicing scroll and crockets 95
Blackboard work in a night school 37	Rosettes of various designs 96
Teachers practicing freehand circle 41	Combinations of units for drill work 97
Little child drawing circles 47	Blackboard exercises—drawing rosettes 98
Class drawing and painting birds from life 49	Rosette models 99
Freehand designing, Germantown public school 51	Practice work for leading lines 99, 100
Correlation of drawing with elementary natural sciences—entomology 55	Teachers practicing drill forms 101
Boy making freehand chart 58	Anthemion forms for drill work 102, 104, 106, 107
Drawing poultry from nature 61, 139	Co-ordination of motor centers illustrated 103
Original designs by grammar-grade children 65	Practicing the anthemion and scroll 107
Ambidextrous blackboard designing by class of boys 66	Bud forms for drill 111
Some primary exercises 67, 68, 73	Combinations of leaf and scroll 116, 117
Grammar grade practice 69	Moresque designs 118, 119
Ambidextrous co-ordinations in four directions 70	Colored pupils making blackboard designs 121
Grammar grade pupils making original designs 71	Combinations of circle for practice work 122
First exercises, primary school, colored children 72	Exercise in drawing borders 123
Loop forms for drill work 75, 81, 82, 84	Pupil making strap work 124
Freehand exercises in straight lines 76	Ellipse forms for practice 126
Circle form for drill work 78	Memorizing magnitudes and making solids 127
Straight-line form for drill work 79	Making vessel forms 129
Children making drill movements and spirals 80	Drill forms and designs 130
Making loop forms with both hands, primary children 83	Design for stained glass window 131
Spiral forms for drill work 84, 85, 86	Designs by public school children 131
Drawing bird forms from memory 87	Freehand brush play 133
Leaf forms for drill work 88, 89, 108, 109 110, 112, 113, 114	Class of teachers, designing on blackboard 136
Practicing leaf forms and loops 90	Freehand design with griffins 138
Drawing and painting class, Public School of Industrial Art 92	Painting in color from nature 141
Units of designs based on the spiral 93	Common mackerel 143
	The carangoid fish 144
	Angel fish 144
	Sheepshead 145
	The silver moonfish 146
	Children drawing fish forms from memory 148, 151
	The sea bass 150
	Fish forms in design 152
	Nature study of fish form 153
	Shells drawn from memory 155

- Drawing from the object and memory drawing 156  
 Lesson from the shells 157, 158  
 Children drawing animals from memory 160  
 Memory drawings of birds 161  
 Bird's wing and feather 163  
 Daisy drawing lesson 165  
 Working from fruit and branch 166  
 The dandelion in its different stages 167  
 Botanical drawing of leaves 167  
 Swans 168  
 Dolphin forms in conventional design 169, 170  
 Idealized animal forms 171  
 Decorative birds 173  
 Exercises in lettering and design 175  
 Drawing from objects in various positions 176  
 Frechand drawing of chairs 177  
 Bird forms for models 179  
 Architectural forms from memory 183  
 Application of drawing to botany 338  
 Learning hard words by illustrating their meaning 339  
 Learning facts by drawing them 341  
 Architectural styles and how learned 342  
 Drawing correlated with zoology 343
- Biology and drawing 345  
 Elementary chemistry 347  
 Memory drawing of elementary botany 349  
 Birds from nature 351  
 Correlation with natural history 353  
 Painting charts 355  
 Instrumental and cast drawing, night school 373  
 Summer class in Adirondacks 378  
 Elementary mineralogy 384  
 Nature study 392  
 Rembrandt's elephant 398  
 Landscape painting and drawing 403  
 Angelo's Sybil 404  
 Charcoal sketching from life 405  
 Painting in water color from cast 403  
 Sketching human model from life 409  
 Drawing the horse 413  
 Lesson from the pig 414  
 Cattle sketching 416  
 Raphael's Madonna del Cardellino 417  
 Small decorative pieces—Panel 1, 34, 74, 261, 281, 303; Animal forms 4, 26; Bird forms 5, 8, 21, 30, 40, 45, 54, 60; Fish 6, 32, 43; Rosette 23; Leaf forms 57, 62; Spoon shapes 59; Feather 63, Shells 64

## MODELING

- Work in clay modeling, Public School of Industrial Art 27  
 Girl modeling fruit forms from nature 53  
 Models of leaf forms 65, 109, 112, 115, 208  
 Rosette forms 99  
 Plaster models from the antique 105  
 Leaf forms in design 115  
 Bird forms as models 179  
 Fruit forms 181  
 Animal forms in plaster 181  
 Plaster casts of architectural styles 184  
 Fish forms 185  
 Pupil modeling animal forms 186  
 Plaster models for drawing, modeling and carving 187, 240  
 Small forms suitable for children 189  
 Making geometric and bird forms 191  
 First exercises in modeling 191, 197, 198  
 Portion of modeling room, Public School of Industrial Art 192  
 Making a ball of clay 193  
 Forming the spiral 194  
 Leaf forms—exercise for manipulation of clay 195  
 Molding a circular form 196  
 Elementary forms in clay 200  
 Modeling the snake 202  
 Modeling various natural objects 203  
 Elementary modeling of animal forms 204  
 A modeled tile 206  
 The real bird and its clay model 207, 250  
 Class working on a curved surface 209  
 Fruit and vegetable casts 211  
 Some of the Barye casts 213  
 Casts of leaf forms 215  
 Making fruit forms from nature 217
- Branch and fruit 219  
 Plaster model of shield 220  
 Models of plaster capitals 221  
 Pilaster panels, Italian renaissance 222  
 Reducing acanthus leaf forms 223  
 Modeling a head 225  
 Various borders 227  
 Collection of pupils' work, Public School of Industrial Art 228  
 Shell form to work from 229  
 The scroll in clay 230  
 Forms suitable for elementary schools 231  
 Position for tool while turning a scroll 233  
 Complex rosette 234  
 Position of tool in modeling rosette and shell 235  
 A leaf tile 237  
 The Moresque unit 238  
 Scroll and crocket 239  
 Scroll and leaflet 241  
 Anthemion in clay 241  
 Various arrangements of anthemion 242  
 The curved leaf 243  
 Real shells for models 244  
 Gothic rosettes 245  
 Modeling a lion 246  
 Class in advanced clay work 247  
 Casts of animal forms 248  
 Animal forms, grammar grade work 251  
 Making fish forms 253  
 Griffin, original design 255  
 Original designs in wax 256  
 Pupil modeling in wax 257  
 Original wax panel 258  
 Making a dolphin in wax 259  
 Enlarging animal forms in wax 260



Night school at work 358, 361, 365, 367, 375  
 Children modeling vase forms 382  
 Modeling the dog from life 383  
 Underglaze pottery forms 385, 387  
 Pottery forms by the insane 391

Molding a vase 399  
 Modeling and drawing from life 401  
 Modeling head from life 410  
 Making the human figure 411, 412

### CARVING

Children's work, grammar grade, Philadelphia public schools 2  
 Clock, designed, drawn and carved by high school boys 3  
 Wood-carving class, Public School of Industrial Art 19  
 Chair 24, 290  
 Rosette models 99  
 Wood carving by school boy 185, 263, 269, 283  
 Class at work, Public School of Industrial Art 262  
 Clamps and mallet for wood carving 264  
 Set of carving tools 265  
 Positions of hands and tools in carving 257, 272, 274, 276, 277, 279  
 Background marked over for cutting out 268  
 Examples of wood carving 270  
 Chest carved by pupils 271  
 Vestment case, pupils' work 282  
 Scroll and leaf forms, three stages 284  
 Spiral with crocket, three steps 285  
 Anthemion and rosettes 287

Fluted forms 288  
 Conventionalized shell forms 289  
 Carving on a curved surface 291  
 Borders and moldings 292, 293, 294, 295  
 Piece for chair back 296  
 Frames by night school pupils 296  
 Chairs by public school pupils 297  
 Italian renaissance carving 298  
 Cupid's head, in four stages 299  
 Arms for settee and chair 391  
 Carved patterns for metal 302, 305  
 Night school class 361, 371  
 Some night school work 369  
 Panel by night school pupil 374  
 Chairs by normal class 376  
 Desk panel, two stages 381  
 Swiss or Swedish carving 388  
 Carved panel by teacher 389  
 Art metal work 394, 395  
 Carving in the round 396  
 Stand, normal class work 397

### WOODWORKING AND MECHANICAL DRAWING

Boy at bench work 16  
 Class in mechanical drawing 304  
 A lesson in sawing 306  
 Making joints 307  
 Part of wood-working room 308  
 Building construction 309  
 Illustrating roof construction 311  
 Cutting dovetail and sharpening chisel 312  
 Queen post roof truss 313  
 Forms of joints 314, 331  
 Pupil drawing projections freehand 315  
 Isometric drawing lesson 316  
 Model of door 317  
 House building—lesson on stairs 318

Applying try square to planed surface 319  
 Apparatus for school purposes 320  
 Demonstrating principle of screw 321  
 Drawing freehand perspective 323  
 Construction demonstrating "vaulting" 324  
 Simple and complex geometric models 326  
 Geometric forms, made without lathes 327  
 Lesson in perspective 328  
 Forms and patterns, pupils' work 329  
 Drawings for wood working 330  
 Mechanical drawings, applying principles learned 333  
 Carpenter work, old system 335  
 Painting chart of mechanical forms 337

### SUGGESTIONS TO ART STUDENTS

High school wood-working department 363  
 Charcoal drawings from casts 6  
 Unfinished charcoal sketch from the nude 12  
 Rembrandt's study of an elephant 398  
 Modeling and drawing from life 401  
 Landscape painting and drawing in the Adirondacks 403  
 Angelo's Sybil—fresco from Sistine chapel 404  
 First stage of charcoal sketch from life 405

Drawing from the nude 405  
 Painting Angelo's Dying Slave from cast 408  
 Sketching from life—model in costume 409  
 Modeling a head from life 410  
 Modeling the figure—first view 411  
 Modeling the figure—second view 412  
 Raphael's study for the Madonna del Cardellino 417











YE 06933



C031255443

543202

**ONE MONTH USE**  
**PLEASE RETURN TO DESK**  
**FROM WHICH BORROWED**  
**EDUCATION-PSYCHOLOGY**  
**LIBRARY**

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or  
on the date to which renewed.

1-month loans may be renewed by calling **642-4209**  
Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days prior  
to due date.

**ALL BOOKS ARE SUBJECT TO RECALL 7 DAYS**  
**AFTER DATE CHECKED OUT.**

**MAY BE RECALLED**  
**AFTER**

APR 28 1970

REC'D MAY 24 '78 9 AM

**JUN 13 1991**

MAY 23 '91

**SENT ON ILL**

**FEB 07 2005**

**U.C. BERKELEY**

LD 21A-30m-5,'75  
(S5877L)

General Library  
University of California  
Berkeley



